

TDOT Roadway Design Division June 2021





Table of Contents

Table of Contents	i
Preface	vi
Chapter 1. Course Overview	1
Chapter 2. Survey Feature Definitions and Settings	2
2.1 Objectives	2
2.2 Exercise: File Creation	2
2.3 Lecture: Reviewing the ORD Explorer	3
2.4 Lecture: Feature Definitions	4
2.4.1 Feature Definition Properties	6
2.4.2 Feature Symbologies	6
2.4.3 Survey Feature Definitions	6
2.4.4 Survey Settings	13
Chapter 3. Terrain Tools	16
3.1 Objectives	16
3.2 Lecture: Survey Workflow	16
3.3 Lecture: Field Book Tools	17
3.3.1 Exercise: Importing Field Survey Data	23
3.4 Lecture: Analyze Tools	35
3.4.1 Primary Tools	35
3.4.2 View Tools	
3.4.3 Annotation Tools	43
3.4.4 Decorators	43
3.4.5 Measure Tools	43
3.4.6 Exercise: Analyze Field Book Data	
3.4.7 Exercise: Mass Feature Updates	56
3.5 Lecture: Edit Tools	64
3.5.1 Heads-Up Display	64
3.5.2 Heads-Up Display – Point Features	65
3.5.3 Heads-Up Display – Linear Features	66





3.5.4 Exercise: Edit the Survey	68
3.6 Lecture: Terrain Models	89
3.6.1 Terrain Feature Definitions	89
3.6.2 Terrain Tools	90
3.6.3 Heads-Up Display – Terrains	91
3.6.4 Exercise: Terrain Model Creation – Survey Text Files	92
3.6.5 Exercise: Terrain Model Creation – TIN File	
3.6.6 Exercise: Terrain Model Creation – Elements (Aerial Survey)	103
3.6.7 Exercise: Terrain Model Creation – Additional Methods	114
3.6.8 Exercise: Terrain Model Creation – Clipped Terrain Model	130
3.6.9 Exercise: Terrain Model Creation – Complex	134
3.7 Lecture: Editing Terrain Tools	139
3.7.1 Exercise: Edit the Terrain	140
Chapter 4. Civil Geometry Tools	142
4.1 Objectives	142
4.2 Lecture: Civil Geometry	142
4.2.1 Feature Definitions	142
4.2.2 User Settings Preferences	143
4.3 Lecture: General Tools	144
4.3.1 Import/Export	144
4.3.2 Design Elements	145
4.3.3 Standards	145
4.3.4 Civil Toggles	147
4.3.5 Exercise: Horizontal Geometry Creation – Import	150
4.3.6 Exercise: Horizontal Geometry – Reports	153
4.4 Lecture: Horizontal Civil Geometry	163
4.4.1 Lines Tools	163
4.4.2 Arcs Tools	
4.4.3 Point Tools	164
4.4.4 Offsets and Tapers Tools	165
4.4.5 Reverse Curves Tools	





4.4.6 Spirals Tools	166
4.4.7 Modify Tools	166
4.4.8 Complex Geometry Tools	167
4.4.9 Exercise: Geometry Builder	168
4.4.10 Best Fit Horizontal Geometry	171
4.4.11 Exercise: Horizontal Geometry Creation – Best Fit	174
4.4.12 Exercise: Horizontal Offsets – ROW Lines	
4.5 Lecture: Vertical Civil Geometry	190
4.5.1 Open Profile Model	190
4.5.2 Profile Creation Tools	191
4.5.3 Set Active Profile	193
4.5.4 Lines Tools	193
4.5.5 Curves Tools	194
4.5.6 Element Profiles Tools	
4.5.7 Modify Tools	195
4.5.8 Complex Geometry Tools	195
4.5.9 Exercise: Vertical Geometry Creation	196
4.6 Lecture: Vertical Civil Geometry – Utilities	
4.6.1 Exercise: Utility Profile Projection – Non-Utility Model	
4.6.2 Exercise: Utility Profile Projection – Utility Model	
4.6.3 Exercise: Crossing Utilities – Profile	218
4.7 Lecture: Common Tools	
4.7.1 Transform	
4.7.2 Simplify Geometry	
4.7.3 Complex Redefine	
4.7.4 Table Editor	
4.7.5 Event Point List	
Chapter 5. Plan Development Tools	
5.1 Objectives	
5.2 Lecture: Drawing Production Tools for Survey	
5.2.1 Annotations	





5.2.2 Text Tools	
5.2.3 Intelligent Labels	
5.2.4 Named Boundaries	
5.2.5 Drawing Scales	
5.2.6 Exercise: Plan Annotation and Drawing Scales	
5.2.7 Exercise: Control Point Table	
5.2.8 Exercise: Profile Named Boundary and Annotation	
Chapter 6. Survey Drainage Elements	
6.1 Objectives	
6.2 Lecture: Bridge Sketches	
6.2.1 Exercise: Bridge Sketch – Point Cloud	
6.2.2 Exercise: Bridge Sketch – Survey Text Files	
6.3 Lecture: Stream Alignment Creation and Labeling	
6.3.1 Exercise: Stream Alignment Creation and Labeling	
6.4 Lecture: Box Culvert Crossings (Profile View)	
6.4.1 Exercise: Crossing – Box Culvert	
6.5 Lecture: Flood Plain Sections	
6.5.1 Exercise: Flood Plain Section Creation – Survey Text Files	
6.5.2 Exercise: Flood Plain Section Creation – Office	
6.6 Lecture: Stream Profile	
6.6.1 Exercise: Stream Profile	
6.7 Lecture: Drainage Area Delineation	
6.7.1 Exercise: Drainage Area Delineation	
6.7.2 Exercise: Drainage Area Labeling	
Chapter 7. Additional Survey Elements	
7.1 Objectives	
7.2 Lecture: Low Wire Crossings	
7.2.1 Exercise: Low Wire Crossing – Plan	
7.2.2 Exercise: Low Wire Crossing – Profile	
7.3 Lecture: Control Point	
7.3.1 Exercise: Control Point – Plan	



7.3.2 Exercise: Control Point – Profile	435
7.4 Lecture: Benchmarks	452
7.4.1 Exercise: Benchmark – Plan	452
7.4.2 Exercise: Benchmark – Profile	453
Revision History	458
Appendix A. Survey Deliverables Process	459
Appendix B. Example Contour Map and Definitions	460





Preface

Purpose & Need

The **SURVEY** OpenRoads Designer (ORD) Manual is the second document in a series of **six** training manuals released by the Tennessee Department of Transportation (TDOT) that is available through a digital, interactive **flipbook** format. Bentley's ORD software is being adopted and implemented statewide by TDOT as the new **3D modeling** design software, which will ultimately replace both MicroStation V8i and Geopak (SELECT Series 2). This manual provides an introduction to the **Survey** workflow, which includes terrain, civil geometry, drainage and utility, and plan development tools.

Disclaimer

The **SURVEY** Manual is developed based on <u>OpenRoads Designer CONNECT Edition</u> <u>2020 Release 3, Version 10.09.00.91</u>. The TDOT ORD workspace (10.09.00.91_06.04. **2021**) complies with the latest CADD standards and should be used in conjunction with this manual. It can be downloaded on the TDOT CADD Support website under <u>TDOT</u> <u>ORD Info</u>. If you have any technical issues or recommendations for this manual, please contact TDOT CADD Support at <u>TDOT.ORD@tn.gov</u>.

Training Videos



The **SURVEY** Manual has accompanying training videos which are intended to be utilitzed as you go through the exercises. Video icons have been inserted throughout the flipbook, providing direct access to the applicable video. At a minimum, there is <u>at least</u> one video per chapter. In general, the

videos contain instructional guidance and additional tips and tricks, as well as an informational bar at the bottom of the screen to help stay on track.

Revisions

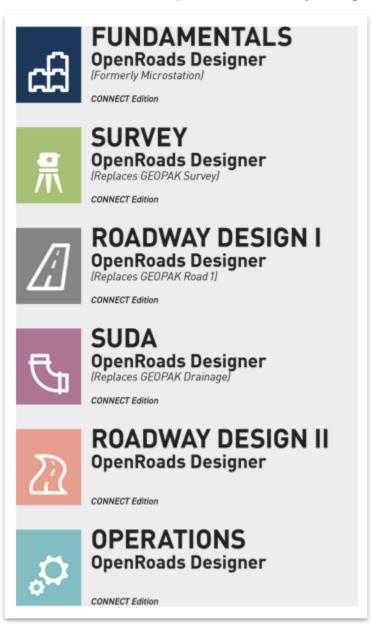
The **SURVEY** Manual will be revised over time as a result of future ORD software releases and procedural & workspace updates. All revisions will be documented by WSP/TDOT and included on the **Revision History** page at the end of the manual. TDOT CADD support will announce updated manual versions when they become available via emailed Instructional Bulletins. The updates will also be posted on the ORD TDOT webpage.





ORD Training Manuals

The **SURVEY** Manual is one of **six** ORD training manuals available. Each manual has its own icon and color associated with it, which are maintained throughout the applicable manual and videos to help the user with wayfinding.







Chapter 1. Course Overview

Course Description and Objectives:

This course introduces users to the **survey** functionality of the OpenRoads Designer (ORD) CONNECT software, which is Bentley's current drafting and civil design platform that is being adopted for use by TDOT.

At the conclusion of this course, participants will be able to:

- 1. Import, analyze and edit field book data.
- 2. Create existing terrain models utilizing different methods and data sources.
- 3. Import, create and edit civil geometry (horizontal and vertical).
- 4. Create different reports for civil geometry.
- 5. Project linear and crossing utilities onto profiles.
- 6. Add annotation for plan view geometry.
- 7. Create a profile named boundary and add annotation.
- 8. Create bridge sketches and flood plain sections utilizing different methods.
- 9. Create stream alignments and profiles.
- 10. Place existing box culverts (crossing) in profile view.
- 11. Delineate drainage areas.
- 12. Place low wire crossings, control points and benchmarks in profile view.

The topics covered in this class are:

- 1. Survey Feature Definitions and Settings
- 2. Terrain Tools
- 3. Civil Geometry Tools (including Utilities)
- 4. Plan Development Tools
- 5. Survey Drainage Elements
- 6. Additional Survey Elements

Target Audience:

This course is designed for Survey staff.

Pre-Requisites:

- Familiarity with TDOT's survey policies, procedures, and standards.
- A working knowledge of Windows 10.
- Fundamentals (ORD) Manual.



Chapter 2. Survey Feature Definitions and Settings

The engine behind survey field code linkage and automatic display in ORD is contained within the dgnlib and survey settings. This sets the foundation for all survey elements that are brought in from the field data so that they are in accordance with the **TDOT Survey Standards**.

2.1 Objectives

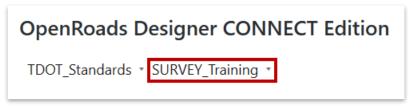
At the conclusion of this chapter, participants will be able to:

- 1. Locate and navigate the ORD Explorer.
- 2. Locate the survey feature definitions and settings.

2.2 Exercise: File Creation

In this exercise, we will create a file utilizing the **SURVEY_Training** workset, which will then be used to explore the survey feature definitions and settings described in this chapter, as well as for the upcoming exercises. **Note:** On an actual project, remember to use the TDOT ORD naming convention when creating **all** survey files. The file names used in this manual serve as general guidance for training purposes only.

- Before we begin, move the provided class files to the following location within File Explorer: C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Configuration\ WorkSpaces\TDOT_Standards\WorkSets\Survey_Training\dgn\. These files will be utilized later in the manual.
- 2. Open ORD from your desktop. The **TDOT_Standards** workspace should still be active after taking the Fundamentals (ORD) training. Go ahead and select the **SURVEY_Training** workset, which will be used for the duration of this manual.



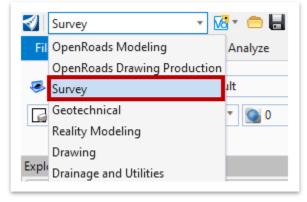
 Create a new file and name it Survey Model. Select the TDOTSeed3D.dgn and click Save. Note: By default, the software should save the file in the workset dgn subfolder: C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Configuration\ WorkSpaces\TDOT_Standards\WorkSets\SURVEY_Training\dgn\.

File name:	Survey Model 🗸	Open
Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) $\qquad \qquad \lor$	Cancel
Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co	Browse





4. Make sure that the **Survey** workflow is selected in the upper left corner of the ORD interface. This workflow will be used for most of the manual. However, there will be certain tools utilized later that require other workflows.





This file will be used to show the software interface and explore the concepts presented in Sections 2.3 and 2.4. It will also be used in Chapter 3.

2.3 Lecture: Reviewing the ORD Explorer

Within the **Survey** workflow, the **Primary** tools are located under the **Home** tab by default. (Figure 1).

FIGURE 1. SURVEY WORKFLOW – PRIMARY TOOLS

Survey	• 🐼 • 📛 🖥	id là 🛧 - /	🔶 📌 🚔 🗧 C:\ProgramDa
File Home	Field Book Analyze	Edit Terrai	n Geometry Drawing P
None 0 1 1 1 0	▼ Default ▼ 30 ▼ 00 0	т т <u>Д</u> о т	Explorer Attach Tools $*$
	Attributes		Primary





The **Explorer** (Figure 2) should still be docked but can be opened within the **Primary** tools, if necessary. Refer to the Fundamentals (ORD) Manual for more insight on the **Explorer**. The **Survey** tab will be referenced predominantly in this manual and will be covered in Chapter 3. Feature Definitions are contained within a library and are part of the overall workspace managed by TDOT CADD support. They cannot be edited, but we will view them for the purpose of understanding the organization of survey features.

FIGURE 2. EXPLORER TABS

Explorer	▼ ₽×
😝 Items	*
🕘 OpenRoads Model	*
🕼 Sheet Index	*
🕘 OpenRoads Standards	*
🕘 Drainage and Utilities Model	*
🕘 Survey	*



It is important to understand the function of **Feature Definitions**. Section 2.4 is provided as a reference to explain their properties and how they are used by the software.

2.4 Lecture: Feature Definitions

Feature Definitions essentially tell the software what each model object represents (e.g. edge of pavement that is asphalt versus concrete, or digital terrain model). Each Feature Definition has an associated **Feature Symbology** used to create the civil model both in 2D and 3D. Feature Definitions have been set up per the **TDOT CADD Standards** for appropriately setting symbology and survey mapping of all current TDOT survey codes.

There are **13** types of Feature Definitions. Each type is used to control different elements of a civil design model. Table 1 on the next page displays a summary of all the Feature Definitions and their descriptions. TDOT has multiple feature definition libraries for survey, roadway, drainage and utilities. This manual will only cover those applicable to **Survey** and **Aerial Surveys**.





Feature Definition Type	Description
Alignment Features	A special type of linear feature used for horizontal and vertical alignments that can be assigned an annotation group. They can also have a template assigned to them to allow the program to automatically create 2D plan view geometry directly from the template.
Terrain Features	Used to allow the user to draw the digital terrain model properties, such as contours and triangles.
Corridor Features	Used to set the settings, which control model density based on stages of the project, such as conceptual, preliminary and final design. They are used to help with computer performance when using large data sets.
Superelevation Features	Used to define the symbology of superelevation objects, such as the setting for superelevation lane lines.
Linear Template Features	Like corridor features but used to set up the settings of linear templates.
Surface Template Features	Used by terrain models to draw or not draw the 3D break lines the surface templates used in the civil cells.
Linear Features	Used to define linear objects, such as edges of pavement, sidewalk, guardrail, etc.
Point Features	Used to define point elements, such as right-of-way markers, signs, survey points, etc.
Mesh Features	Used to define the outer surface of 3D solids created by ORD, such as top or bottom of pavement mesh.
Trace Slope Features	Used in tracing a path on a terrain model or mesh surface.
Aquaplaning Features	Also known as hydroplaning, these features control the symbology of both linear (water depth) and surface (delta terrain model) entities.
Sight Visibility	Used in the analysis of sight distance along a corridor.
Survey Features	Used by the survey settings to map physical features picked up in the field by survey staff.

TABLE 1. SUMMARY OF ORD FEATURE DEFINITIONS AND DESCRIPTIONS





2.4.1 Feature Definition Properties

All Feature Definitions must be given these three properties: **Name**, **Description** and a **Name Seed**. The name seed is the default name for that piece of geometry. If there are multiple elements with the same Feature Definition, the name seed is incremented by **1** with every new element placed.

2.4.2 Feature Symbologies

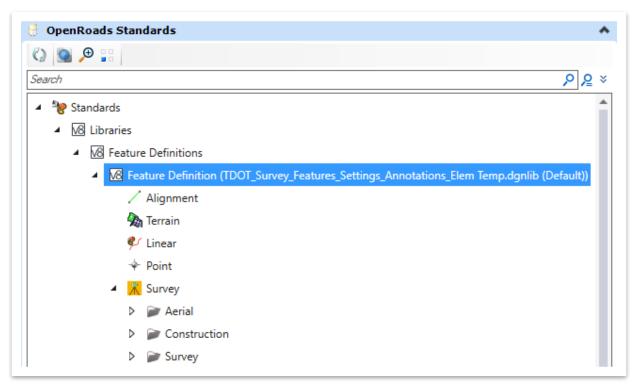
The settings for Feature Symbologies let the software know what element templates to assign to each Feature Definition. These settings determine how each element looks and what level to place the geometry.

2.4.3 Survey Feature Definitions

Survey Feature Definitions are located within the **TDOT_Survey_Features_Settings** _Annotations_Elem_Temp.dgnlib file.

Within the **Explorer**, you can expand the **OpenRoads Standards** tab and browse to the following location: **Standards >> Libraries >> Feature Definitions >> TDOT_Survey_ Features_Settings_Annotations_Elem_Temp.dgnlib >> Survey** (Figure 3).

FIGURE 3. EXPLORER – OPENROADS STANDARDS – SURVEY FEATURES







While these Feature Definitions may not be edited, they can be reviewed within the **Explorer**, as shown below in Figure 4 thru Figure 9.



A complete list of TDOT's Feature Definitions will be available in the TDOT CADD Standards Manual once the workspace is completed.

FIGURE 4. TDOT SURVEY FEATURE DEFINITION ORGANIZATION

🖯 OpenRoads Standards		*
Search	₽₽	×
Standards		•
▲ M Libraries		
 Keature Definitions 		
Feature Definition (TDOT_Survey_Features_Settings_Annotations_Elem Temp.or	lgnlib	
/ Alignment		
n Terrain		
🜮 Linear		
+ Point		
Survey		
 Aerial 		
Control Points		
Construction		
 Survey 		
Drainage		
Non-Trans Features		
▷ 📂 ROW		
Survey Control		
Terrain Model		
Traffic Control		
Transportation Features		
Utilities		
Vegetation		



FIGURE 5. TDOT SURVEY FEATURE DEFINITIONS: DRAINAGE

🝺 Survey	💓 Survey	💓 Survey
🔺 🝺 Drainage	🔺 🝺 Drainage	🔺 🝺 Drainage
D D1Bridge	🔺 🍺 01Bridge	Image: Discrete the second
Ø 28 028 midge Hydraulics	I ABUT	Ø 28 028 midge Hydraulics
D W 03Natural	ightarrow BRI	Ø3Natural
Ø Weight Storm Sewer	🔺 🝺 Bridge Sketch	🔺 🝺 04Storm Sewer
I APRON	I ABUTMENT	ightarrow 10STS
\diamond cv	🧼 DECK - TOP	🔶 12STS
I DAM	🧼 GIRDER - BOTTOM	🔶 14STS
IBDRY	🧼 GIRDER - TOP	ightarrow 15STS
IKE	PIER/BENT	ightarrow 16STS
🔶 DIT	I DECK	🔶 18STS
🔶 EW	ightarrow PIER	🔶 20STS
🔶 GAGE	I SKE	🔶 22STS
levee	I XDECK	🔶 24STS
IPE	 W 02Bridge Hydraulics 	ightarrow 27STS
🔶 RRAP	I BEAM	I SOSTS
In the second se	🧼 CRКВ	🔶 32STS
	I DOWN	🧼 34STS
	In the struct	\diamond 36STS
	🧼 ТВ	🔶 40STS
	IP 🧼	🔶 42STS
	I XHW	🔶 45STS
	I XNW	I 48STS
	4 🍺 03Natural	🧼 54STS
	I CRK	ightarrow 60STS
	ightarrow LAKE	ightarrow 66STS
	I POND	ightarrow 72STS
	IVER	🧼 STS
	I RPDS	🧼 ХВОТ
	INK 🧼 SINK	🔶 ХСВ
	I WET	I XDI
	I XSPRING	XMHSTS





FIGURE 6. TDOT SURVEY FEATURE DEFINITIONS: NON-TRANS, ROW, SURVEY CONTROL, TERRAIN MODEL AND VEGETATION

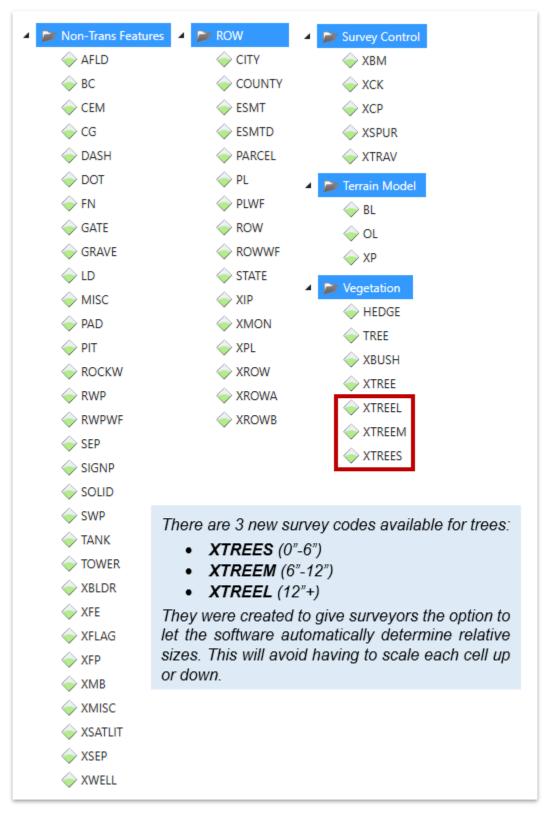






FIGURE 7. TDOT SURVEY FEATURE DEFINITIONS: TRAFFIC CONTROL AND TRANSPORTATION FEATURES





Utilities 🍺 Utilities 🍺 Utilities 4 4 4 Overhead Underground Underground 4 4 4 🔶 онw 01FMS 01FMS ⊳ 4 PTOW ⊳ 02Gas 🔶 2" XCPED ⊳ 03SAS or 4 " 🔶 XFH 6" ⊳ 04Water UGC 0 🚫 🔶 XGAA 🔶 XGM 🔶 UGF 🔶 10" XGV UGP 🔶 12" 🔶 XGVA UGPT l4" 🔶 XGW 🔶 UGT 016" XHMPLF 🔶 UM 🔶 18" XHMPLH 🔶 XMH 20" XLCC 🔶 ХМНС 🔶 22" 🔶 XLP1 XMHF 24" XLP2 026" XMHG XLP3 XMHP 0 28 or () 🔶 XLP4 XMHSAS 🔶 XLW 🔶 ХМНТ Unknown XOFTLP 🔶 XMHW 🔷 XSM XPB XSV 🔶 XUM 🔶 ХТВООТН 🔶 XWM 🔶 ХТВОХ 🔶 XWV XTGP XTOWER XTPED 🔶 XUP 🔶 XUPL

FIGURE 8. TDOT SURVEY FEATURE DEFINITIONS: UTILITIES (PART I)



Utilities Utilities Utilities 4 4 4 4 Underground 4 Underground 4 Underground 01FMS 01FMS 01FMS ⊳ ⊳ ⊳ 02Gas 02Gas 02Gas 4 ⊳ ⊳ 🔶 1" 03SAS 03SAS 4 ⊳ 1/2" or 4 🖌 🔶 🔶 04Water 4 0 🄶 🔶 1-1/4" 🔶 1" 🔶 2" 8" 1/2" 🔶 3" 10" 🔶 1-1/2" 3/4" 🔶 1-1/4" 12" or 4 🖌 🔶 🔶 l4" 🔶 2" 🔶 15" 5/8" 🔶 3" 6" 016 🔶 3/4" - 8 🔶 18" or 4 " 0" 🔶 20" 6" 🔶 12" 22" 0 🔶 🔶 14" 24" lo" 🧼 🔶 15" 🔶 12" 26" 🔶 16" 27" 🔶 14" ls" 🔶 02 🔷 0 28 24" 30" 🔶 16" 26" 32" 🔶 18" 08 🥎 less 34" 02 🔷 36" 36" 0 22 Unknown or 40 🔵 24" or 42 " 27" or 45 🔷 08 🥎 or 48 🔵 32" 🔶 54" 🔶 34" 60" 36" 06 🔶 or 40 🚫 672" or 42 " Unknown Unknown

FIGURE 9. TDOT SURVEY FEATURE DEFINITIONS: UTILITIES (PART II)





2.4.4 Survey Settings

Survey Settings are also located within the **TDOT_Survey_Features_Settings_ Annotations_Elem_Temp.dgnlib** file. These settings are used by the software to properly map survey field files (TXT files). These settings also help automate the process for importing survey text files correctly.

Within the **Explorer**, you can expand the **OpenRoads Standards** tab and browse to the following location: **Standards >> Libraries >> Survey Settings >> TDOT_Survey_ Features_Settings_Annotation_ElemTemp.dgnlib >> TDOT Survey Settings** (Figure 10). The **Properties** are shown in Figure 11 on the next page.



This section is provided as reference material. TDOT CADD Support *will maintain this file.*

FIGURE 10. TDOT SURVEY SETTINGS

🖯 OpenR	toads Standards
0	
Search	ዖ ይ ×
🔺 🧤 Sta	andards
⊿ <u>√</u> 8	Libraries
⊳	V8 Feature Definitions
⊳	V8 Feature Symbologies
⊳	M Annotation Groups
⊳	M Annotation Definitions
⊳	V8 Civil Cells
⊳	₩ Design Standards
⊳	V8 Terrain Filters
4	₩ Survey Settings
	 TDOT_Survey_Features_Settings_Annotations_Elem Temp.dgnlib
	TDOT Survey Settings
	₩ Site Layout Settings
⊳	🔞 Utility Filters





FIGURE 11. TDOT SURVEY SETTINGS: PROPERTIES

Selection (1)		
ntering Survey Settings		
General Settings		
Create Log File	True	
Append Notes to Attributes	False	
Append Notes to Description	True	
Apply Drawing Scale To Fixed Cells	False	•
Use VBA Macros	False	2
Vba Feature Macros		
Attribute Overrides		
Validating Rules		
Points		
Import Coordinate Records	Alwa	ys
Control Point Features	XCP	XSPUR¦XTRAV
Linking Codes		
Link Codes		<linkcodestructs><linkcodestruct co<="" td=""></linkcodestruct></linkcodestructs>
Link Code Position		Before Point Field Code
Best Match Field Code		False
Space Is Required Between Field Code An	id Link Code	
Linear Feature Linking Method		By Field Code
Linear Feature Linking		By Linking Codes
Linear Feature Force Curves to LineString	s	False
Feature Exclusions		<featureexclusionstructs><featureex< td=""></featureex<></featureexclusionstructs>
Data File Parsing		
Data Import Items	<data< td=""><td>ImportStructs><dataimportstruct owner<="" td=""></dataimportstruct></td></data<>	ImportStructs> <dataimportstruct owner<="" td=""></dataimportstruct>
Use Substitute Strings	False	
Substitute Strings		
Description Separator		





2.4.4.1 Linking Codes

Linking Codes indicate the beginning and ending of linear features, or specific attributes to points such as PC, PT, etc. The software is configured based on the **TDOT Standard Linking Codes**. Table 2 provides the current linking codes used by TDOT.

TABLE 2. TDOT LINKING CODE SETTINGS

Linking Code	Alpha
Start	+
End	-
Close	*

2.4.4.2 Data File Parsing

Data File Parsing settings tell the software what options are available to map survey data sets (Figure 12).

FIGURE 12. TDOT SURVEY SETTINGS: DATA FILE PARSING

Data File Parsing	*
Data Import Items	<dataimportstructs></dataimportstructs>

The software is configured to use **ASCII** text files via the **Text Import Wizard** tool, which is covered later in the manual. However, other types of files supported by the software include:

- Leica DBX File (*.xcf)
- Leica Digital Levels File (*.gsi)
- Leica MDF File (*.mdf)
- Trimble Link Engine (*.job)
- Trimble DC SDR (*.dc)
- Field Genius (*.dbf)

- LandXML (*.xml)
- Topcon MaXML (*.mxl)
- Tripod Data Systems TDS (*.rw5)
- Efbp OBS (*.obs)
- Efbp XYZ (*.xyz)





Chapter 3. Terrain Tools

The survey process within ORD starts with the creation of the field book after the field data is collected. There are various tools within the Survey workflow that allow for editing of the surveyed data after the initial automatic mapping. Once the field book has been reviewed, the Civil Terrain Model can then be created and edited, as necessary. The Field Book, Analyze, Edit and Terrain tabs will be covered in this Chapter.

3.1 Objectives

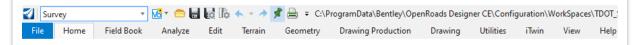
At the conclusion of this chapter, participants will be able to:

- 1. Learn the overall survey workflow.
- 2. Create a field book.
- 3. Import, analyze and edit field book data.
- 4. Create existing terrain models utilizing different methods and data sources.
- 5. Analyze, edit and review the Properties of different Civil Terrain Models.

3.2 Lecture: Survey Workflow

The **Survey** workflow houses all tools needed for importing and editing survey data sets and terrain models (Figure 13). This workflow also contains traditional MicroStation tools for placing lines, cells, text, etc.

FIGURE 13. SURVEY WORKFLOW TABS



- **ORD Survey:** For <u>new</u> ORD projects, there are **four** survey deliverables listed below that are needed for design. Reference Appendix A for the detailed workflow.
 - Field Survey Data
 - o Terrain Model
 - Preliminary Geometry
 - Utility Model
- <u>SS2 Survey</u>: For <u>converted</u> ORD projects, design can utilize the SS2 survey files. There is no added benefit or need to re-featurize the 2D graphics in ORD. The existing TIN can be imported and the dgn file can be opened as-is in ORD and then attached as a reference to the applicable sheets. There is a separate SS2 configuration zip file that design will utilize so that the visual element looks correct.

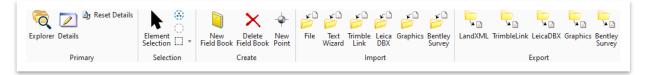




3.3 Lecture: Field Book Tools

The **Field Book** tab houses all tools used to create a new field book (Figure 14). A **Field Book** is a compilation of all feature codes (or features) being mapped, including points, lines and any terrains generated from the data set.

FIGURE 14. FIELD BOOK TAB



The user can create and delete field books and add points from this menu. Other options in this menu include **importing** and **exporting** survey data.

For importing TDOT survey data, the user will primarily utilize either the **File Import** method <u>or</u> drag and drop the text files into the field book from File Explorer. The **File Import** option is used for importing previously created survey text files within ORD. There is also a **Text Import Wizard** option which allows for surface data to be imported in a variety of **ASCII** formats, but would not typically be needed unless additional customization is necessary (e.g. record format, delimiter settings, column headers, etc).

It is highly recommended that the text files are carefully reviewed prior to importing into ORD. Below are some recommendations to consider when reviewing a text file:

- Were the proper field codes used?
- Were the proper linking codes used?
- Were the proper delimiters used?
- Were the proper descriptions used?
- If known, were the proper utility sizes included?





The **Explorer** tools should be used for managing and reviewing all survey data. The Survey Data **Field Books** are accessed via the **Explorer** (Figure 15). In ORD, all survey files are embedded in the DGN file including field book data sets and multimedia files (e.g. photos and videos).

FIGURE 15.	EXPLORER:	SURVEY	DATA	TREE

Explorer	→ ∓ X
😝 Items	*
😌 OpenRoads Model	*
🕼 Sheet Index	*
🕘 OpenRoads Standards	*
🕑 Drainage and Utilities Model	*
8 Survey	*
Search	ዖ <u>ዖ</u> ×
🔺 🗹 🔋 Survey Data	
🔺 🗹 🔲 Default	
Field Books	
Filters	
 Multimedia Files 	

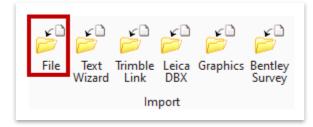




When creating a field book, the user has several options. By default, the new field book will be called **Field Book 1** for each scenario but can be renamed after creation.

 Open the File tool in the ribbon (Survey >> Field Book >> Import) (Figure 16) and then select the text file(s) to add. This process will automatically create the field book.

FIGURE 16. FILE IMPORT TOOL



Right click on Field Books within the Explorer and select New (Figure 17). You would then need to either right click on the new field book and select Import >> File or drag and drop the text file(s) into the new field book.

FIGURE 17. FIELD BOOKS: RIGHT CLICK NEW OPTION

Search Search ✓ Survey Data ✓ Default ✓ Fild Books ✓ Filters ✓ Filters ✓ Multimedia Files ✓ Zoom ✓ Isolate	👌 Survey		*
 Survey Data Default Field Books Filters Multimedia Files Properties Zoom 	🗘 🧕 🗩 📲		
 Default Field Books Filters Multimedia Files Multimedia Files Zoom 	Search		ף צַ ×
 ✓ iseld Books ✓ iseld Books ✓ iselate Terrain Model From Field Book Selection Set ✓ iselate ✓ Properties ✓ Zoom 	-		
Multimedia Files Multimedia Files New Image: Second state Properties Image: Second state Zoom	✓ 🧊 Field Books		Create Terrain Model From Field Book Selection Set
Properties Zoom			New
			Properties
Solate		€	Zoom
			Isolate
Clear Isolate			Clear Isolate

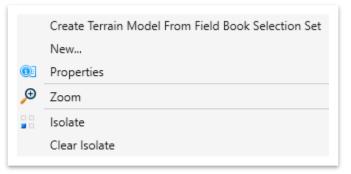
3. Drag and drop the text file(s) on the main **Field Books** header in the **Explorer**, which will automatically create the field book. This option will be demonstrated in the next exercise.





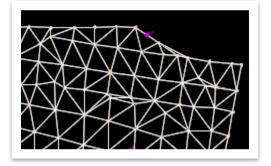
Field Book right click options (Figure 18)

FIGURE 18. FIELD BOOKS: RIGHT CLICK OPTIONS



• <u>Create Terrain Model From Field Book Selection Set</u>: If a data set was imported to create a field book but a terrain was not created during the import session, this option could be used to create the terrain after-the-fact (Figure 19).

FIGURE 19. SAMPLE TERRAIN CREATION



- <u>New</u>: Creates a new field book under the field books folder structure. It is up to the user to organize his or her own field book structure. TDOT users should continue to organize their field books per their region's preference. One field book may contain data from multiple text files.
- <u>Properties</u>: Contains information associated with the imported data file (Figure 20). The only field that can be updated is the field book Name.
 FIGURE 20. FIELD BOOK: PROPERTIES

Field Book	•
Name	Field Book 1
Control Points	0
Data Files	23
Linear Features	433
Point Features	3868
Setup Points	0
Observation Points	0

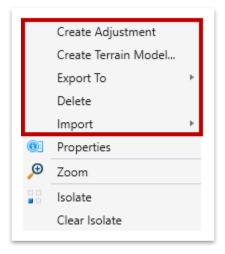




- **Zoom**: Allows the selection of an element from the field book list or an entire field book (in the case of multiple field books), and the software zooms in on the graphics associated with those files. **Note:** This option does not work in Release 3. A defect has been logged by Bentley.
- **Isolate**: Displays only the field codes that are selected when the command is called out. For example, if the field code SIGNP is selected in the field book tree, the software will highlight all SIGNP graphics mapped in the file without needing to turn levels on and off. **Note:** This option does not work in Release 3. A defect has been logged by Bentley.
- <u>Clear Isolate</u>: Clears the isolate selection set.

Post-created Field Book right click options

Once a field book has been imported, the following options are also available (Figure 21). FIGURE 21. FIELD BOOK: RIGHT CLICK OPTIONS



 <u>Create Adjustment</u>: Allows the addition of an overall adjustment (e.g. traverse) for that specific field book (Figure 22). Note: This is not applicable to the TDOT Survey workflow within ORD.

FIGURE 22. ADJUSTMENT OPTIONS

🔺 🔲 🔢 Adjustment
Error Ellipse
O Maximum
O Medium
O Minimum
Z Traverses



- Create Terrain Model: Creates a terrain model for that specific field book.
- Export To: Used to export a field book to several file formats, and to DGN graphics (Figure 23). The LandXML Format option may be used to deliver to contractors wanting to use automated machine control grading (AMG). Export tools can also be accessed via the Field Book tab in the ribbon (Figure 24).
 FIGURE 23. FIELD BOOK: EXPORT TO OPTIONS

3 Survey			
🔇 🧕 🗩 📑			
Search			ዖ ይ ≈
🔺 🗹 🔋 Survey Data			
🔺 🗹 🧧 Default			
🔺 🗹 🎁 Field Boo	ks		
> 🔽 🍳 Field	Book 1		
🗸 i 🍾 Filters	Create Adjustment		
🗸 💿 Multir	Create Terrain Model		
	Export To	•	LandXML Format
	Delete		Trimble Link Format
	Import	×	Leica DBX Format
0	Properties		Bentley Survey Format
J.	Zoom		DGN Graphics
	Isolate		
	Clear Isolate		

FIGURE 24. FIELD BOOK TAB: EXPORT OPTIONS



- **<u>Delete</u>**: Deletes the field book and all associated mapped data.
- **Import**: Allows for importing additional information into the field book from other sources.
- **Properties**, **Zoom**, **Isolate**, **Clear Isolate**: Continue to appear in this menu too.





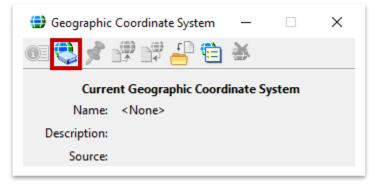
3.3.1 Exercise: Importing Field Survey Data

In this exercise, we will import a series of field survey data (text files) to create a Field Book and examine the Properties. We will continue to utilize the same **Survey Model.dgn** file.

We first need to set the Geographic Coordinate System (GCS) for the file. As a reminder, this procedure was discussed in Exercise 13.3 in the Fundamentals (ORD) Manual. Also, you should already have the correct coordinate system saved as a Favorite. Although we utilized the tool under the Drawing workflow previously, it is also located in the Survey workflow by default (Survey >> Utilities >> Geographic). Go ahead and open the Coordinate System tool. Note: You could also utilize the Search Ribbon in the upper right corner of the screen and key-in coordinate system.



2. Click the **From Library** option (second icon from the left). Notice that by default there is not a coordinate system associated with the file.

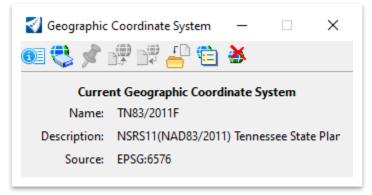




3. You should already have the correct coordinate system saved as a Favorite (TN83/2011F – NSRS11 (NAD83/ 2011) Tennessee State Plane Zone, US Foot) based on the Fundamentals (ORD) Manual. If not, you can browse to it here: Library >> Projected (northing, easting, ...) >> North America >> United States of America >> Tennessee. Once selected, click OK.

ibrary Search	Coordinate S	ystem	*	^
	Name	TN83/2011	F	
	Description	NSRS11(N	AD83/20	
	Projection	Lambert Co	nformal (
	EPSG Code	6576		
	Source	EPSG:6576	5	
	Units	US Survey	Foot	
	First Standard F	36°25'00.0	000"N	
< >	Second Standar	35°15'00.0	000"N	v

4. Once the **GCS** is set, you should see the following image.



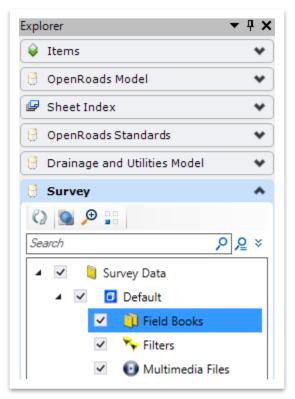


Each time a new additional file is created in this manual and beyond, make sure and first set the coordinate system (TN83/2011F – NSRS11 (NAD83/ 2011) Tennessee State Plane Zone, US Foot).





5. Now, within the **Explorer**, navigate to **Field Books** folder (**Survey >> Survey Data** >> **Default**).



 Open File Explorer and browse to the class files within the SURVEY_Training workset located here: C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\ Configuration\WorkSpaces\TDOT_Standards\Worksets\SURVEY_Training\ dgn\.





7. Select the ASCII text files **CARD-1A.txt** through **CARD-11.txt**, then drag and drop into the **Field Books** folder within the **Explorer**.

	CARD-1A.txt
	CARD-1B.txt
Explorer 🔻 🕂 🗙	CARD-1C.txt
😝 Items 🛛 👻	CARD-2A.txt
🔋 OpenRoads Model 🔹 🗸	CARD-2B.txt
🕼 Sheet Index 🔹	CARD-2C.txt
	CARD-3A.txt
🕘 OpenRoads Standards 🔹 👻	CARD-3B.txt
🔋 Drainage and Utilities Model 🔹 🔹	CARD-4A.txt
🗄 Survey 🔥	CARD-4B.txt
	CARD-5.txt
	CARD-5A.txt
Search 🔎 🔎 😵	CARD-6.txt
🔺 🗹 🔋 Survey Data	CARD-6A.txt
▲ ☑ Default	CARD-7.txt
	CARD-7B.txt
✓ 🧊 Field Books	CARD-8A.txt
 Filters 	CARD-8B.txt
 Multimedia Files 	CARD-9.txt
	CARD-9A.txt
	CARD-9B.txt
	CARD-10A.txt
	CARD-11.txt



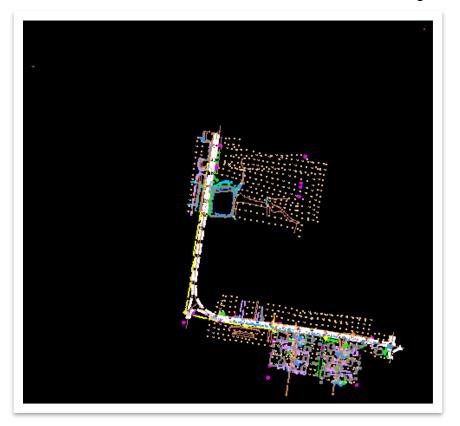


 Duplicate names of features should be found in the sample data. Select Next Name and add a Prefix A. Then click Apply All and give it a second to process. Note: The window below may appear in the background as a second window. If so, you can "open" it by clicking on the ORD icon in the taskbar on your desktop.

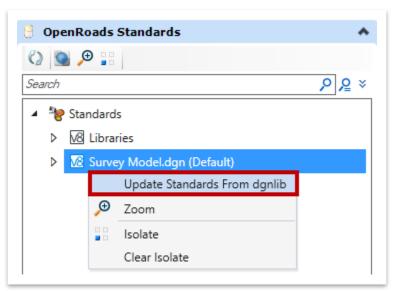
C:\ProgramDa	ta\Bentley	\Open	🔛 D	uplicate l	Point Fea	ature fou	nd
			Appy App) Den [Max] Den (Max) Dennis Den Den Den TextSens	64 5.P021	7		
Duplicate Point Poply Apply All Option Differences	Feature for Cancel	und		//	_		×
) Skip	SJP821						
 Rename Next Name 	Prefix	A					-
-	Suffix	-1					
	Counter	1					



9. Click Fit View and review the file. You should see the image below.



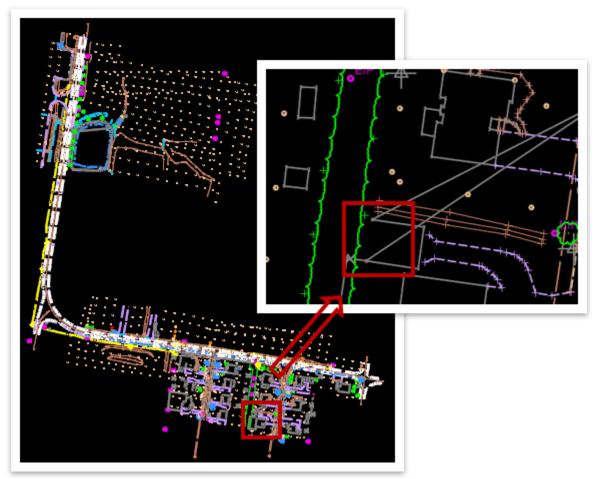
10. The first thing we need to do after import is update the dgnlib standards so that <u>all</u> survey locators are the correct scale. There is a quirk in the software, so it is good practice to perform this step after any survey text file import. Expand the OpenRoads Standards tab within Explorer. Right click on the active file (Survey Model.dgn) and select Update Standards From dgnlib. Give the software a minute to process.







11. Next, zoom into the southeast area of the survey (highlighted below) and notice that it appears something was not mapped correctly. We will investigate further in the next exercise. For now, continue to the next step.







12. Expand the **Survey** tab within the **Explorer** once again and under **Field Books**, you should now see a **Field Book 1** folder which contains all the data that was just imported in. This includes **Data Files**, **ALL Point Features** and **ALL Linear Features**. Each category can then be expanded.

Explorer 🔹 🖣 🗙
😝 Items 🔹
🔮 OpenRoads Model 🔹
🕼 Sheet Index 🔹
🕘 OpenRoads Standards 🔹 🗸
😌 Drainage and Utilities Model 🔹 🗸
🗄 Survey 🔺
Search P 🔎 Search
🔺 🗹 🧯 Survey Data
🔺 🗹 🖸 Default
🔺 🗹 🎒 Field Books
🔺 🗹 🔋 Field Book 1
Þ 🗹 😵 Data Files
> 💌 🔧 ALL Point Features
▷ 🗹 🔑 ALL Linear Features
🗹 🍫 ALL Control Points
🗹 🥂 ALL Setups
🗹 🛸 ALL Observations
✓ 🍾 Filters
Multimedia Files
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·





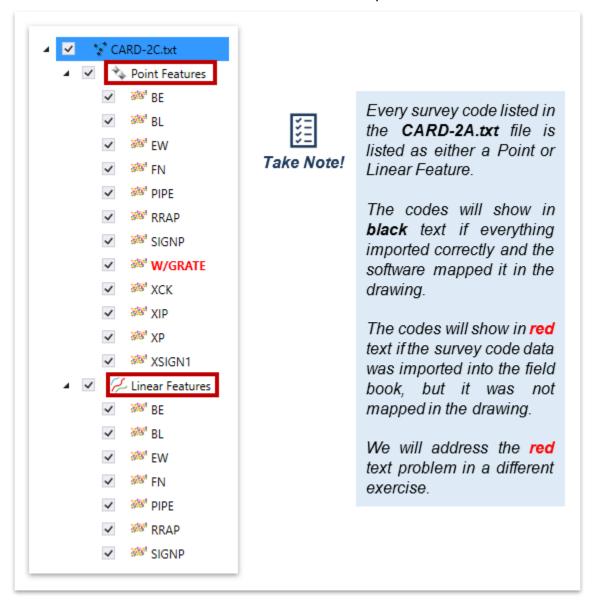
13. Expand **Data Files** to see the imported data files. A portion of the text files are shown below, but all the files should have been imported. **Note:** The software doesn't always show the files in alphebetical order, but they should all be there.

🖯 Survey 🔺
Search P 2 ×
🔺 🗹 🔋 Survey Data
⊿ 🗸 🖸 Default
✓ iii Field Books
🔺 🗹 🔋 Field Book 1
🔺 🗹 👌 Data Files
▷ 🗹 😵 CARD-1A.txt
ARD-1B.txt
▷ 🗹 😵 CARD-1C.txt
▷ 🗹 😵 CARD-2A.txt
▷ 🗹 😵 CARD-2B.txt
▷ 🗹 😵 CARD-2C.txt
ARD-3A.txt
▷ 🗹 😵 CARD-3B.txt
▷ 🗹 😵 CARD-4A.txt
CARD-4B.txt
ARD-5.txt
CARD-5A.txt
ARD-6.txt
ARD-6A.txt
CARD-7.txt





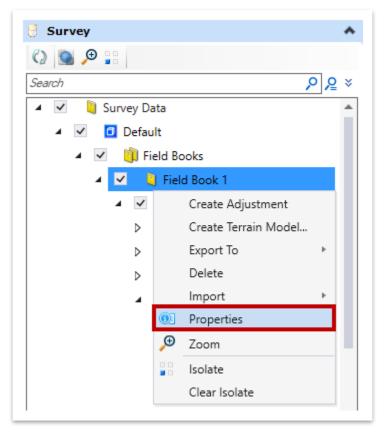
14. Now, expand the **CARD-2C** text file. Then expand **Point Features** and **Linear Features**, as shown below. **Note: Control Points**, **Setups** and **Observations** do not have any data. This is because raw data files from the survey data collection software were not used as the source of the data import.







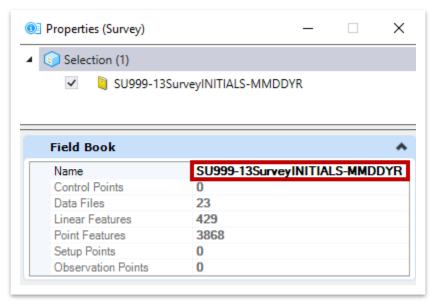
15. Next, select **Field Book 1** and let's examine the **Properties**. If you do not already have **Properties** docked, you can right click on **Field Book 1** and select **Properties**.



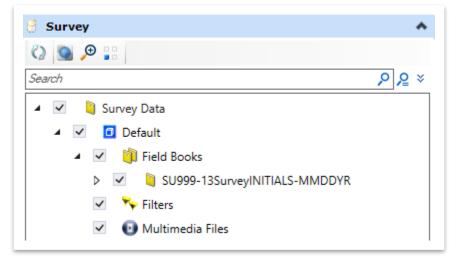




16. Left click in the **Name** field and rename the Field Book to **SU999-13Survey INITIALS-MMDDYR**, using your initials and the current date. **Note:** This is the only way to rename the Field Book at this time.



17. Notice that the name has now been updated in the **Explorer** as well.





Now, we will go back to the lecture and discuss the **Analyze** tools before getting into the next exercise.





3.4 Lecture: Analyze Tools

The **Analyze** tab houses all tools needed for reviewing the data sets after being imported into a field book (Figure 25).

FIGURE 25. ANALYZE TAB



3.4.1 Primary Tools

The **Primary** tools include basic tools such as the **Explorer**, **Details** and **Reset Details**. The Explorer was introduced in the Fundamentals (ORD) Manual. The Details tool is one of the most important within the **Survey** workflow and will be explained further below.

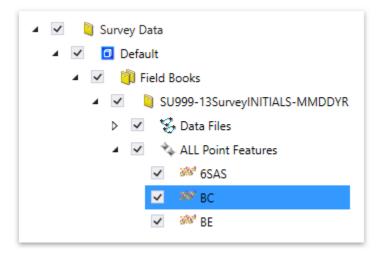
Details Tool

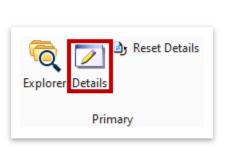


This tool allows the user to view survey feature codes with all the details of the documented field data, such as point numbers, feature code, link codes, descriptions and more. The Details tool may also be used to update or fix any errors, such as correcting the linking code or the feature code. Survey codes that are both a spot and a breakline will show up in the point and linear

feature lists. To see the applicable points tied a specific feature code, you would select the <u>code</u> in the **Field Book** (e.g. **BC**) and then open the **Details** tool (Figure 26).

FIGURE 26. FIELD BOOK: SELECTING A SURVEY FEATURE + DETAILS TOOL







The **Survey Details** window has multiple columns and rows, mimicking a spreadsheet. The software will list all the points with the **BC** survey code, which Bentley refers to as **Field Code**. To un-display a column, right click anywhere within the column headers and select **Show Columns >> Uncheck the desired column** (Figure 27).

	lement List	🔥 Mes	ssage	Center					
	Name	Disp	ay	Field Code	Link (Code	Zone	Description	
•	S1057	₽₹↓	Sor	t Ascending		1	1	1-S-FR RES.	
	S1058	Z ↓ A↓	Sor	t Descending			1		
	S1059		Cus	tom Sorting			1		
	S1060		Ren	ame			1	1-S-BR RES.	
	S1061		Sho	w Columns	•	~	Name		
	S1062		Free	eze This Columr	n	~	Display		
	S1063		Alig	Inment	•	~	Field Code Link Code Zone		
	S1064		Edit			~			
	S1065		Find	d		~			
	S1066	A,	Rep	lace		~	Description		
	S1077	True		BC1	None	~	Terrain Model Attribute Attributes Pair		
	S1078	True		BC1	None	~			
	S1079	True		BC1	None	~	Control Codes Easting		
	S1080	True		BC1	None	~			
	S1081	True	BC1		None		Northing		
	S1090	True		BC1	None	 ✓ ✓ 	Elevation		
	S1091	True		BC2	None	× 	Data File Name VBA Macro		
	S1092	True		BC2	None		Field Book		
	S1093	True		BC2	End			INGLICE	
	S1102	True		BC4	Start		More		

FIGURE 27. SURVEY DETAILS WINDOW: NAME – DESCRIPTION

- Name: The point assigned during the field data collection (e.g. S1057).
- **Display**: A setting that tells the software to display the point in the DGN file.
- Field Code: The survey code assigned during the field data collection (e.g. BC).
- <u>Link Code</u>: The linking code assigned during the field data collection to note the start and end of a line.
- **Description**: The descriptor assigned to the code during the field data collection (e.g. 1-S-FR RES.)



The remainder of the columns within the **Survey Details** window are shown below (Figure 28 - Figure 30).

FIGURE 28. SURVEY DETAILS WINDOW: TERRAIN MODEL ATTRIBUTE - ELEVATION

	irvey Details					
	ement List 🔥 Message Center					
	Terrain Model Attribute	Attributes Pair	Control Codes	Easting	Northing	Elevation
•	Determine By Feature Definition			1817137.84'	824679.61'	811.87
	Determine By Feature Definition			1817093.58'	824686.01'	809.36'

- <u>Terrain Model Attribute</u>: Setting that determines whether the point is to be included in the terrain model, which is mostly dependent on the feature definition.
- **Easting, Northing and Elevation:** Coordinates and elevation associated with the survey feature.

FIGURE 29. SURVEY DETAILS WINDOW: DATA FILE NAME - FEATURE DEFINITION

🦪 s	urvey Details			
E	lement List 🔥 Me	ssage Center		
	Data File Name	VBA Macro	Field Book Name	Feature Definition
•	CARD-6.txt		SU999-13SurveyINITIALS-MMDDYR	Survey\Survey\Non-Trans Features\BC
	CARD-6.txt		SU999-13SurvevINITIALS-MMDDYR	Survey\Survey\Non-Trans Features\BC

- **<u>Data File Name</u>**: The text file name from which the survey feature was imported.
- Field Book Name: The field book name in which the survey feature was imported.
- Feature Definition: The feature definition associated with the survey feature.

FIGURE 30. SURVEY DETAILS WINDOW: FEATURE DESCRIPTION - TIME STAMP

	-	- 🗆	\times
Feature Description	Media File	Time Stamp	^
Building		N/A	

- Feature Description: The description associated with the feature definition name.
- Media File: The media file name associated with the survey feature (if applicable).
- <u>**Time Stamp:**</u> Associated with the raw data file. For TDOT, this column will be N/A because raw files from the data collector are not being used during the import.





3.4.2 View Tools

Once survey data has been imported, the user can utilize the **View** tools to analyze and correct errors or issues with the imported data (Figure 31). These tools allow the user to redraw survey geometry, view reports and view media files associated with the field books

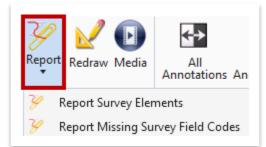
FIGURE 31. VIEW TOOLS



3.4.2.1 Report Tools

There are two options within the survey reporting tool: **Report Survey Elements** and **Report Missing Survey Field Codes** (Figure 32). We will utilize the latter report in the next exercise.

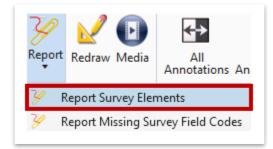
FIGURE 32. SURVEY REPORT OPTIONS



• <u>Report Survey Elements</u>

This report option returns a printout of the feature name, description, coordinates (northing/easting), elevation, feature definition, link code, and other attribute information (Figure 33).

FIGURE 33. REPORT SURVEY ELEMENTS







The report requires the user to select either a survey point or linear element in the dgn file, which will then open the report automatically. An example **survey linear feature report** is shown below for a **RD** element (Figure 34).

FIGURE 34. SURVEY LINEAR FEATURE REPORT

			Report		Friday, Febru 4:39:33 PN)21			
			×V	Project: S Units: J	/ K/ N					
Chain Name	Description	Feature Definition	Display	Zone	Attributes	Data File	Field Book	Media File	Length	Time Stamp
RD		RD	True			CARD- 1B.txt	SU999- 13SurveyINITIALS- MMDDYR	Ż	1497.964	Ŵ
Point:	SJP2	Feature:	RD	N	826318.328	Ē	1816362.027	Z	799.846	
Ţ.	Course from:	SJP2	ta	o: SJP4		S8.918° W		\sum	$\overline{\mathbf{X}}$	

<u>Report Missing Survey Codes</u>

This report option returns a printout of all the field codes that were imported but were not drawn (Figure 35). This is a great tool to utilize post-import to find out which field codes need to be corrected in the dataset for proper mapping. FIGURE 35. SURVEY MISSING FIELD CODES REPORT

Survey	Missing Field Codes Report
Rep	ort Created: Friday, February 26, 2021 Time: 4:52:27 PM
	Project: Survey
	Units: Imperial
Missing I	Field Codes
SIGN	
UGF	
UGF XPC	





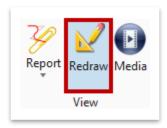
3.4.2.2 Redraw Tool

The **Redraw** tool forces the software to redraw all survey data (Figure 36). It is unlikely this option will be used as all the graphics are associated with the field book data set.



Deleting graphics from the drawing will also delete the item from the field book.

FIGURE 36. REDRAW TOOL



3.4.2.3 Media Tool

The **Media** tool can be used to locate points or other survey features that have media files attached (Figure 37). If the element does not have a media file attached, the user will receive a **No Media Found** alert.

FIGURE 37. MEDIA TOOL







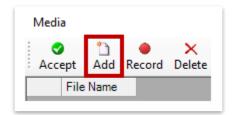
To attach media files to a specific point or linear feature, you would select the applicable element in the dgn file and then open its **Properties**. You can open the properties either via the heads-up display or in the ribbon. Within the properties, you would browse to the media file by clicking on the ellipses next to the **Media File** field (Figure 38).

FIGURE 38. ATTACH MEDIA FILE

Name	POND
Display	True
Field Code	POND
Zone	1
Description	POND
Terrain Model Attribute	Determine By Feature Definition
Attributes Pair	
Length	681.63'
Data File Name	CARD-1A.txt
VBA Macro	
Field Book Name	SU999-13SurveyINITIALS-MMDDYR
Feature Definition	Survey\Survey\Drainage\03Natural\PON
Feature Description	Pond
Creation Type	GeneratedByLinkCodes
Media File	
Time Stamp	N/A
Feature	
Feature Definition	POND
Feature Name	POND

Within the **Media** dialog box, you would select the **Add** button and navigate to the selection of your file (Figure 39).

FIGURE 39. MEDIA DIALOG BOX: ADD







By default, the software will open to the **Survey_Training** workset dgn subfolder but you can browse to the applicable location to select the file. Once you select the media file, it will add it to the list indicating the File Name path location. Clicking **Accept** will complete the attachment (Figure 40).

```
FIGURE 40. MEDIA DIALOG BOX: ACCEPT
```

_						
		1	•	- ×		
Accept		Add	e Record	Delete		
File Name						
C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Configuration\						

The media file is then attached, as shown in the field below (Figure 41).

FIGURE 41. MEDIA FILE FIELD

Linear Feature	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Name	POND
Display	True
Field Code	POND
Zone	1
Description	POND
Terrain Model Attribute	Determine By Feature Definition
Attributes Pair	
Length	681.63'
Data File Name	CARD-1A.txt
VBA Macro	
Field Book Name	Field Book 1
Feature Definition	Survey\Survey\Drainage\03Natural\POND
Feature Description	Pond
Creation Type	Generated By Link Codes
Media File	Pond.jpg
Time Stamp	N/A
Feature	
Feature Definition	POND
Feature Name	POND

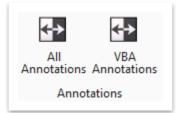




3.4.3 Annotation Tools

The software allows the user to toggle on and off permanent annotations through the **Annotation** tools (Figure 42). The TDOT ORD workspace has been set up to automatically annotate certain features with standard labels. A user can choose to display the annotation as needed. This tool **does not** delete the permanent labels. No VBA annotations have been setup in the TDOT ORD workspace.

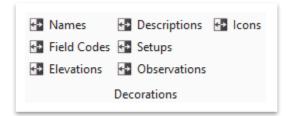
FIGURE 42. ANNOTATIONS TOOLS



3.4.4 Decorators

Decorators are temporary visualized labels for survey features (Figure 43). These are not permanent labels and can be customized under User Preferences. The labels that are available as decorators include **Names** of points and features, **Field Codes**, **Elevations** and **Observations** to name a few. These labels are a nice alternative to permanent labels as it allows the surveyor to review the data without crowding the file with too many permanent labels.

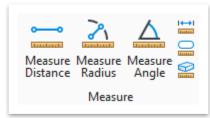
FIGURE 43. DECORATIONS OPTIONS



3.4.5 Measure Tools

The **Measure** tools are used to measure distances, radii, angles, length of line, areas and volumes (Figure 44). Please refer to the Fundamentals (ORD) Manual for details.

FIGURE 44. MEASURE TOOLS



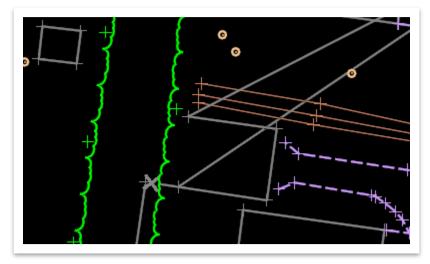




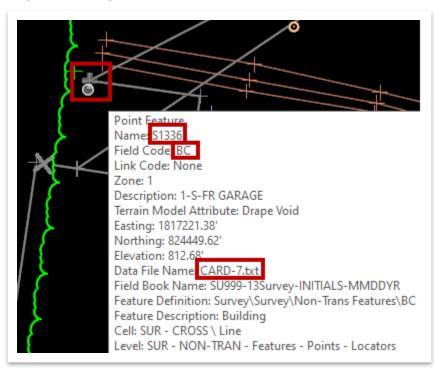
3.4.6 Exercise: Analyze Field Book Data

In this exercise, we will analyze the field book data that we previously imported and fix several issues utilizing the Details tool. This also includes addressing two of the missing field codes. We will continue to utilize the same **Survey Model.dgn** file.

1. Zoom back into the southeast area that we previously highlighted in Exercise 3.3.1, Step 11 showing the error.



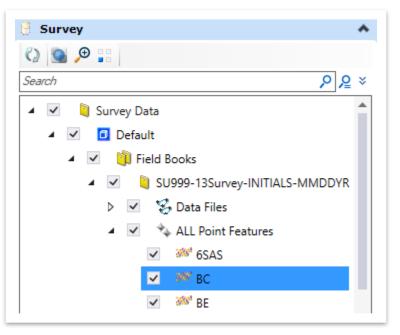
2. Left click the gray locator (highlighted below) and notice from the information reported, this is a **BC** point code (**S1336**) that came from the **CARD-7.txt** file. The geometry was generated by link codes, so most likely the starting link code for the shape was not present in the text file.







3. Within the **Explorer**, we will now fix this error. Expand **All Point Features** under your field book and select the **BC** code.



4. Next, open the **Details** tool (Survey >> Analyze >> Primary).

Sun	Survey *								
File	Home	Field Book							
Explored	Details	کۍ Reset Details 🕑							
	Primary								

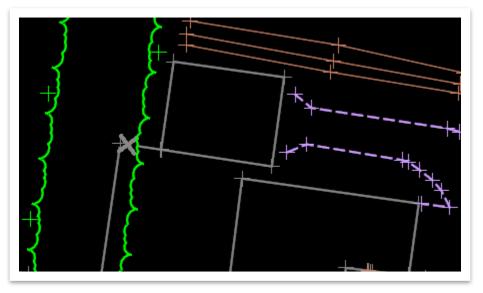




5. Within the **Survey Details** window, scroll down to point **S1336**. Under the **Link Code** column, notice that it is set to **None**. Change the option to **Start** and then close the window.

E] E	Bement List 🔥	Message Center			
	Name	Display	Field Code	Link Code	Zone
	S1322	True	BC4	None	1
	S1323	True	BC4	None	1
	S1324	True	BC4	None	1
	S1325	True	BC4	Close	1
•	S1336	True	BC	None	~ 1
	S1337	True	BC	None Start	1
	S1338	True	BC	StartPC	1
	S1340	True	BC5	ArcPC NonTanPC	1
	S1341	True	BC5	ArcSingle	1
	S1342	True	BC5	ArcToArc NonTanPT	1
	S1343	True	BC5	ArcPT ArcToggle	1
	S1344	True	BC5	End	1
	S1345	True	BC5	CloseShape Close	1
2					

6. Notice that the drawing resolved itself, as shown below.



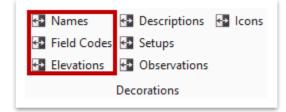




7. **Alternatively**, you can also make the same edit graphically. Let's click **Undo** <u>one</u> <u>time</u> (or CTRL+Z on your keyboard) to undo the last command.



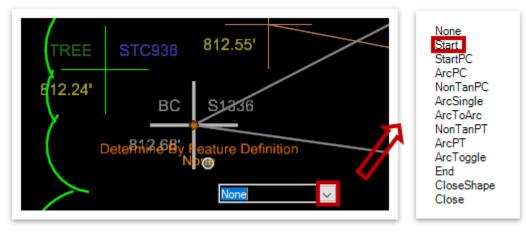
 Then, turn on the Names, Field Codes and Elevations Decorations (Survey >> Analyze >> Decorations). It might appear nothing happened but if you zoom in, you will notice that the decorations appear.





Decorations are not permanent text. They are simply tools to help the surveyor analyze the data mapped in the drawing. Permanent annotation will be explained in the Plan Development Chapter.

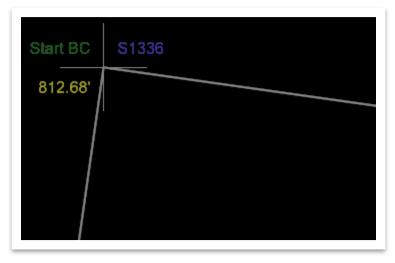
9. Zoom in and select **BC** point **S1336**. Left click on the **orange** text "**None**" (**linking code**) and change to **Start**.



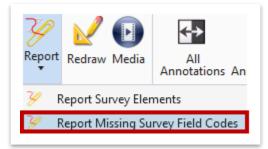




10. Notice that the drawing resolved itself once again, as shown below. While the previous link code editing options were applied to a singular survey point, you can also make <u>mass</u> changes to imported survey data with the **Details** tool. We will go through that process in the next exercise.

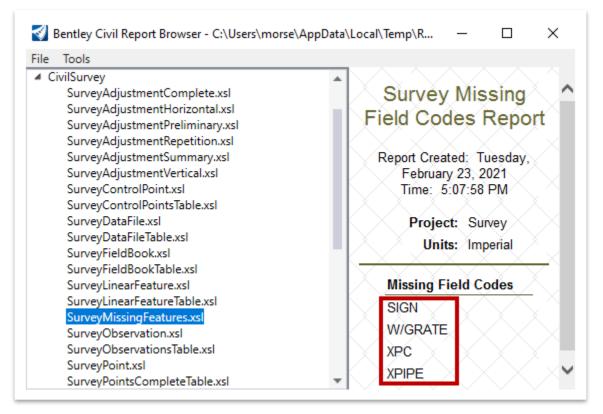


11. For now, let's continue and check for missing codes. Open the **Report Missing Survey Field Codes** report (**Survey >> Analyze >> View >> Report**).





12. The following report should appear. The report shows that the Field Codes **SIGN**, **W/GRATE**, **XPC** and **XPIPE** are missing.



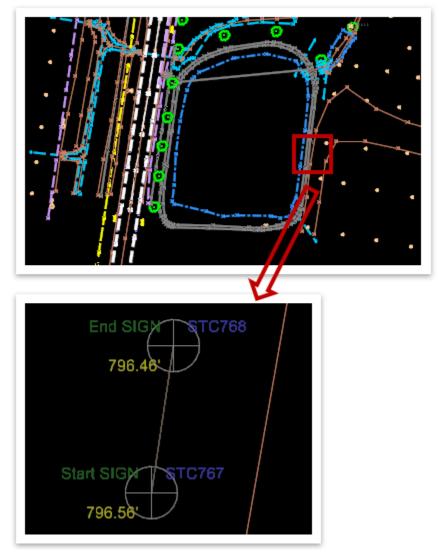
13. Within the **Explorer**, expand **All Point Features** under your field book and notice that the four field codes listed appear in **red**. The coordinates were imported, but the software did not know how to map it.

🖯 Survey		*	
🔇 💁 🔎 👬			
Search	\$	≥ ک <mark>ر</mark> ه	
	🗸 🕷 SH	-	
	 SIGN 		✓ 🥙 XPB
	 SIGNP 		V W XPC
	✓ 😻 SWP		 ✓ ³⁶⁴ XPIPE ✓ ³⁶⁴ XPL
	✓ 🥙 TREE		V SAN XPL
	🗸 🚿 UGF		
	🗹 🛛 🚟 W/GRAT	re 🛛	
	V 🚧 WET		





14. First, let's fix the **SIGN** code. Zoom in to the area highlighted below on the right side of the pond.



15. Within the **Explorer**, scroll down and click on the **SIGN** field code under **ALL Point Features**.







16. With the **SIGN** field code selected, open the **Details** tool (**Survey >> Analyze >> Primary**). When you click on the first line item (**STC767**), you will see a dark shadow highlighting the point.

Image: Second state Message Center Name Display Field Code Link Code Zone Description STC767 True SIGN Start 1 LAKE GEORGE STC768 True SIGN End 1					.48 STC767	3	
Name Display Field Code Link Code Zone Description STC767 True SIGN Start 1 LAKE GEORGE STC768 True SIGN End 1 Output			and Caster				- 🗆 X
STC767 True SIGN Start 1 LAKE GEORGE STC768 True SIGN End 1				Field Code	Link Code	Zone	Description
STC768 True SIGN End 1	Þ						
		STC768	True	SIGN	End	1	
	<						>

17. It appears that the wrong **Field Code** was entered before the import. The correct code was supposed to be **SIGNT**. To fix the error, click within the **Field Code** field for both points (**STC767** and **STC768**) and key-in the correct code. **Note:** The points will disappear from the **Survey Details** window after you have updated the code. To view, click the **SIGNT** feature code within the **Explorer**, as shown below.

E	lement List 🔥 I	Message Center		
	Name	Display	Field Code	Link Code
•	STC767	True	SIGNT	Start
	STC768	True	SIGNT	End





18. Notice that the two points have resolved themselves after the **field code** update.

End SIGNT	STC768
796.46'	
Start SIGNT	STC767
796,56'	

19. Next, let's fix the **W/GRATE** code. It appears that the = sign between the **Field Code** and the **Description** is missing. Within the **Explorer**, scroll down and click on the **W/GRATE** field code under **ALL Point Features**.

🖯 Survey			*
🔇 🧕 🔎 👬			
Search			× <u>م</u> (
	~	🚧 UGF	
	~	🚧 W/GRATE	
	~	🐝 WET	

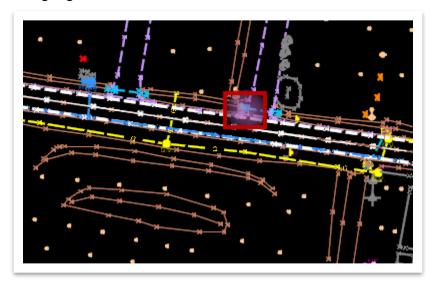
20. Within the **Survey Details** window, notice that point **SJW610_1** now shows. **Note:** If no point shows, close the window, click on a different feature code under **ALL Point Features** and then click on **W/GRATE** again and re-open the **Details** tool.

< Su	rvey Details				
= Ele	ment List 🔥 Me	essage Center			
	Name	Display	Field Code	Link Code	Zone
•	SJW610_1	True	W/GRATE	None	1





21. Once again, notice the dark shadow representing the point. Zoom in to **SJW610_1**, as highlighted below.



22. Within the **Survey Details** window, scroll over to the **Data File Name** column and notice that the erroneous field code is tied to the **CARD-2C.txt** file.

Survey Details								
🗐 Eler	ment List 🔥 Mes	sage Center						
	Easting	Northing	Elevation	Data File Name				
۱.	1816691.02'	824815.58'	798.67'	CARD-2C.txt				

23.Next, open File Explorer and navigate to the workset directory: C:\Program Data\OpenRoads Designer CE\Configuration\WorkSpaces\TDOT_Standards\ WorkSets\Survey_Training\dgn\. Open the CARD-2C.txt file in Notepad. Scroll down to SJW610 and notice that there is an = sign missing between the Field Code (+EW) and the Description (W/GRATE).

```
      CARD-2C.txt - Notepad

      File
      Edit
      Format
      View
      Help

      SJW606,824811.3040,1816716.0320,798.802,EW
      SJW607,824809.9715,1816724.9588,797.397,-EW
      SJW608,824813.4060,1816718.4868,796.764,+PIPE=18"C.M.P.

      SJW608,824813.4060,1816718.4868,796.764,+PIPE=18"C.M.P.
      SJW609,824817.8666,1816688.9472,796.255,-PIPE

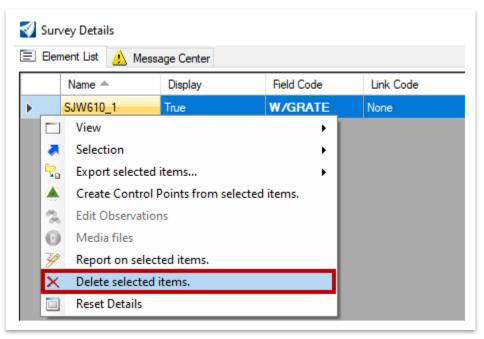
      SJW610,824815.5757,1816691.0243,798.673,+EW
      W/GRATE

      SJW611,824819.5833,1816691.6753,798.651,EW
      SJW612,824821.0638,1816683.5401,796.468,EW
```





24. Point SJW610_1 was logged as a duplicate point in ORD upon import due to the missing = sign, hence the _1. The software assumed that it was to import the point under both the EW feature code and the non-existent W/GRATE feature code. Adding the = sign in the CARD-2c.txt file would fix everything, but would require the text file to be reimported into ORD. Instead, we will delete the duplicate point (SJW610_1) and add the correct description to point SJW610. Go ahead and right click in the first blank column and select Delete selected items.





25. Next, select EW within the Explorer under ALL Point Features.



26. Scroll down to point **SJW610** and left click within the **Description** field and key-in **W/GRATE** to complete the update.

E	ement List 🧕	Message C	Center			
	Name	Display	Field Code	Link Code	Zone	Description
	SJW605	True	EW	None	1	
	SJW606	True	EW	None	1	
	SJW607	True	EW	End	1	
▶	SJW610	True	EW	Start	1	W/GRATE
	SJW611	True	EW	None	1	
	SJW612	True	EW	None	1	
	SJW613	True	EW	End	1	

27. The other two missing codes (**XPC** and **XPIPE**) would need to be assessed and addressed accordingly in the **Survey Details** window.

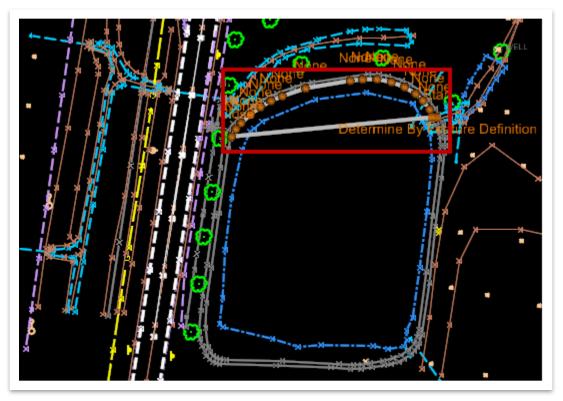




3.4.7 Exercise: Mass Feature Updates

In this exercise, we will apply several mass updates to point features within the Survey Details window after selecting the applicable features in various ways. We will continue to utilize the same **Survey Model.dgn** file.

 Once the imported data has been reviewed and updated (if necessary), the terrain model can then be created. However, upon further review, it was noticed that the Field Code SWP should not be included as a feature to create the terrain model. Zoom in and select the SWP feature, as highlighted below, to start the editing process. Go ahead and turn off the decorations.



 While selected, click the Edit Point Features tool within the heads-up display. Note: You could also open the Details tool (Survey >> Field Book >> Primary).







 Select all rows (SJW312 – SJW328). Note: Select the first row, hold down shift, and select the last row. You must click in the first column to the left of the Name field (highlighted in red) to select an entire row. You could also click the upper left corner above the red square to select all.

Element List 🥂	ement List 🔥 Message Center							
Name	Display	Field Code	Link Code	Zone				
SJW312	True	SWP	Start	1				
SJW313	True	SWP	None	1				
SJW314	True	SWP	None	1				
SJW315	True	SWP	None	1				
SJW316	True	SWP	None	1				
SJW317	True	SWP	None	1				
SJW318	True	SWP	None	1				
SJW319	True	SWP	None	1				
SJW320	True	SWP	None	1				
SJW321	True	SWP	None	1				
SJW322	True	SWP	None	1				
SJW323	True	SWP	None	1				
SJW324	True	SWP	None	1				
SJW325	True	SWP	None	1				
SJW326	True	SWP	None	1				
SJW327	True	SWP	None	1				
SJW328	True	SWP	Close	1				





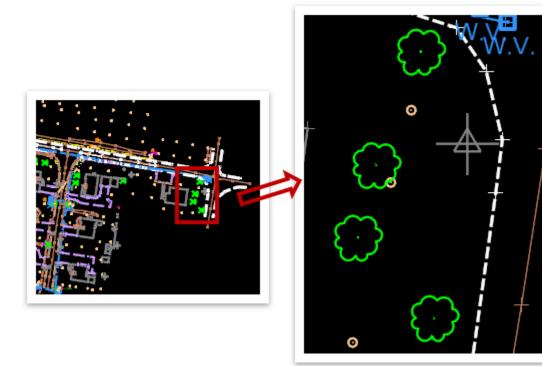
4. Now, let's change the Terrain Model Attribute for these selected points. Right click anywhere within the first blank column and select Edit selected items. >> Terrain Model Attribute >> Do Not Include. Notice that the attribute updates for all points at once. You could also highlight just the Terrain Model Attribute column and then right click and select Edit. Within the Edit Property Value dialog box, you would set the applicable option there. Note: If the terrain was already created, it will automatically re-triangulate.

	🔥 Messa	ge Center				
Name	Display	Field Code	Link Code	Zone	Description	Terrain Model Attribute
SJW312	? True	SWP	Start	1		Do Not Include
SJW313	True	SWP	None	1		Do Not Include
SJW314	True	SWP	None	1		Do Not Include
SJW315	True	SWP	None	1		Do Not Include
SJW316	True	SWP	None	1		Do Not Include
SJW317	7 True	SWP	None	1		Do Not Include
SJW318	True	SWP	None	1		Do Not Include
SJW319	True	SWP	None	1		Do Not Include
SJW320) True	SWP	None	1		Do Not Include
SJW321	True	SWP	None	1		Do Not Include
SJW322	? True	SWP	None	1		Do Not Include
SJW323	True	SWP	None	1		Do Not Include
SJW324	True	SWP	None	1		Do Not Include
SJW325	True	SWP	None	1		Do Not Include
SJW326	True	SWP	None	1		Do Not Include
SJW327	7 True	SWP	None	1		Do Not Include
SJW328	True	SWP	Close	1		Do Not Include

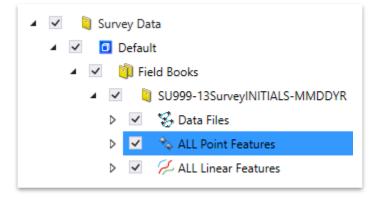




5. Next, let's apply a **Field Code** update across several points (trees) within the **Survey Details** window. We will assume that we know the specific points that need updating. Zoom into the far eastern part of the project and notice the **four** trees.



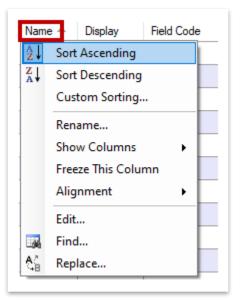
6. With the **Survey Details** window still open, select **ALL Point Features** within the **Explorer** and notice that all points are now listed.







7. Within the **Survey Details** window, right click in the **Name** header and select **Sort Ascending**.



8. Scroll down until you get to points S1429 – S1432. It has been determined that the Field Code should actually be XTREEL (large sized trees 12"+). Highlight the Field Code for these four points. This can be done by either left clicking the first one, holding the SHIFT key down and left clicking the fourth one <u>or</u> left click and hold the first one and drag your cursor to the selection extent necessary.

	S1429	True	XTREE	None	1	40" TREE
	S1430	True	XTREE	None	1	36" MAPLE
	S1431	True	XTREE	None	1	36" MAPLE
►	S1432	True	XTREE	None	1	36" MAPLE

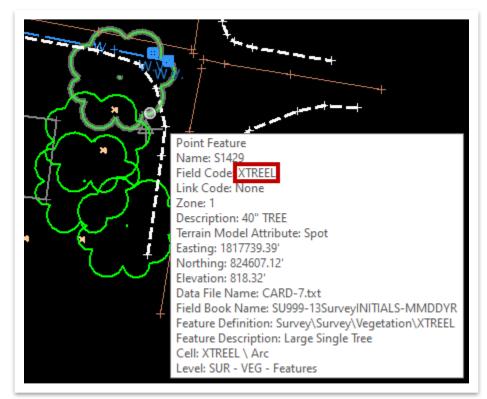
9. Right click within the highlighted area and select **Edit**. Key-in an "L" at the end of **XTREE** and click **OK**.

Edit Property Value		×
Field Code	XTREEL	
	ОК	Cancel

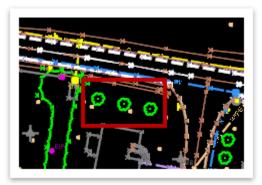




10. Notice that the four trees updated in plan view. You'll also notice that the updated field code is now reflected in the **Survey Details** window and in the **Properties**.



11. Lastly, let's apply a **Field Code** update across several points but utilizing a **selection set** this time. This option would be more applicable if you wanted to visually select points rather than select based on point name. Scroll over to the left until you get to the set of **three** trees, as shown below, and select all three using the **Element Selection** tool (**Survey >> Analyze >> Selection**). You can select the first one and then hold down the **CTRL** key while selecting the others. **Note:** It is recommended to select points that needed the **same** field code update and then repeat the following process if you had other selection sets that needed different field code updates.









12. Within the **Survey Details** window, **ALL Point Features** should still be showing. Right click anywhere within the first blank column and select **Selection >> Select from selection set**.

		S1427	True	XP	None			1			Determine
		S1428	True	XP	None			1			Determine
	🥖 Edit selected items.						1		40" TREE	Determine	
		View •				1		36" MAPLE	Determine		
-		Selection +				Create selection set.				ine	
-	C 0	Export selected items				Ľ	🗶 Select from selection set. ine			ine	
-	۲	Create Control Points from selected items.					Emphasize selected items.			ine	
-	÷,	Edit Observations			::::: •:::	De-emphasize all.			ine		
-	Θ	Media files				-	1		SHED	Determine	
-	Ŷ	Report on selected items.					1		SHED		
-	\times	Delete selected items.				-			Determine		
-		Reset Details				1			Determine		
							1		SHED	Determine	

13. Notice that now only the selected point features appear (**S1221** – **S1223**), which will allow us to make edits just to those points.

📢 Survey Details								
E	🗐 Element List 🔥 Message Center							
	Name 📥	Display	Field Code	Link Code	Zone	Description		
Þ	S1221	True	XTREE	None	1	3" MAPLE		
	S1222	True	XTREE	None	1	4" MAPLE		
	S1223	True	XTREE	None	1	4" MAPLE		

14. Go ahead and deselect the three lines and then highlight just the Field Code fields.

🜒 Su	rvey Details							
🖃 Element List 🔔 Message Center								
	Name 📥	Display	Field Code	Link Code	Zone	Description		
	S1221	True	XTREE	None	1	3" MAPLE		
	S1222	True	XTREE	None	1	4" MAPLE		
►	S1223	True	XTREE	None	1	4" MAPLE		

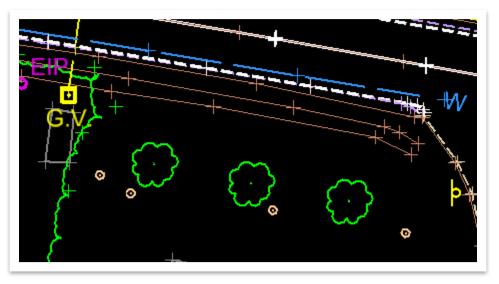




15. Once again, right click within the highlighted area and select **Edit**. Key-in an "**S**" at the end of **XTREE** and click **OK**. **Note:** This feature code was selected since the tree sizes fall in the **0-6**" range, per the **description** column in the previous step.

Edit Property Value		×
Field Code	XTREES	
	ОК	Cancel

16. Although the field code was updated, you'll notice that the trees look the same. That is because the **XTREES** cell is the same size as the original **XTREE** cell. Left click anywhere within the dgn file to deselect and close the **Survey Details** window.



17. You could also use this process to make updates if field codes were omitted prior to importing. For any other field codes that need to be adjusted, you would follow these procedures depending on the scenario and apply the adjustment to the applicable column.





3.5 Lecture: Edit Tools

The **Edit** tab houses all tools needed to make necessary edits to the survey data (Figure 45). Because the feature definitions are tied to the graphics and the field book, once the graphics are edited, the program updates the Field Book data automatically and vice-versa.

While these tools are accessible via the ribbon, most likely they will be opened via the heads-up display within ORD. Each type of geometric element has its unique heads-up display menu.

FIGURE 45. EDIT TAB



3.5.1 Heads-Up Display

Heads-Up Display is a new feature seen in ORD. Each element has a set of tools, and the heads-up display gives the user easy access to those tools directly on the screen. All heads-up displays are opened directly from the geometry in the drawing.



There is no icon or pull-down menu to open Heads-Up Displays. To open the heads-up display, the user must select a piece of geometry by data clicking on it and hovering for a few seconds. The heads-up display will pop up dynamically and will disappear if the cursor is not hovering on the selected element or on the tools.

Common Heads-Up Display Tools (all elements)

- **<u>Properties</u>**: Contains all information associated with a civil element (e.g. terrains, points and linear features).
- **Delete:** Deletes the civil element (e.g. terrain, point and linear survey features, and civil geometry).

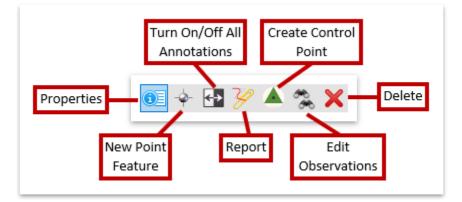




3.5.2 Heads-Up Display – Point Features

The heads-up display options for survey **points** are shown below (Figure 46). The user can access all the edit tools as well as a few others depending on the feature type (e.g. point or linear). To visualize the heads-up display for points, select (left click) the element and then hover the cursor over the element until it appears.

FIGURE 46. HEADS-UP DISPLAY: POINT FEATURES



- <u>New Point Feature</u>: Allows the addition of a point after the data has been imported.
- <u>Turn On/Off All Annotations</u>: Many Feature Definitions (and feature codes) are set up to automatically be labeled using the ORD labeling tools. This tool allows the labels to be temporarily un-displayed to review the file without clutter.
- **<u>Report</u>**: Opens the reporting options. This command is available in the point and linear features heads-up displays.
- <u>Create Control Point</u>: Allows conversion of an imported point to a control point.

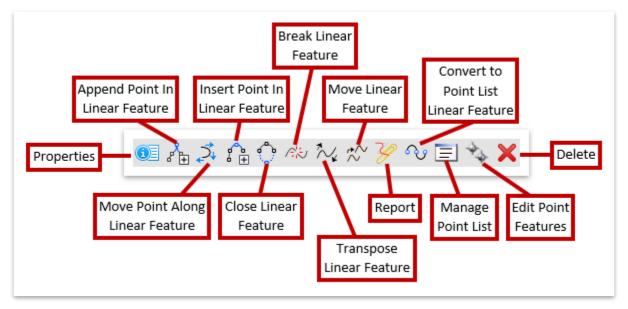




3.5.3 Heads-Up Display – Linear Features

The heads-up display options for survey **lines** are shown below (Figure 47). The user can access all the edit tools as well as a few others depending on the feature type (e.g. point or linear). To visualize the heads-up display for lines, select (left click) the element and then hover the cursor over the element until it appears. The **Manage Point List** tool is not seen within the ribbon, by default, so it is assumed that this tool is only accessible via the heads-up display.





- <u>Append Point In Linear Feature</u>: Appends a civil point to an existing linear feature.
- <u>Move Point Along Linear Feature</u>: Moves a point feature along an existing linear feature.
- Insert Point In Linear Feature: Inserts a civil point in an existing linear feature.
- <u>Close Linear Feature</u>: Connects the first point of the linear feature with the last one.
- **Break Linear Feature:** Breaks one linear feature into two distinct linear features.
- <u>**Transpose Linear Feature**</u>: Reverses all data points within the selected survey linear feature or horizontal alignment.
- Move Linear Feature: Moves a linear feature to a desired location.
- **<u>Report</u>**: Opens the reporting options. This command is available in the point and linear features heads-up displays.





- <u>Convert to Point List Linear Feature</u>: Allows conversion of an imported linear feature by using a survey feature code (also called dynamic linear feature) into a point list. Point lists are less intelligent linear features, but it may be helpful when editing and manipulating points that make up the original survey linear feature.
- <u>Manage Point List</u>: Uses the linear feature list dialog to manage the points that make up the linear feature (Figure 48). This command is used to edit linking codes, and to insert, replace, delete and reorder points in the point list.
 FIGURE 48: MANAGE POINT LIST DIALOG BOX

🦪 ເ	Linear Feature : BL 1	- 🗆 ×	
Acc	ept Cancel Locator		
	Name	LinkCode	
•	STC10	Start	~
	STC11	None	~
	STC12	None	~
	STC13	None	~
	STC14	None	~
	STC15	None	~
	STC16	None	~
	STC17	None	~
	STC18	None	~
	STC19	None	~
	STC20	None	~
	STC21	End	~

• Edit Point Features: This tool was covered in the previous exercise.





3.5.4 Exercise: Edit the Survey

In this exercise, we will first convert the dynamic linear features for utilities (water line) into **point-list linear features** and then create <u>one</u> element prior to converting the linear features into **Civil 3D Plan Elements**. Also, we will explore the **Break**, **Close**, **Move** and **Transpose** tools and edit different elements of the survey. For this exercise, we will open a new file but for a regular project you would continue to make any edits in the original survey file.

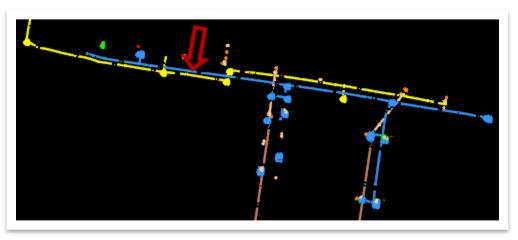
1. Open the **Survey Model – Edited.dgn** file within the **SURVEY_Training** workset dgn subfolder.



ORD survey features are considered **dynamic linear features**, which are created directly from points with the same field code picked up in the field. ORD assumes that because these features were collected in the field using the same field code, they should not be edited once imported into the DGN. Therefore, ORD requires the user to convert these field code dynamic linear features into what is known as a **pointlist linear feature**. Once that has been completed, the user can edit these point list linear features using all the edit tools in the ribbon. ORD also allows the user to convert these point-list linear features into **unintelligent graphic features**.

Once a feature has been dropped all the way to a graphic feature, it **CANNOT BE UNDONE**. It is imperative that the user doesn't accidently drop the dynamic linear feature into a graphic feature.

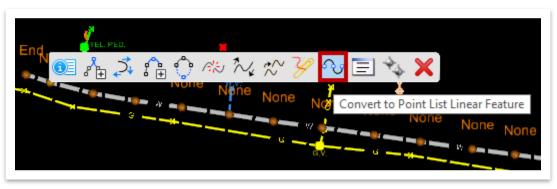
 While ORD can project point-list features onto existing ground profiles, the software cannot create an existing ground profile unless the feature is a civil 3D element. Zoom in to the Water line, as shown below so we can convert the dynamic linear utility features into point-list linear features. Note: Only the utility levels are turned on.



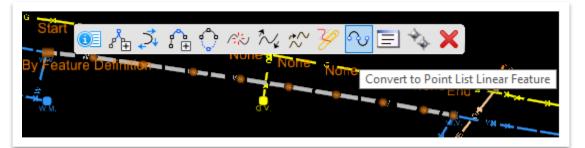


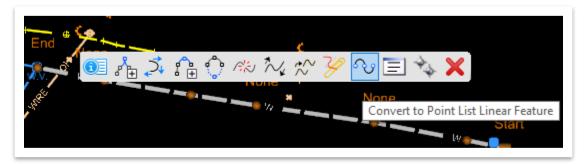


 Next, left click to select the first segment of the water line and open the headsup display menu. Click the fourth icon from the right Convert to Point List Linear Feature. Note: <u>Only select it one time</u>.



4. Go ahead and convert the next two segments of the **water line**. **Note:** This must be done for each segment individually.





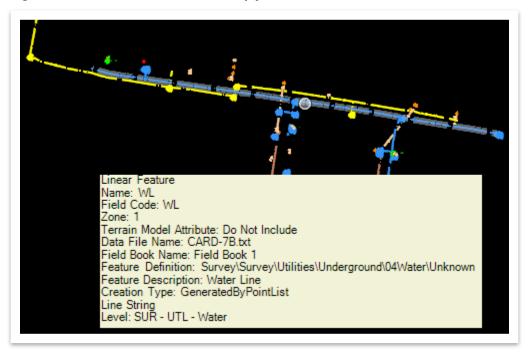
5. Now, we will join all <u>three</u> water line segments, so we can later plot the water profile as one long profile instead of short individual segments. Open the **Join** tool (**Survey >> Edit >> Edit Linear**). **Note:** The **Join** tool only works on point list linear features, which is why we had to do the previous steps first.



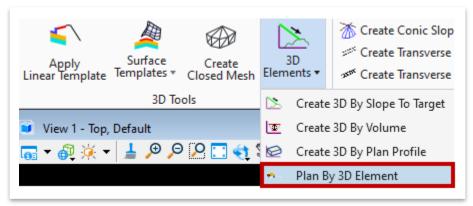




6. Notice the cursor prompt: Locate Linear Feature. Select the water line segment furthest to the right and then select the middle segment to join those two lines. Repeat this process to join the combined line with the water line segment furthest to the left. Once complete, open the Selection tool to deselect and then hover your cursor over the water line and notice that it is one overall line, made up of the 3 segments. Note: This tool can only join two linear features at a time.



 Next, we need to convert the water line into a Civil 3D Plan Element. Switch to the OpenRoads Modeling workflow and open the Plan By 3D Element tool (OpenRoads Modeling >> Model Detailing >> 3D Tools >> 3D Elements). Note: <u>This will need to be done for any utility that you wish to show in profile view</u> where no utility model is necessary (gas, water, etc.).



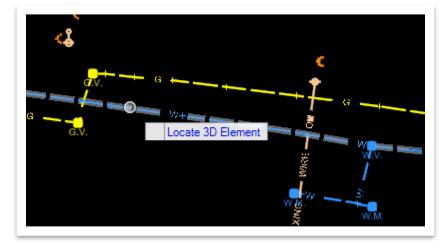




8. Within the Plan By 3D Element dialog box, select the Unknown feature definition (Linear >> Utilities >> Existing >> Underground >> Water) since the size was not included in the survey. You can leave the default Name as-is for now. Note: The software will increment each feature stored by 1.

🔏 Plan B	_	×	
Feature		*	
Feature Definition	Unknown	\sim	
Name EX Water - Unknown			

9. Notice the cursor prompt: Locate 3D Element. Left click on the water line.



10. It will seem like nothing happened. However, within the Explorer, if you open the OpenRoads Model tab and go to Survey Model – Edited.dgn >> 3D Linear Elements, you will notice that the 3D water line was created. Note: We will discuss existing utility projections (non-modeled and modeled) onto profiles in Chapter 4 and then create a profile named boundary and add annotation in Chapter 5.







11. Next, we will demonstrate the **Break**, **Close**, **Move** and **Transpose** tools. Switch back to the **Survey** workflow. All these tools work the same way. Turn on all levels in the **Level Display** and zoom in to the extent shown below.



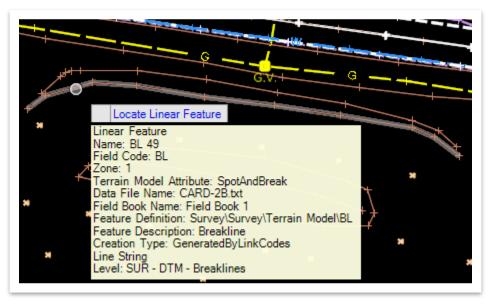
12. Open the **Break** tool (**Survey >> Edit >> Edit Linear**).



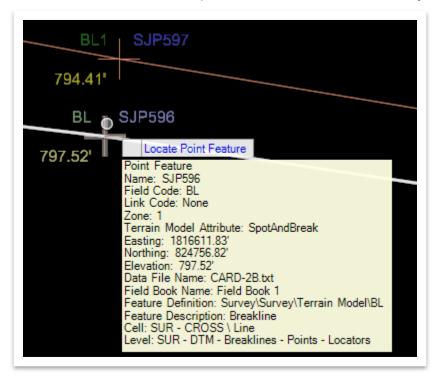




13. Notice the cursor prompt: Locate Linear Feature. Select the breakline, as shown below. You could also select BL 49 from the drop-down menu within the Break Line dialog box.



14. Notice the next cursor prompt: Locate Point Feature. Select the point where you wish to break the line. For this exercise, select point SJP596. Once again, you could also select SJP596 from the drop-down menu within the Breakline dialog box. Note: The decorations (Names, Field Codes, Elevations) have been turned back on so that the correct point could be identified visually.

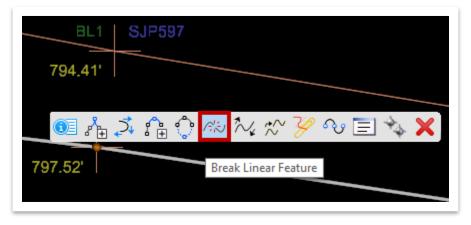




15. If you have the decorations turned on, you will see the point Name (blue text) update with a new name on top of the original name. If you activate the Element Selection tool (Survey >> Edit >> Selection) and select the breakline now, you will notice that the line has been broken into two pieces.

BL1 SJP597 	
Start BL Starbord 96eature_1 Determine_By Feature Definition	

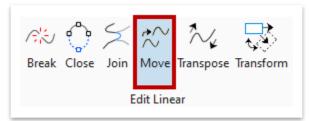
16. Another way to access the **Break Linear Feature** tool is to select the breakline and access the tool within the heads-up display (6th icon from the left). Then, you would only need to locate the point feature. Go ahead and use the **Element Selection** tool and left click anywhere within the drawing to deselect the elements.



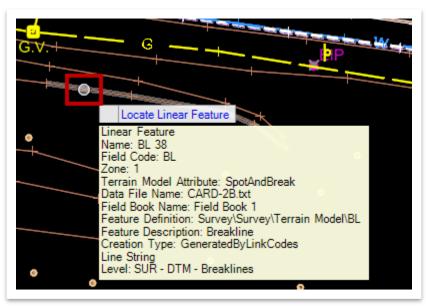




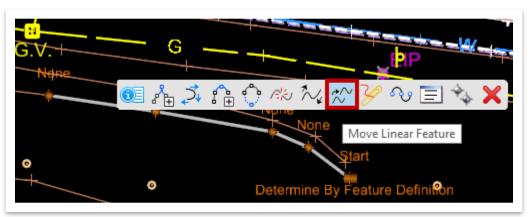
17.Next, let's open the **Move** tool (**Survey** >> **Edit** >> **Edit** Linear), which works similarly to the **Break** tool. Go ahead and turn off the **decorations** for now.



18. Notice the cursor prompt: **Locate Linear Feature**. For this exercise, select **BL 38** and temporarily move the line to see how it works, and then hit **CTRL+Z** to undo.



19. Like the previous tool, you could also select the breakline and access the tool in the heads-up display (6th icon from the right).

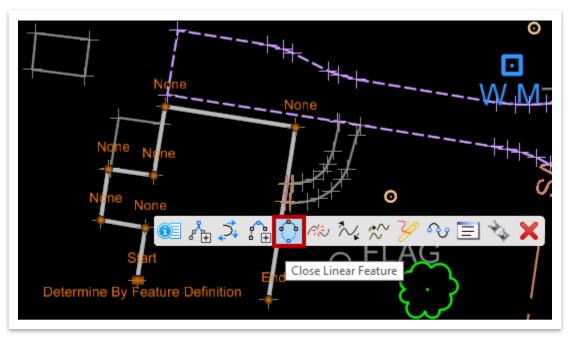




20. Next, zoom in to the highlighted area below so we can close the building shape.



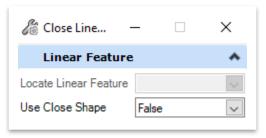
21. Select the building and then open the heads-up **display** menu. Click the fifth icon from the left **Close Linear Feature**.



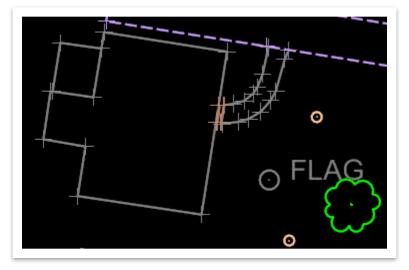




22. Make sure the **Use Close Shape** field is set to **False** within the **Close Linear Feature** dialog box and then left click to accept closure.



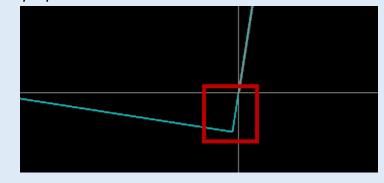
23. You should now see the enclosed building, as shown below.





The **Use Close Shape** (<u>False</u>) option will connect the two points tangentially, regardless if the points are along the same axis.

The **Use Close Shape** (<u>True</u>) option will connect the two points by extending the lines until they intersect and project a point to create a line that is perpendicular to the first.



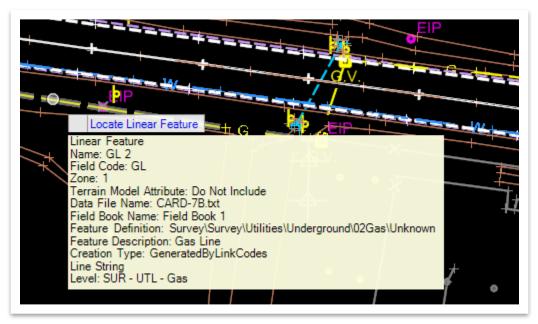




24. The last Edit Linear tool we will open is the **Transpose** tool (**Survey >> Edit >> Edit Linear**).



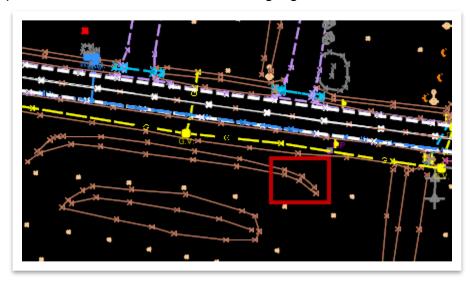
25. Notice the cursor prompt: **Locate Linear Feature**. Select the **Gas** line on the south side of the road, as shown below, and then left click to accept. This essentially reverses the order (direction) of the chain.



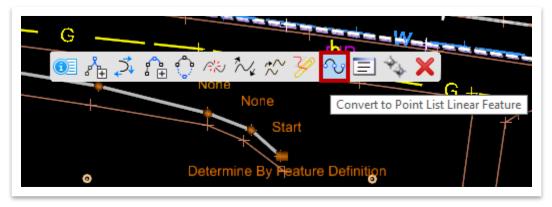




26. We will now jump to the **Edit Linear Point** tools, which work very similar to the previous tools. Zoom into the area highlighted below.



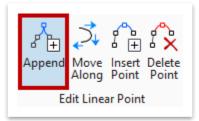
27. Before we utilize the **Append** tool, we need to convert the breakline which we will be appending to a point list linear feature. If this step is not done, the line that is appended to will disappear after processing. A ticket has been logged with Bentley and there is a known defect. Select breakline **BL1 50**, as shown below, and open the **Convert to Point List Linear Feature** tool within the heads-up display (4th icon from the right). **Note:** <u>Only select it one time</u>.



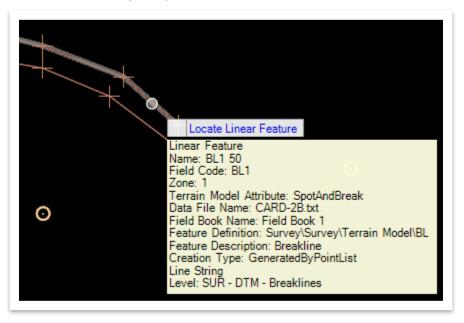




28. Now, go ahead and open the **Append** tool (**Survey >> Edit >> Edit Linear Point**).



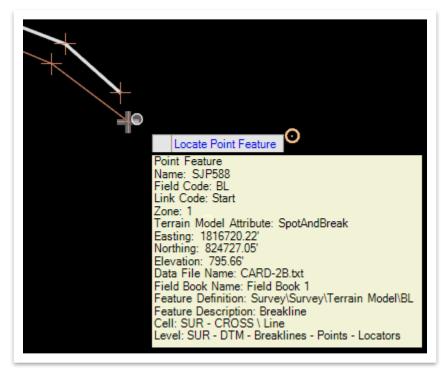
29. Notice the cursor prompt: Locate Linear Feature. Select breakline BL1 50.



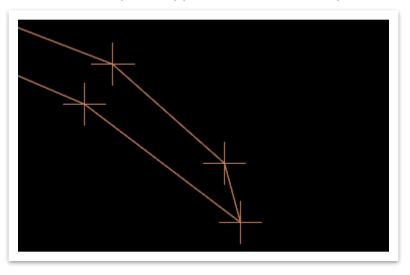




30. Notice the next cursor prompt: **Locate Point Feature**. Select point **SJP588** to append. **Note:** You can turn on the **Names** decorations for reference, if necessary.



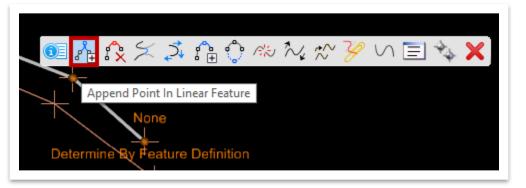
31. Left click to accept the append and notice the updates below.



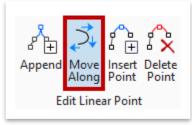




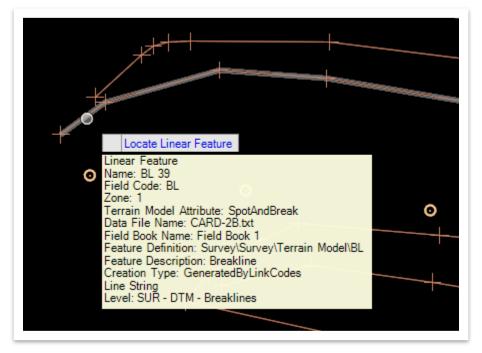
32. Alternatively, you could also select the breakline and access the tool in the headsup display (2nd icon from the left).



33.Zoom left to the other end of the same breaklines and open the **Move Along** tool (Survey >> Edit >> Edit Linear Point).

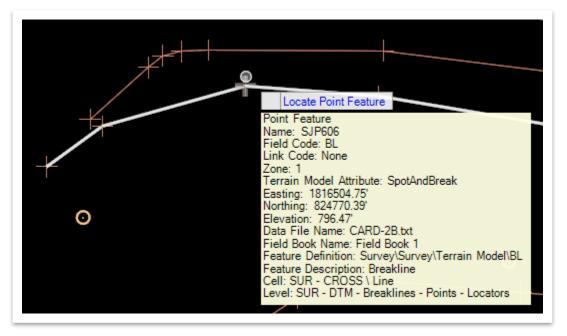


34. Notice the cursor prompt: Locate Linear Feature. Select breakline BL 39.

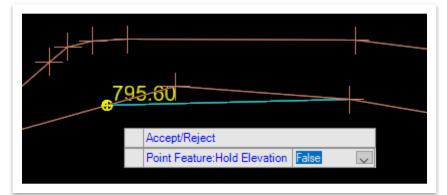


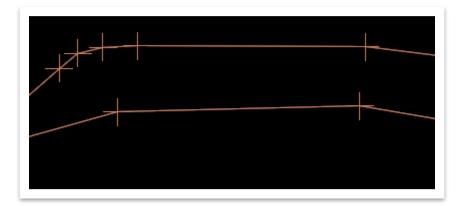


35. Notice the next cursor prompt: Locate Point Feature. Select point SJP606.



36. Move the point anywhere to the right or left of the locator and left click to accept. Leave the **Hold Elevation** set to **False** for this exercise.

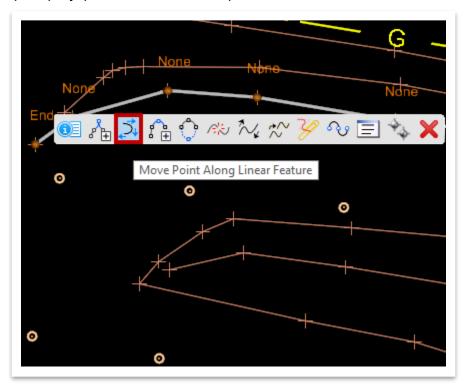




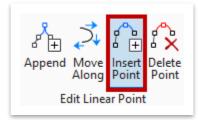




37. Alternatively, you could also select the breakline and access the tool in the headsup display (3rd icon from the left).

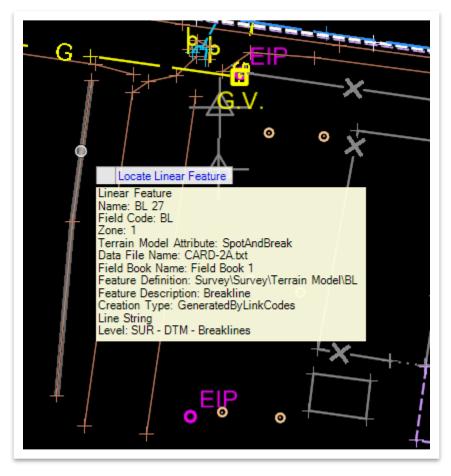


38. Next, open the Insert Point tool (Survey >> Edit >> Edit Linear Point).





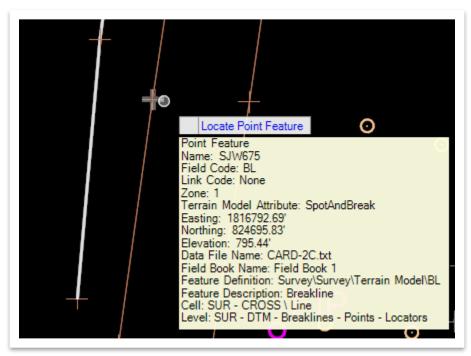
39. Notice the cursor prompt: Locate Linear Feature. Zoom to the right and select breakline **BL 27**.



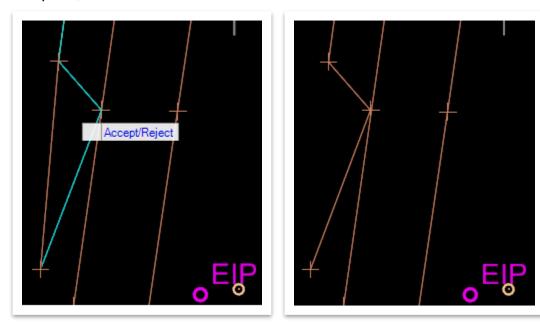




40. Notice the next cursor prompt: **Locate Point Feature**. Select point **SJW675** to add to the **breakline** and then **data-point** to accept the command.



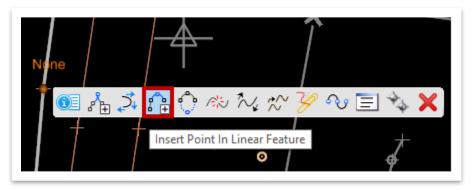
41. Move your cursor to see the different line placements and then left click to accept the option, as shown below.



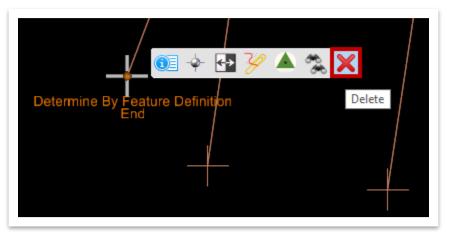




42. Alternatively, you could also select the breakline and access the tool in the headsup display (4th icon from the left).



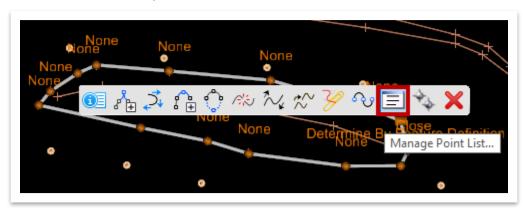
43. To delete a point, simply select the point you want to delete and then access the Delete tool in the heads-up display. For this exercise, we will not delete any points. Note: The Delete Point tool within the Edit Linear Point tools in the ribbon does not work properly. You will get an error unless you have previously converted the line it is associated with to a Point List Linear Feature.







44. Lastly, let's look at the **Manage Point List** tool. Select breakline **BL 58** and then select the 3rd icon from the right in the heads-up display. Within the **Manage Point List** window, you can see the list of points that make up the linear feature. **Link Codes** can also be updated within this window.



Acc	> cept	Cancel Locator		
		Name	LinkCode	
		SJW677	Start	~
		SJW678	None	~
		SJW679	None	~
		SJW680	None	~
		SJW681	None	~
		SJW682	None	~
		SJW683	None	~
		SJW684	None	~
		SJW685	None	~
		SJW686	None	~
		SJW687	None	~
		SJW688	None	~
		SJW689	None	~



Keep in mind that using the **Edit Tools** will also alter the terrain model, if already created. It is highly recommended to make all edits before creating a terrain model. We will explore terrain models in the next section.





3.6 Lecture: Terrain Models

A **Terrain Model** is a set of 3D triangles mathematically computed from point data collected on the surface that is being modeled. Terrain Models are used to define regular and irregular surfaces (e.g. proposed finished grade, subsurface layers). In ORD, Terrain Models are recognized as **civil elements** within the drawing and represent the TIN. The Civil or Digital Terrain Model (DTM) is no longer a external file and can be referenced (e.g. attached) like any other design file. <u>The DTM resides within the DGN file along with all its properties</u>.

3.6.1 Terrain Feature Definitions

DTMs must be assigned a Terrain Feature Definition using TDOT standards to display the feature symbologies (e.g. contours, triangles, etc.). All terrain models coming from

FIGURE 49. TDOT TERRAIN FEATURE DEFINITIONS

🔺 🦣 Terrain Aerial Existing Contours (1' Major / 0.1' Minor) Aerial Existing Contours (1' Major / 0.2' Minor) Aerial Existing Contours (2' Major / 0.5' Minor) Aerial Existing Contours (5' Major / 1' Minor) Aerial Existing Contours (10' Major / 2' Minor) Aerial Existing Ground 🔶 Civil Cell Proposed Contours (5' Major / 1' Minor) Proposed Contours (10' Major / 2' Minor) Proposed DTM Survey Existing Contours (1' Major / 0.1' Minor) Survey Existing Contours (1' Major / 0.2' Minor) Survey Existing Contours (2' Major / 0.5' Minor) Survey Existing Contours (5' Major / 1' Minor) Survey Existing Contours (10' Major / 2' Minor) Survey Existing Ground 🧼 Unsuitable Boundary

Field Surveys should be set to **Survey Existing Ground**. Aside from Civil Cell, the TDOT workspace has **16** Feature Definitions from which to choose. Each of the Feature Definitions shown in Figure 49 have been set up with specific settings for contours and triangles, to name a few.

The **Survey Existing Ground** Feature Definition has been setup to show the **boundary** and **triangles** by default, to allow for triangular editing tools to work properly. However, the user may turn on/off any other property once the terrain has been created (e.g. major/minor contours).

Existing ground profiles and cross sections are children of the terrain model in ORD. That being said, the software plots/displays the original ground for profiles and cross sections using the terrain feature symbology.





The key properties of a terrain <u>feature</u> include **Name**, **Feature Definition Name** and **Display Features**.



Display Features, such as contour spots, breaklines, boundary, contours, triangle, islands, holes and voids are controlled directly from the feature definition assigned to the terrain. They can be turned on and off as necessary and are not separate graphics.

3.6.2 Terrain Tools

The **Terrain** tab houses all the tools necessary to create, import and/or edit digital terrain models (DTM) (Figure 50). A DTM is a new ORD element. It is contained within the DGN file and it is part of the Field Book data when created directly from the imported field data. In this manual, we will focus on the **Create** tools and some of the **Edit** tools.

FIGURE 50. TERRAIN TOOLS



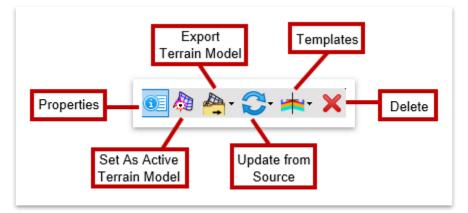




3.6.3 Heads-Up Display – Terrains

The heads-up display options for **terrains** are shown below (Figure 51). The user can access all the edit tools by selecting the terrain boundary in the file. To visualize the heads-up display for points, select (left click) the element and then hover the cursor over the element until it appears. This tool will be utilized in the upcoming exercises.





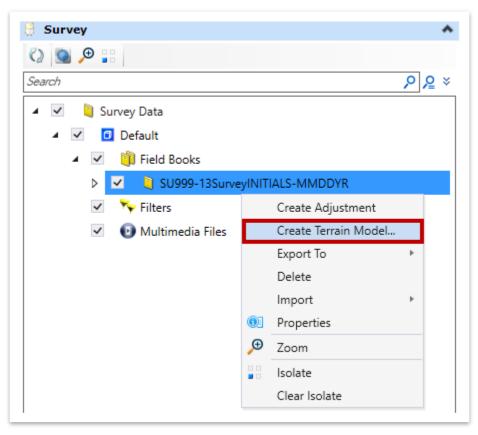
- <u>Set As Active Terrain Model</u>: Used to set the terrain to active. The active terrain is used by other tools, such as existing profiles and corridor templates.
- Export Terrain Model: Used to export the ORD terrain element. There are several
 options available, but the most ideal option would be a LandXML for construction
 applications.
- <u>Update from Source</u>: Used to update a terrain from the original source. This is used when a terrain is being referenced in a DGN file and needs refreshing.
- <u>Templates</u>: Used to select a linear or corridor template to apply to an element within the file. This tool is mainly used in design to create quick 3D models of specific objects.



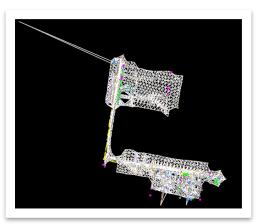
3.6.4 Exercise: Terrain Model Creation – Survey Text Files

In this exercise, we will create a terrain model from the previously imported survey text files and then look at different terrain properties before exporting to a TIN file. <u>This method</u> <u>will be the most commonly used to create the initial terrain model</u>. Since we did quite a bit of editing in the previous file, we will open back up the **Survey Model.dgn** file.

1. Within the **Explorer**, expand the **Survey** tab (if not already). Right click on your **SU999-13SurveyINITIALS-MMDDYR** field book and select **Create Terrain Model**.



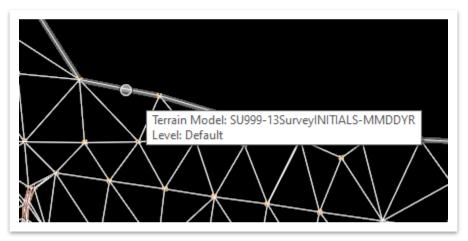
2. Notice the white triangulated terrain that is created.







Select the border of the triangulated terrain and then open the Properties (Survey >> Terrain >> Primary). Note: You could also open the Properties within the heads-up display.



4. Within the **Properties**, expand the **General** tab. These settings show the name and description of the terrain model, as well as all the level symbology. Notice that the level is set to **Default** and the color is set to **zero**. Obviously, these are not the TDOT standards. We will resolve this issue by setting the terrain **feature definition** in the next step.

—	×
: SU999-13SurveyINITIALS-MMDDYR	
	*
Terrain Model: SU999-13SurveyINITIALS-MMDDYR	
Terrain Model: SU999-13SurveyINITIALS-MMDDYR	
Default	
0	
0	
0	
Primary	
(None)	
0	
	*
	*
	Terrain Model: SU999-13SurveyINITIALS-MMDDYR Terrain Model: SU999-13SurveyINITIALS-MMDDYR Default 0 0 0 Primary (None)

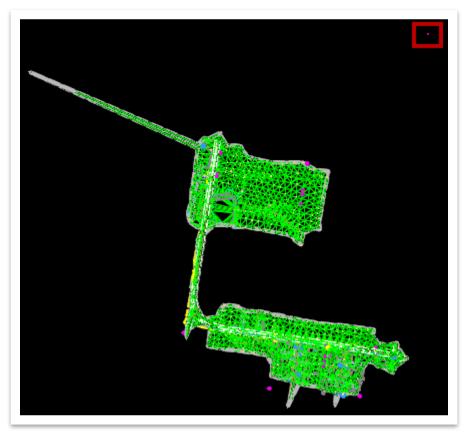




5. Within the **Properties**, expand the **Feature** tab. Left click within the **Feature Definition** field and notice a drop-down arrow appears. Click the arrow and then expand **Terrain** and select **Survey Existing Ground**.

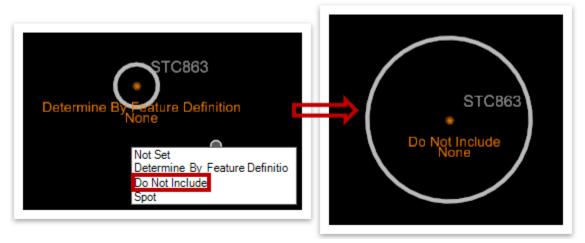
Feature	~
Feature Definition	Survey Existing Ground
Feature Name	SU999-13SurveyINITIALS-MMDDYR

6. Notice that the terrain updated to the correct symbology. There is at least one **point** that shouldn't have been included in the terrain model (**STC863** in the upper right), which we will address in the next step.





7. To exclude the point from the terrain model, first zoom in to point STC863. Select the point and then left click within the Determine By Feature Definition orange text. Within the drop-down menu, change the terrain attribute to Do Not Include. If the orange text doesn't update initially, left click anywhere within the drawing window to deselect the point and then select it again to notice the update. Note: The Names decoration was turned on for the screenshot.



8. Next, let's turn off the triangles and turn on the contours. Select the terrain boundary and then expand the Calculated Features Display tab within the Properties. Toggle the Major and Minor Contours fields to On and the Triangles field to Off. Note: You can either change the toggle using the drop-down option within the applicable field or simply double click in the field to switch between.

Calculated Features Display		
Major Contours	On	
Minor Contours	On	
Triangles	Off	
Spots	Off	
Flow Arrows	Off	
Low Points	Off	
High Points	Off	



The contours are a feature of the terrain and are not physically drawn in the dgn file. In ORD, they should be turned on/off utilizing the toggle within the terrain **Properties**.



9. It should be noted within the Extended tab that the terrain is Unlocked by default. It is recommended to Lock it to avoid any changes to the original data. However, for this exercise, we will leave the terrain unlocked while exploring other properties.

Extended		
Model	Default	
Last Modified	2/27/2021 7:38:22 PM	
Snappable	Snappable	
Modified	Modified	
New	New	
Locked	Unlocked	

10. Now, expand the **Source Features Display** tab. The most important feature to turn on is the terrain **Boundary**. By default, notice that it is **On**, which is based on the feature definition we selected previously. Other feature definitions have other defaults that you may want to see displayed automatically.

Source Features Display		
Breaklines	Off	
Boundary	On	
Imported Contours	Off	
Islands	Off	
Holes	Off	
Voids	Off	
Feature Spots	Off	

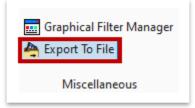
11. Lastly, expand the Edge Method tab and make sure the Length is set to 100.00'. The Edge Method field allows you to determine the triangulation option for the DTM. The Max Edge Length option allows you to set the maximum length for triangulating around the edge of a DTM. The other two options are None and Sliver. The None option keeps all external triangles and the Sliver option dissolves long thin external triangles based on a formula that is hard coded within the software.

Edge Method		*
Edge Method	Max Edge Length	
Length	100.00'	





12. Now that we have reviewed the properties, we need to export the terrain and create a **TIN** file. Open the **Export To File** tool (**Survey >> Terrain >> Miscellaneous**).



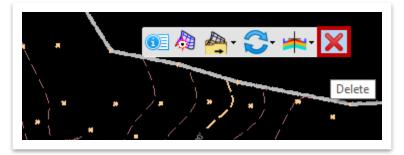
- 13. Within the **Export Terrain Model** dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Select Terrain: SU999-13SurveyINITIALS-MMDDYR
 - b. Export Format: GEOPAK TIN (.tin)

&∂ Export Ter	rain Model	_		×
Paramet	ers			*
Select Terrain	SU999-13Sur	veyINITI	ALS-MMD	DYR
Export Format	GEOPAK TIN	(.tin)		\sim

14. Left click to accept the settings. You will be prompted to save the TIN file. By default, the software should open to your workset dgn subfolder location and prepopulate the file name with your field book name. We will leave the name as-is for this exercise. Go ahead and click **Save**.

File name:	SU999-13SurveyINITIALS-MMDDYR.tin		
Save as type:	*.tin		
	File 🔻	Directory	•

15. Now, for an actual project, you would then left click to select the terrain boundary and click **Delete** in the heads-up display so that it is removed from the **Survey Model.dgn** file. As a reminder, the existing terrain will now be submitted as a separate dgn file utilizing the **import** process, which is shown in the next exercise with a pre-created TIN file.







3.6.5 Exercise: Terrain Model Creation – TIN File

In this exercise, we will create a terrain model from a TIN file and then look at different terrain properties. In additional to TIN files, other file formats that can be utilized are XYZ (text files), LandXML, Lidar (LAS), Digital Elevation Models (DEM) and others. <u>This method is the second part to creating the existing terrain dgn file</u>.

1. Create a new file and name it **Existing Terrain – TIN**. Select the **TDOTSeed3D**. **dgn** and click **Save**.

File name:	Existing Terrain - TIN.dgn 🗸 🗸 🗸	Save
Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) <	Cancel
Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Coi	Browse

2. Open the From File tool (Survey >> Terrain >> Create).

 From File From Graphical Filter From Elements 	Additional Methods *	Topo Import *
Crea	ate	

 Select the SU999-13 DTM.TIN file within the SURVEY_Training workset dgn subfolder and click Done. Within the Import Terrain Model(s) dialog box, skip down to File Options.



If you are appending to an existing model, you will need to check the box and select a Terrain Feature Definition. However, **Projection should never be used because those projections are already completed in the survey software in which the data was collected**. Geographic Coordinate Systems (GCS) are needed to exchange files between ORD and GIS applications, and to inform downstream users that the files have a GCS.





- 4. Under File Options, select the following settings.
 - a. **Source File Units:** Leave as-is. This field will take care of itself and disappear once the geographic coordinate system is selected in the next step.
 - b. Feature Definition: Terrain\Survey Existing Ground
 - c. Import Options: Import Terrain Only

Options	
Filter	*
Source File Units	Unknown 🗸
Feature Definition	*
Feature Definition	Terrain\Survey Existing Ground 🗸
Triangulation Options	*
Import Options	Import Terrain Only

5. Under Geographical Coordinate Systems, click the ellipses next to the Source field. You should already have the correct coordinate system saved as a Favorite (TN83/2011F – NSRS11 (NAD83/ 2011) Tennessee State Plane Zone, US Foot) from earlier in the manual. If not, you can browse to it here: Library >> Projected (northing, easting, ...) >> North America >> United States of America >> Tennessee. Once selected, click OK.

ibrary Search				
	Coordinate Sy	ystem	*	1
	Name	TN83/201	1F	
	Description	NSRS11(AD83/20	
	Projection	Lambert C	onformal C	
	EPSG Code	6576		
	Source	EPSG:657	76	
	Units	US Survey	y Foot	
	First Standard P	a 36°25'00.	0000"N	
< >>	Second Standard	d 35°15'00.	0000"N	•







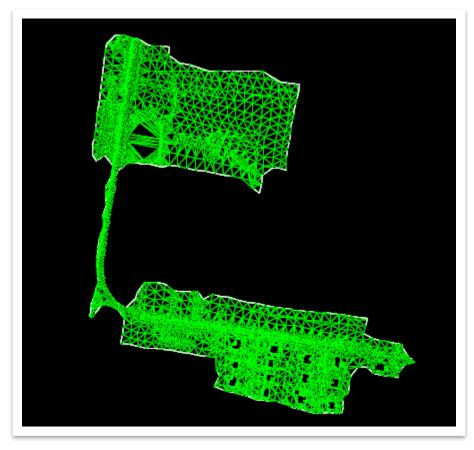
It is not recommended to set a projection target for your TIN models or other DTM's. To set up the Geographic Coordinate System, a GIS application such as ArcGIS or Google Earth can be used for the data exchange.

6. Next, click **Import** and then close the **Import Terrain Model(s)** dialog box once processed.

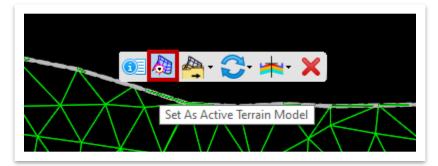
ort Terrain Model(s)	– 🗆 ×
	Global Options
	Terrain Models 🔦
SU999-13 DTM	Append to existing Terrain Model
	Projection 🔺
	Target None TargetDescription TargetUnits
	File Options
	Feature Definition Terrain\Survey Existing
	Feature Definition Terrain\Survey Existing Triangulation Options
	Triangulation Options
	Triangulation Options Import Options Import Options Import Options Import Options Source
	Triangulation Options Import Options Import Terrain Only Geographical Coordinate Sy



7. Click Fit View and review the model. It should look like the image below.

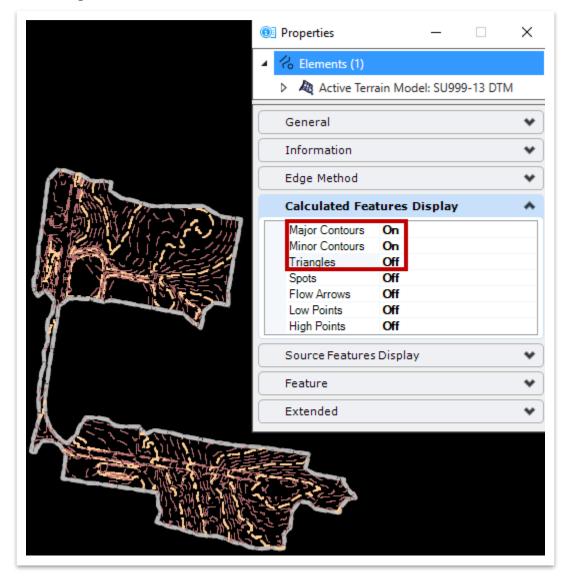


8. Select the **terrain** boundary and bring up the heads-up display. Click the second icon to **Set As Active Terrain Model**.





 Now, with the terrain boundary still selected, open the Properties (Survey >> Terrain >> Primary or Heads-Up Display >> 1st icon). Expand the Calculated Features Display tab and toggle the Major and Minor Contours fields to On and the Triangles field to Off.





Create From Graphical Filter is the next Terrain tool. However, this function is more applicable for roadway designers. Graphical filters are groups of graphic model elements and allow the user to create proposed design DTM's (e.g. Design Grading Surface, Design Roadway Surface).





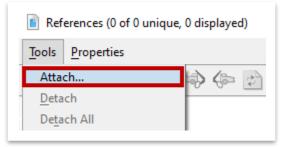
3.6.6 Exercise: Terrain Model Creation – Elements (Aerial Survey)

In this exercise, we will create a terrain model from 3D aerial graphics (points and breaklines) and then look at different terrain properties.

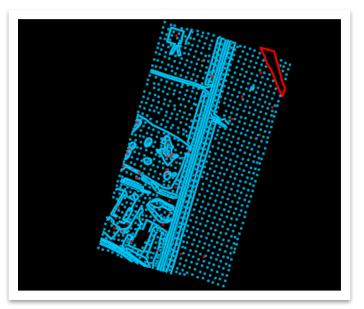
1. Create a new file and name it **Existing Terrain – Elements**. Select the **TDOTSeed 3D.dgn** and click **Save**.

File name:	Existing Terrain - Elements -	Save
Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) $\qquad \qquad \lor$	Cancel
Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co	Browse

 Open the References window (Survey >> Terrain >> Primary) and go to Tools >> Attach.



3. Select the 131-129dtm.dgn file and set the Attachment Method to Coincident World. Click Open and then Fit View and notice the image below. Go ahead and close the References window. Note: If you kept Attachment Method set to Interactive in the Attach Reference window, you can select the correct orientation in the next window that appears and then click OK.



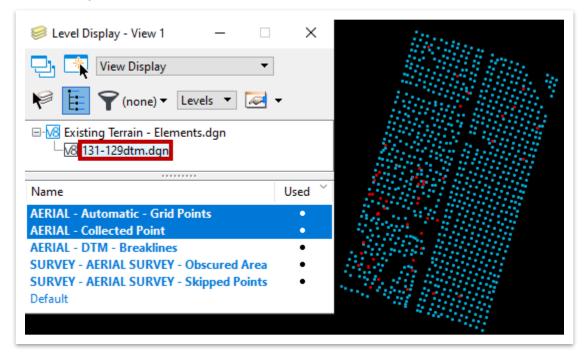




4. Next, open the Level Display (Survey >> Home >> Primary).



5. Select the **131-129dtm.dgn** reference file in the **Level Display** and **turn off** all levels except **AERIAL - Automatic - Grid Points** and **AERIAL - Collected Point**.



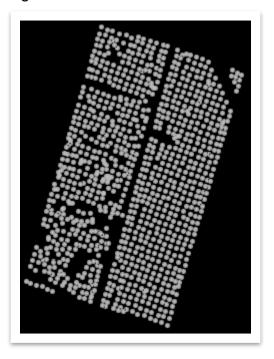




6. Now, open the **Element Selection** tool (**Survey >> Terrain >> Selection**) and select the **Block** method. Draw a rectangle around **all** points.



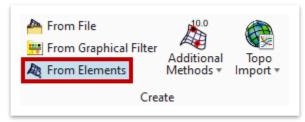
7. Your **selection set** should look like the image below. **Note:** Your highlight color might be set to a different color.







8. To create the terrain from the selected elements, open the **From Elements** tool (**Survey >> Terrain >> Create**).



- 9. Within the **Create Terrain Model By Elements** dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Feature Type: Spot
 - b. Edge Method: Max Triangle Length
 - c. Max Side Length: 75.00
 - d. Feature Definition: Terrain >> Aerial Existing Ground
 - e. Name: Aerial Existing Ground

_	×
;	*
Spot	\sim
Max Triangle Length	\sim
75.00	
	*
Aerial Existing Groun	d 🗸
Aerial Existing Groun	d
	Max Triangle Length 75.00 Aerial Existing Groun





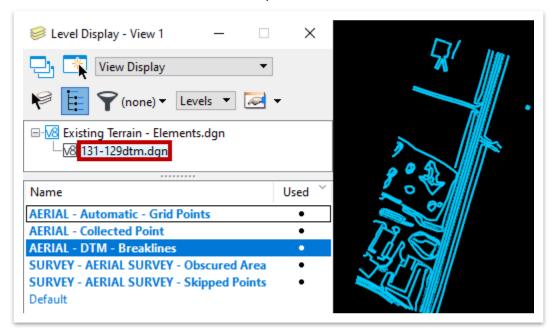
10.Left click once to add **all** selected elements and then left click through the remaining prompts to accept the terrain creation. Right click to clear the tool. You should notice that a terrain boundary has been created automatically.



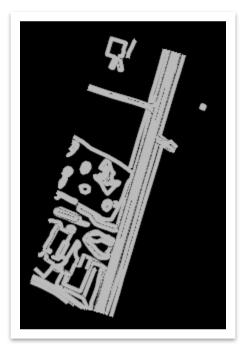




11. Now, we will repeat the process and add the **breaklines**. Within the **Level Display**, turn off all levels in the <u>active file</u> and then select the **131-129dtm.dgn** reference file. This time **turn off** all levels except **AERIAL - DTM – Breaklines**.



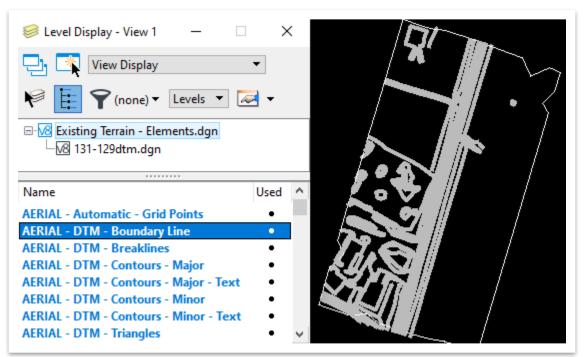
12. Next, open the **Element Selection** tool (**Survey >> Terrain >> Selection**) and select the **Block** method once again. Draw a rectangle around **all** breaklines. Your **selection set** should look like the image below.







13. With the breaklines still selected, go back to the **Level Display** and turn on the **AERIAL - DTM - Boundary Line** level in the <u>active</u> file.



14. Open the Add Features tool (Survey >> Terrain >> Edit >> Feature Management).



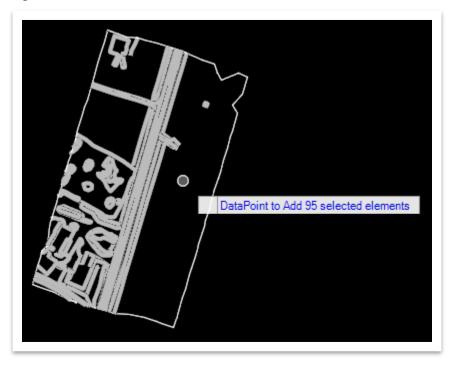




- 15. Notice the cursor prompt: Locate Terrain Model To Add Elements. You could select the terrain boundary line in plan view, but we will select the settings within the Add/Remove Terrain Model Features dialog box.
 - a. Terrain Model: Aerial Existing Ground (if it was not set to Active Terrain)
 - b. Feature Type: Break Line (if not already populated)

🔏 Add/	_		×
Paramet	ters		*
Terrain Model	Aerial E	xisting G	round ~
Feature Type	Break L	ine	\sim

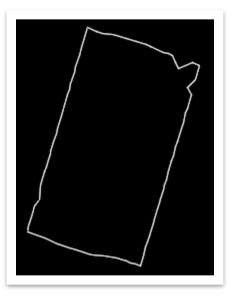
16. Notice the new cursor prompt: **DataPoint to Add 95 selected elements**. Left click to add the selected elements and then left click to accept the remaining prompts. Right click to clear the tool.







17. Now that the points and breaklines have been added, **turn off** all levels within the **131-129dtm.dgn** reference file and **turn on** all levels in the **active** file.



18.Next, open the **Element Selection** tool (**Survey >> Terrain >> Selection**) and select the **Individual** method.





19. Select the terrain boundary line and view the **Properties**. Expand the **Calculated Features Display** tab and turn on the **Major Contours**.

	🧾 Properties —	×
	 Clements (1) Terrain Model: Aerial Existing Ground 	
	General	*
	Information	*
	Edge Method	*
a is mille	Calculated Features Display	*
	Major Contours On	
	Minor Contours Off	
	Triangles Off	
1 Stan	Spots Off	
10 martin	Flow Arrows Off	
6 6 534	Low Points Off	
5 2 11	High Points Off	
	Source Features Display	*
7	Feature	*
	Feature Definition Aerial Existing Ground	
	Feature Name Aerial Existing Ground	
	Extended	*



- Properties × 🔏 Elements (1) A Terrain Model: Aerial Existing Ground General Information Edge Method **Calculated Features Display** Major Contours Off Minor Contours Off Triangles On Spots Off Flow Arrows Off Low Points Off High Points Off Source Features Display Feature Feature Definition Aerial Existing Ground Aerial Existing Ground Feature Name Extended
- 20. Lastly, turn off the Major Contours and turn on the Triangles.



Terrain models are a civil element and feature definitions control the way they look and behave. The Properties dialog box will be the place to change Feature Definitions, Feature Name (terrain name) and Edge Method and where to turn Calculated Features (e.g. triangles and contours) on and off.





3.6.7 Exercise: Terrain Model Creation – Additional Methods

In this exercise, we will import a point cloud file into ORD and show how to create a terrain model with the Reality Modeling tools. It is recommended, however, that terrains are created in the point cloud software and <u>classified</u>, and then exported to import into ORD.

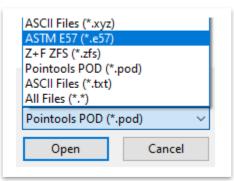
1. Create a new file and name it **Existing Terrain – PointClouds**. Select the **TDOT Seed3D.dgn** and click **Save**.

File name:	Existing Terrain - PointClouds.dgn	Save
Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) $\qquad \qquad \lor$	Cancel
Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co	Browse

 Open the Point Clouds window (Survey >> Terrain >> Primary >> Attach Tools) and go to File >> Attach.



3. Change the file filter from Pointools POD (*.pod) to ASTM E57 (*.e57).



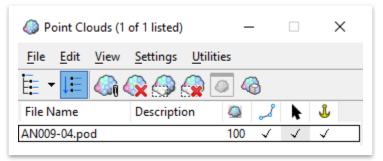




4. Select the **AN009-04.e57** file and click **Open**. The following dialog will appear. We will assume that the **Source Geometry Unit** is **US Survey Feet**, so go ahead and update that field. Leave all other default values as-is and click **OK**.

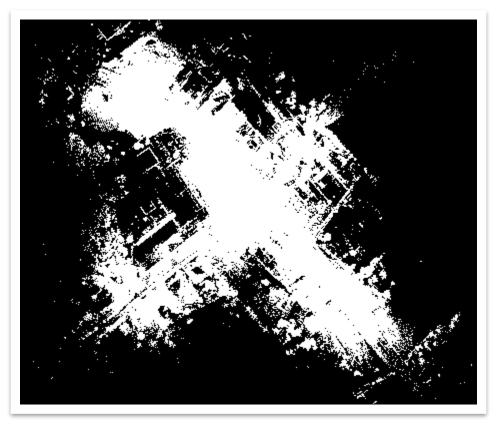
onvert ASTM E57-C:\Program	mData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer >
Action	^
Attach	Yes
Options	*
Import RGB	Yes
Import Intensities	Yes
Import Normals	Yes
Normalize Intensities	Yes
Compression	Aerial LIDAR data 0.050 (50mm)
Generate Normals	No
Spatial Filtering	Disabled
Spatial Spacing	0.00100
Geographic Informati	ion 🔺
Source Geometry Unit	US Survey Feet 🗸 🗸
	OK Cancel

- 5. A **Specify new pod file** window will appear. By default, the software will open to the **SURVEY_Training** workset dgn subfolder and pre-populate the file name with **AN009-04.pod**. Leave the file name as-is and click **Save**.
- 6. The software will now convert the **e57** file into an ORD **POD** file, so give it a few minutes to process. Once complete, notice that the file now appears in the **Point Clouds** window.





7. Click Fit View and notice the black and white extents of the point cloud.





Take Note!

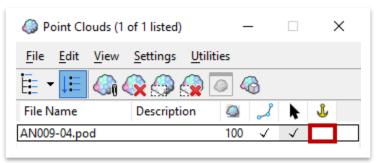
Remember that **Lidar** files are very large, and the software may take some time to import. Also, consider processing the point clouds in the scanning software to add breaklines and reduce points to create a DTM for design. However, having the point cloud is useful for designers to analyze existing terrain conditions, so you will need to create a POD file using the import options shown in this exercise. It is not uncommon for the software to crash during the import. If that happens, simply re-open the file as needed.

8. It is important that the point cloud be geospatially correct. Although its accuracy level is not obvious without any referenced data, we will assume that an adjustment is needed for this exercise. We will confirm the point cloud coordinate system and then scale it by the inverse of the datum adjustment factor. For this exercise, we will assume the same coordinate system that we have been using and then a **1.00009** datum adjustment factor. **Note:** It is recommended to apply a scale factor up front if the pod file will be used in final design.





9. Within the **Point Clouds** window, toggle off the **anchor** column (highlighted below). This will allow us to make location edits to the point cloud.



10. Right click on the pod file and select **GeoCS** >> **Select From Library**.

Operation of the second sec				×
<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> ie	w <u>S</u> ettings <u>U</u> tilit	ies		
ie - 💷 🎸	à 🐼 🗇 🎡 🛽	۵ 🔇		
File Name	Description	چي 🞑	h	Ĵ,
AN009-04.pod	GeoCS +	Select F	rom Lil	brary
	🕼 Attach	Delete		

- 11. Confirm that the following coordinate system is selected: **TN83/2011F NSRS11** (NAD83/ 2011) Tennessee State Plane Zone, US Foot. Note: If you had set the coordinate system of the dgn file, this should already be selected.
- 12. Next, right click once again on the pod file and select **Scale**. Enter **0.999910** (inverse of 1.00009). Then, key-in **xy=0,0** in the **Key In** tool so that the point cloud will scale about the origin. Hit **Enter** to accept the scaling.

🔏 Scale	- 🗆	×	
Method:	Active Scale		
<u>X</u> Scale:	0.999910		
<u>Y</u> Scale:	0.999910	-4	xy=0,0
Z Scale:	0.999910		: xy=0,0
Copies:	1		
Use Fence:	Inside 🔹		
	About Elemen	t C <u>e</u> nter	
		•	

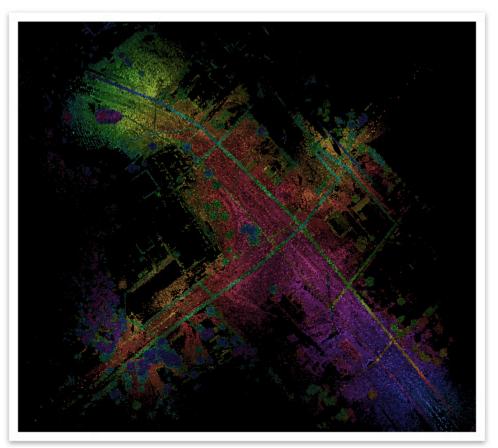


13. Now, open View Attributes in the upper left corner of View 1 - Top, Default.



14. Change the **Point Cloud Style** from None to **Elevation & Intensity** to see colors.







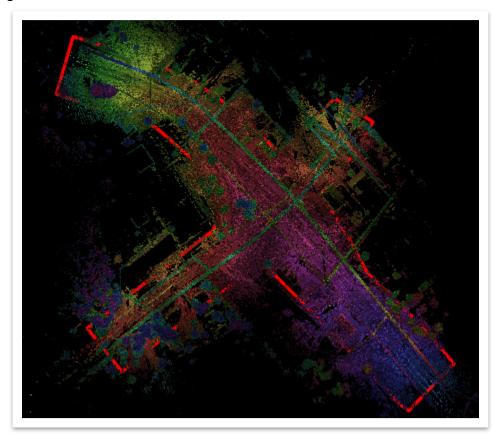




Before we can create a **Terrain** model, we will need to clip the point cloud to the area from which we want to extract the ground. Since this is a terrestrial laser scan data set, we need to do a bit of manipulation to make sure that we do not include areas where the laser scanner could not reach the ground and thus have sparse point density.

The process requires several steps, which include drawing the point cloud boundary, using Point Cloud tools to clip the area outside of the desired boundary, and using Reality Modeling workflow tools.

15. Next, open the **References** window (**Survey** >> **Terrain** >> **Primary** >> **Attach Tools**) and attach the **Point_Cloud_Boundary.dgn** file. Make sure to and set the **Attachment Method** to **Coincident World** and then click **Open**. This file contains a previously drawn red boundary. For an actual project, you would need to draw the boundary in this file based on your specific data set. **Note:** The boundary should be drawn to avoid areas where the laser scanner could not reach the ground.







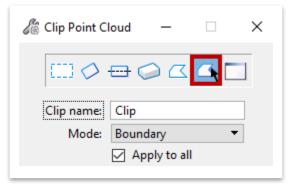
16. The boundary <u>must</u> be in the active file, so now we need to **merge** the reference file into the master file. Within the **References** window, right click on the **Point_Cloud_Boundary.dgn** reference file and select **Merge Into Master**. Notice that a **Merge References** window appears. Go ahead and leave both boxes unchecked for this exercise. Left click anywhere within the drawing and you should get an **Alert**. Click **OK** to accept and notice the file will disappear from the **References** window. Go ahead and close the References window once you are done.

🜍 Alert	×
You Have Selected 1 References To Merge Into The Current De	esign
🗌 Do not display again.	
<u>о</u> к с	Cancel

17. Now, open the **Point Clouds** window once again (**Survey** >> **Terrain** >> **Primary** >> **Attach Tools**) and select the **AN009-04.pod**. Go to **Edit** >> **Clip** (or 4th icon from the right).

Ø Point Clouds (1 of 1 listed)				_			×
<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u>	dit <u>V</u> iew	<u>S</u> ettings	<u>U</u> tilities				
E C	Clip						
File N	Delete 🕻	Clip	n	0	S	k	L
AN009	Edit <u>C</u> la	ssification	<u> </u>	100	~		
2	Tile <u>E</u> xp	ort					

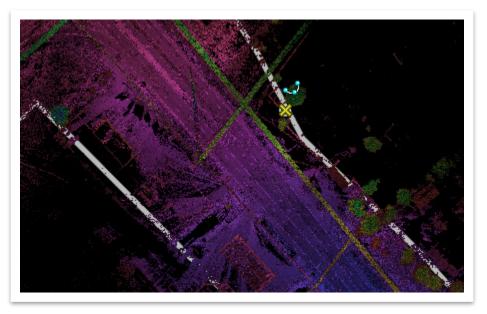
18. Within the **Clip Point Cloud** dialog box, select the **Element** clipping method (2nd icon from the right).



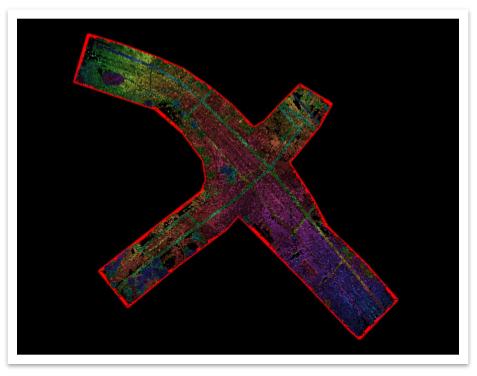




19. Zoom in and select the **red boundary**.



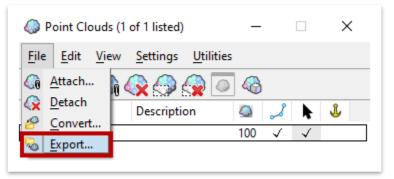
20. Left click once more to accept the clip and then click **Fit View** and notice that the point cloud is now clipped to the boundary.







21. Next, we will need to export the clipped point cloud for further processing. Within the **Point Clouds** window, select the **AN009-04.pod** file and go to **File >> Export**.



22. An **Export Point Cloud** dialog box should appear. Change the **Region Filter** from All to **Clip** and then click **OK**.

Expo	ort Point Cloud	×
	Options	*
	Format	Pointools POD (*.pod)
	Region Filter	Clip 🗸
	Density	100.0000
>	Channels	
	Channels	OK Cancel

23. You will be prompted to save the clipped POD file in the **SURVEY_Training** workset dgn subfolder. Name the new file **AN009-04 - Clipped.pod** and then click **Save**.

File name:	AN009-04 - Clipped.pod
	Pointools POD (*.pod)
Save as type.	Pointools POD (.pod)
	File 🔻

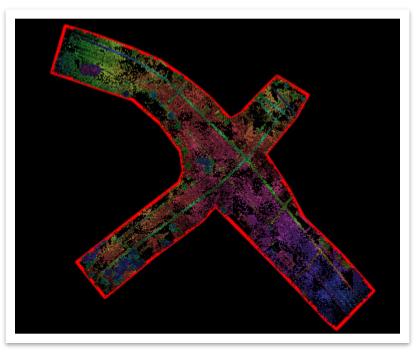




24. Once exported, **detach** the current point cloud (**AN009-04.pod**) and **attach** the new clipped point cloud (**AN009-04 - Clipped.pod**).

Ø Point Clouds (1 of 1 listed)	– 🗆 🗙
<u>File Edit View Settings U</u> tiliti	es
🗄 • 🔚 🎧 🐼 🖓 🚱	A
File Name Detach Point Cl	oud 🔉 🎿 🖡 🕹
AN009-04.pod	100 🗸 🗸
Ø Point Clouds (1 of 1 listed)	- 🗆 🗙
<u>File Edit View Settings U</u> tiliti	es
🗄 📲 🎧 🚱 🚱 🚺	
File Name Description	on 🙆 🎜 📐 🕹
AN009-04 - Clipped.pod	100 🗸 🗸 🗸

25. You should see the clipped point cloud, as shown below.





Before creating the terrain model, we will need to extract **seed points**. Seed points represent terrain elevations that can be used for creating scalable terrain models.





26. Now, we need to switch to the Reality Modeling workflow in the upper left of the screen and open the Ground Extraction tool (Reality Modeling >> Extract >> Reality Models). This tool will allow the automatic creation of a tin and stm file. Note: You could also open this tool within the Point Clouds window under Edit.



- 27. Within the Ground Extraction dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Seed Mode: Automatic
 - b. Largest Infrastructure Size: 10.00
 - c. Terrain Variation: 3
 - d. Seeds: Checkmark
 - e. Level: SUR DTM Spot Points
 - f. Classified Point Cloud: Checkmark
 - g. Classification Tolerance: Automatic
 - h. Max Triangle Edge: 30.00
 - i. Terrain: Checkmark
 - j. Scalable Mesh: Unchecked

Cround Extraction	_		\times
Seed <u>M</u> ode:	Automatic		•
Largest Infrastructure Size:	10.00	1	1111
Terrain Variation:	3 Small		High
Output:			
✓ Seeds			
<u>L</u> evel:	SUR - DTM - Spot Points		-
Classified Point Cloud			
<u>Classification</u> Tolerance:	Automatic		-
Max. Triangle <u>E</u> dge:	30.00	2	1111
✓ <u>T</u> errain			
Scalable Mesh			



28. Left click anywhere within the mesh to select it and then left click again to accept. The software will create two files: a Geopak Tin and a Scalable Terrain Model (.stm). You will be prompted to save both files. By default, the file will be saved within the SURVEY_Training workset dgn subfolder. Name the two files AN009-04 - Clipped.tin and AN009-04 - Clipped.stm respectively.

File name: AN009-04 - Clipped.tin	File name: AN009-04 - Clipped.stm
Save as type: Geopak Tin File (*.tin)	Save as type: Scalable Terrain Model (*.stm)
File 🔻	File 🔻



A **Scalable Terrain Model** is a new concept in ORD. Because of extremely dense data sets (e.g. point clouds, reality meshes), scalability enables faster processing and visualization. **STM** files can be exported to a TIN file within ORD.

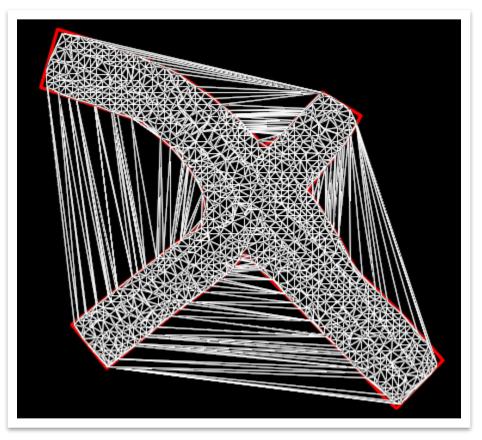
29. Within the **Point Clouds** window, turn **off** the pod file in **View 1** by clicking the **1** in the lower left corner (highlighted below). This will make it easier to review the new terrain. **Note:** It is recommended to provide the cleanest possible pod file for use by design, free of erroneous data. To create a reduced-size pod file with just the extracted ground points, you would go to File >> Export and make sure the Classification Filter was set to **1 Class (Ground)** and the **Point Filter** set to **Classification**. For this exercise, however, we will move to the next step.

Point Clouds (1 of 1 listed) —						
<u>File Edit View Settin</u>	gs <u>U</u> tilities					
🗄 • 🖪 🎧 🚱 🤅	🎙 🙆 🧟	3				
File Name	Description	4	\$_	k	J.	
AN009-04 - Clipped.pod		100	\checkmark	\checkmark	\sim	
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	2 🕨 🕹					





30. Once the terrain is created, you should see the image below. Go ahead and switch back to the **Survey** workflow in the upper left of the screen.



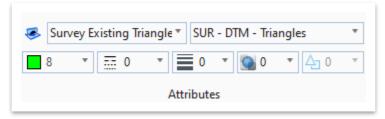
31. Next, select the terrain boundary or anywhere within the mesh (not the red boundary) and open the Scalable Terrain Model Properties (Survey >> Terrain >> Primary). Notice under the General tab that the symbology is not set to TDOT standards. We will need to change the properties.

OPPOPerties	
A Elements (1)	
👂 👆 Scalable Terrai	in Model
General	*
Element Description	Scalable Terrain Model
Level	Default
Color	ByLevel (0)
Line Style	ByLevel (0)
Weight	ByLevel (0)
Class	Primary
Template	(None)
Transparency	0





32. Under the **Home** tab, select the **Survey Existing Triangles** element template (**Design >> Roadway - 3D Modeling >> Terrain >> Existing - Survey**). Alternatively, you could key-in the element template name in the **Search Templates** field. This will allow the label to display with the correct attributes.



33. Notice that the **General** settings automatically updated within the **Scalable Terrain Model Properties**.

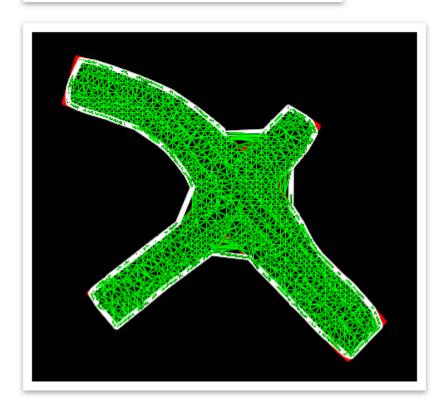
Properties	
A Elements (1)	
👂 👆 Scalable Terrai	n Model
General	^
Element Description	Scalable Terrain Model
Level	SUR - DTM - Triangles
Color	8
Line Style	0
Weight	0
Class	Primary
Template	(None)
Transparency	0





- 34. Within the **Properties**, select the following settings under the **Edge Method** tab and notice the update.
 - a. Edge Method: Max Edge Length
 - b. Length: 80.00'

Edge Method		*
Edge Method	Max Edge Length	
Length	80.00'	

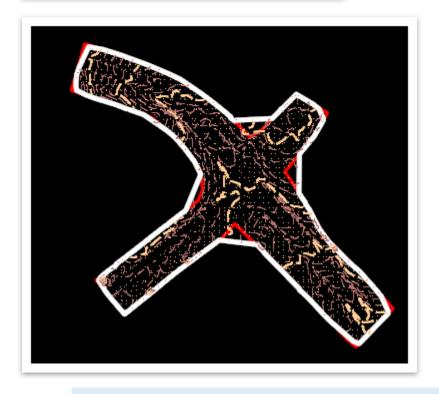






35. Lastly, toggle the **Major** and **Minor Contours** fields to **On** and the **Triangles** field to **Off**. Keep the **Draped Rasters** field toggled **Off**.

Calculated Feat	tures Display	~
Major Contours	On	
Minor Contours	On	
Triangles	Off	
Draped Rasters	Off	





Because a raw point cloud is extremely dense and complex, point cloud classification and creation of digital terrain models should be done by a laser scanning technician in the native scanning software.

In this exercise, we demonstrated using the ORD **Ground Extraction** tool by extracting seed points from a raw point cloud to create a scalable terrain model and a TIN. If this method is used, the terrain should be thoroughly inspected prior to delivery.

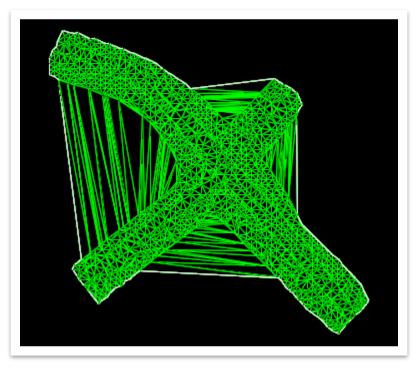




3.6.8 Exercise: Terrain Model Creation – Clipped Terrain Model

In this exercise, we will utilize a pre-existing terrain and clip a rectangle from it to create an updated DTM.

1. Open the **Existing Terrain – Clipped.dgn** file within the **SURVEY_Training** workset dgn subfolder and notice the triangulated terrain.



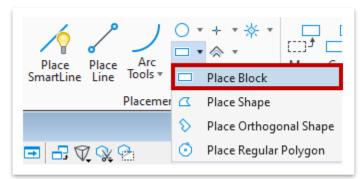
2. Select the **OL** element template (**Survey >> Terrain Model >> Lines**) and then change the line weight to **6**.



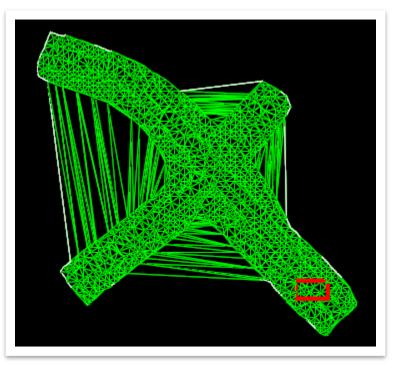




3. Next, open the **Place Block** tool (**Survey >> Drawing >> Placement >> Polygon Tools**).



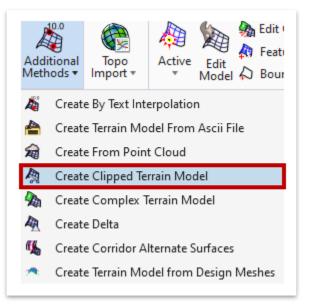
4. Zoom in to the lower right corner of the terrain and draw a rectangle, as shown below.



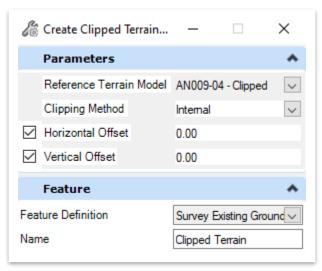




 Select the terrain boundary and then open the Properties. Go ahead and turn off the triangles and then open the Create Clipped Terrain Model tool (Survey >> Terrain >> Create >> Additional Methods).



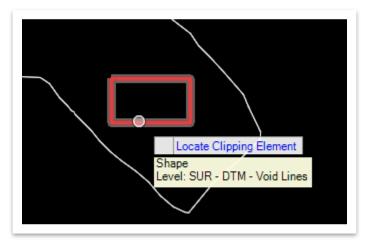
- 6. Within the Create Clipped Terrain Model dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Reference Terrain Model: AN009-04 Clipped
 - b. Clipping Method: Internal
 - c. Horizontal/Vertical Offsets: Checkmark and set to 0.00
 - d. Feature Definition: Terrain >> Survey Existing Ground
 - e. Name: Clipped Terrain



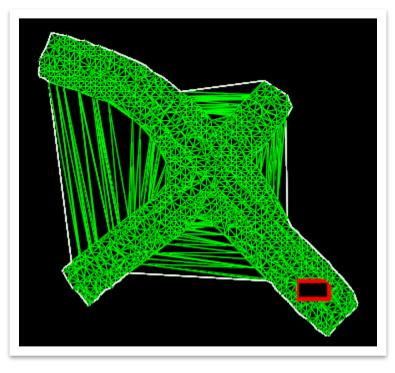




7. Notice the cursor prompt: **Select Clipping Element**. Select the rectangle that you drew earlier in the exercise. Since there is only one clipping element, right click when prompted for the next element.



8. Left click to accept the remaining prompts and then click **Fit View**. Notice that the clipped triangulation has been removed from the terrain.





Clipping the terrain can be useful when you need to **exclude** buildings and other features that you may not want to include in the terrain. You can also clip externally to remove triangles outside of a desired boundary.





3.6.9 Exercise: Terrain Model Creation – Complex

In this exercise, we will create a new complex terrain by merging two pre-existing terrains.

1. Create a new file and name it **Existing Terrain – Complex**. Select the **TDOTSeed 3D.dgn** and click **Save**.

File name:	Existing Terrain - Complex.dgn	Save
Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) ~	Cancel
Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co	Browse

 Open the References window (Survey >> Terrain >> Primary) and go to Tools >> Attach.

👔 Ref	erences (0 of 0 unique,	0 dis	played)
Tools	<u>P</u> roperties		
Atta	ch		()
<u>D</u> eta	ch		× 🛄
Deta	ch All		

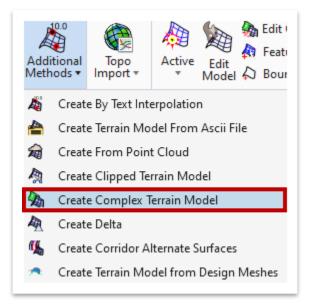
3. Select the **Terrains.dgn** file and set the **Attachment Method** to **Coincident World**. Click **Open** and then **Fit View** and notice the image below. Go ahead and close the **References** window.







4. Next, open the Create Complex Terrain Model tool (Survey >> Terrain >> Additional Methods).



5. Notice that the **Create Complex Terrain Model** dialog box appears showing **Terrain No 1** and **Terrain No 2** on the left side.

elect Terrain Models elect Terrain Models to M	erge or Append					
Terrain No 1 Terrain No 2	Add > < Remove Current Action Merge Append	Process Order	Name	Merge/App	bend	
		Terrain Fe Feature Definitio Name	n No Featu	n Ire Definition	×	
From Selection Se	t>		C	ancel	Fir	







There are two options to choose from: **Merge** or **Append**. Both options combine the data from the terrains but use different processes to yield different results.

Merge combines the data only in the areas they do not overlap, and it requires there to be at least one point that overlaps between the two. If there is data in both models in an overlapping area, the data from the **primary** model is discarded, and only the data from the **merging** model is used. Therefore, <u>it is critical to set the order correctly</u>.

Append triangulates the combined data from the terrains using all data from both models whether they overlap or are adjacent to each other.

TDOT Survey recommends using the **Merge** option.

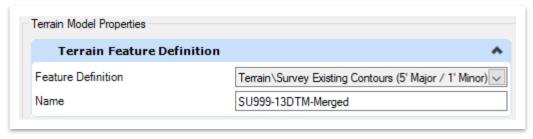
6. For the purpose of this exercise, we will choose the Merge option. Select each terrain name (Terrain No 1 and Terrain No 2) and Add the list of terrain models on the left. List Terrain No 1 as Process Order 1 and set it as the Primary terrain. List Terrain No 2 as Process Order 2 and set it as the Merge terrain. The arrows on the right side of the dialog box allow you to adjust the order of the terrains.

🜍 Create Complex Terrain Model				—		×
Select Terrain Models Select Terrain Models to Merge or App	pend					
	Add >	Process Order	Name	Merge/Ap	pend]
		1	Terrain No 1	Primary	~	
	< Remove	2	Terrain No 2	Merge	~	
	Current Action Merge Append					↑

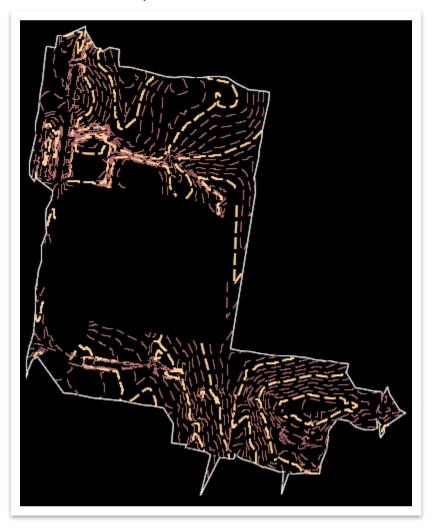




- 7. Under **Terrain Model Properties**, select the following settings and then click **Finish**.
 - a. Feature Definition: Terrain\Survey Existing Contours (5' Major / 1' Minor)
 - b. Name: SU999-13DTM-Merged



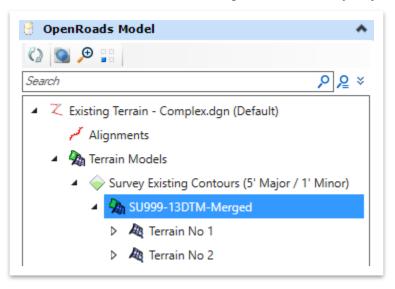
8. When the process is completed, turn off the referenced **Terrain.dgn** file and you should see the complex terrain shown below.







 Next, expand the OpenRoads Model tab within the Explorer. Go to Existing Terrain – Complex.dgn (Default) >> Terrain Models >> Survey Existing Contours (5' Major / 1' Minor) >> SU999-13DTM-Merged. Notice that both terrains are listed under the merged terrain that you just created.





A **Complex Terrain** is made from each of the individual terrains, therefore **do not detach** the referenced terrains. They are now part of the civil model and if you detach them, all the civil relationships will be broken.

10. Select the complex terrain boundary in plan view and then open the **Properties**. Notice that there is an additional **Complex Terrain Model Definition** tab. If you left click within the Edit Complex DTM field and then click on the ellipses, it will take you back to the Create Complex Terrain Model dialog box that we saw in Steps 5-7.

Complex Terrain Model Definition	^
Edit Complex DTM Edit	

11. There are other tools under **Additional Methods**, but they are not applicable for TDOT Survey so are not covered in this manual.

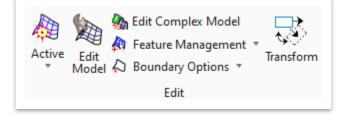




3.7 Lecture: Editing Terrain Tools

The **Edit Terrain** model tools can only be used with terrains imported using the create **From File** option (TIN, LandXML, point clouds, digital elevation models, etc.) (Figure 52).

FIGURE 52. EDIT TERRAIN TOOLS





Terrains created from survey field books **are not** editable unless the processing rules are **deactivated**. Either the survey data is editable (e.g. field codes, 3D geometry) or the terrain is editable, but not both.

Once survey processing rules are deactivated, the terrain model will become editable. However, if the survey processing rules are activated again, all terrain edits will revert to the original survey data processed terrains.

<u>Set/Clear Active</u>: The most common editing terrain tool is the Set/Clear Active. This tool will allow the user to set or clear the DTM as the active terrain. An active terrain is required to cut existing profiles and create corridor designs.

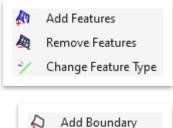
Set ActiveClear Active

<u>Edit Model</u>: Opens the **Edit Terrain Model** tools, which allow the user to delete vertex or edge triangle, swap line, insert or move vertex, delete triangle by line and delete by feature.



<u>Edit Complex Model</u>: Allows the user to edit a complex model by merging and appending individual terrains and adding or removing individual DTM components.

Feature Management Tool: Allows the user to add, remove or change feature types (e.g. breaklines or points). For example, if the user created a terrain using spot features with the create **From Elements** tool, the feature management tool can be opened to add breakline features to the terrain.



Remove Boundary

5

Boundary Options Tool: Allows the user to either add or remove a terrain boundary.

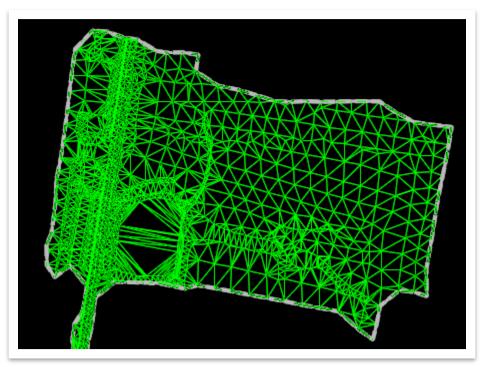




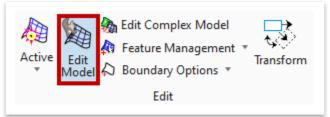
3.7.1 Exercise: Edit the Terrain

In this exercise, we will edit a previously created terrain by deleting a vertex. We will open back up the **Existing Terrain – TIN.dgn** file.

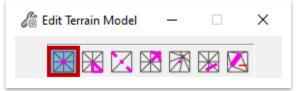
1. Select the terrain boundary and open the **Properties**. Toggle the **Major** and **Minor Contours** fields to **Off** and the **Triangles** field to **On** and then zoom in to the area shown below.



2. Open the Edit Model tools (Survey >> Terrain >> Edit) and notice a toolbar appears.



3. Within the Edit Terrain Model tools, select the first icon (Delete Vertex).



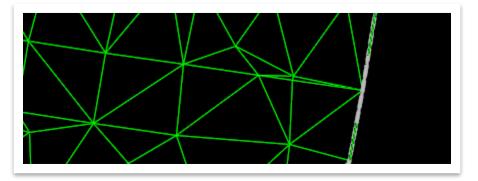




- 4. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner: **Select Terrain Model**. Select the terrain boundary or anywhere within the mesh.
- 5. Notice the next prompt in the lower left corner: Accept Vertex/Reset to Select Terrain. This prompt is asking to select what vertex you want to delete. Zoom in to the upper right of the terrain and left click on <u>any</u> vertex. Note: You don't have to select the same vertex as shown in the image below.



6. Notice that the triangulation automatically updates after deleting the vertex. Hit **ESC** to clear the tool.





All other **Edit Terrain Model** tools will work the same way, so we will move on to the next chapter. Most likely, these tools will not be used very often as the terrains are generated from the field books. Feel free to try the other terrain editing tools following Steps 3-6.





Chapter 4. Civil Geometry Tools

The Civil Geometry tools are located under the **Geometry** tab in the Survey workflow (Figure 53). These are the necessary tools to create, import, place and/or manipulate alignments, profiles and other smart geometry. All geometry placed with these tools are intelligent and can be assigned a Feature Definition.

FIGURE 53. GEOMETRY TAB



4.1 Objectives

At the conclusion of this chapter, participants will be able to:

- 1. Import, create and edit civil geometry.
- 2. Create different reports for civil geometry.
- 3. Plot property information utilizing Geometry Builder.
- 4. Project linear utilities onto profiles (non-utility and utility models).
- 5. Project crossing utilities onto profiles.

4.2 Lecture: Civil Geometry

All civil geometry (e.g. points, lines, curves, alignments) are stored as **ORD elements** in the DGN file. Therefore, <u>there are no external files</u>. Civil geometry is dynamic, interactive and rules-based, which means all components are associated and preserve the original design intent. For example, a typical alignment is composed from several points and a couple of curves. If one of the points is moved, the alignment automatically adjusts to reflect the change. If the curve radius is changed, the alignment changes accordingly.

4.2.1 Feature Definitions

All civil geometry should be assigned a **Feature Definition**. Feature Definitions are the standards that let the software know the feature that the civil geometry represents (alignment, profile, edge of pavement, etc.). The Feature Definition also sets all the TDOT standard symbology and is directly linked to automatic annotation (e.g. stationing of an alignment). The user can simply assign the Feature Definition when creating the geometry, and ORD will apply the correct attributes (level, color, line style (or cell in the case of a point) and line weight).



Civil geometry can either be in the form of **point** or **linear** features. A feature is anything that can be seen or located and is a physical part of the design representing a real-world entity.





4.2.2 User Settings Preferences

The **User Settings Preferences** (File >> Settings >> User >> Preferences) allow the user to change the way the software behaves and looks (Figure 54). Within the User Settings Preferences are **View Options** and **View Options - Civil**. They contain several different view preferences such as the color of selected or highlighted elements, manipulators, or superelevation fills. For more details, please refer to the Fundamentals (ORD) Manual.

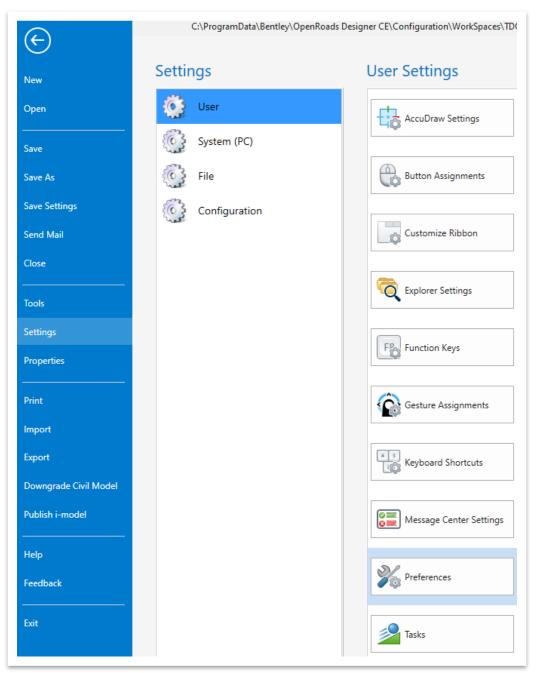


FIGURE 54. USER SETTINGS

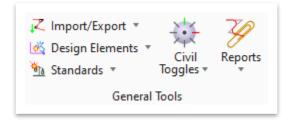




4.3 Lecture: General Tools

The **General Tools** contain many tools that are used in combination with other tools in the ribbon and provide options for more accurate and precise models (Figure 55). We will only discuss the tools that are applicable to TDOT Survey.

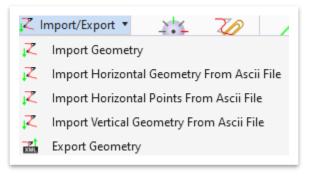
FIGURE 55. GENERAL TOOLS



4.3.1 Import/Export

The **Import/Export** tools allow the user to import alignments and profiles from various sources and then export out of ORD (Figure 56). We will demonstrate the **Import Geometry** option in the next exercise.

FIGURE 56. IMPORT/EXPORT TOOLS



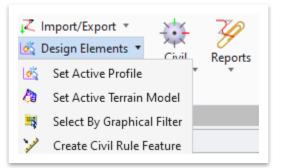




4.3.2 Design Elements

The **Design Elements** tools allow the user to set profiles and terrain models active, select by graphical filter and create civil rules (Figure 57). The **Select By Graphical Filter** tool allows the user to select elements by specific Graphical Filters, which are used in design when creating proposed models. The **Create Civil Rule Feature** tool gives the user the flexibility to assign civil geometry rules to elements that were created with basic Microstation tools, such as **Place Line**.

FIGURE 57. DESIGN ELEMENTS TOOLS





Geometry created with non-civil tools **will not** have any intelligence and **will not** be recognized by any of the tools covered in this chapter, unless assigned a feature definition and civil geometry rules.

4.3.3 Standards

The **Standards** tools allow the user to set Feature Definitions and Design Standards and open the corresponding toolbars (Figure 58). The different options will be explained further on the next pages.

FIGURE 58. STANDARDS TOOLS

 Standards
 Toggles *

 Image: Standards
 Set Design Standard

 Image: Design Standards Toolbar
 Design Standards Toolbar

 Image: Set Feature Definition
 Set Feature Definition Toolbar

 Image: Set Feature Definition
 Match Feature Definition

 Image: Set Element Information
 Set Element Information

 Image: Speed Table
 Speed Table



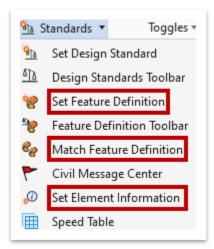


 <u>Feature Definition Toolbar</u>: Houses several key tools used to set and match feature definitions in addition to accessing other tools (Figure 59).
 FIGURE 59. FEATURE DEFINITION TOOLBAR



 <u>Set Feature Definition, Match Feature Definition and Set Element Information</u>: These tools are specifically designed for ORD Civil Model Elements (Figure 60). The <u>Set Feature Definition</u> assigns a feature definition to a civil geometry element or changes an already assigned feature definition. The <u>Match Feature Definition</u> allows the user to match one element's feature definition attributes to another in the drawing. The <u>Set Element Information</u> allows the user to add a personal note to an element in the drawing.

FIGURE 60. SET/MATCH FEATURE DEFINITION + SET ELEMENT INFORMATION







 <u>Civil Message Center</u>: Opens a window with a list of ORD messages related to recent actions performed by the user (Figure 61). This can be useful for viewing errors in construction or design standards that have been violated.
 FIGURE 61. CIVIL MESSAGE CENTER

Message Center	– 🗆 X
📕 5 MicroStation 🔞 0	Errors 🔒 0 Warnings 🚯 0 Messages
Message	Description
USERPREF unloaded.	
Raster Snap = OFF	
Initializing	
Asset Manager opened	Take advantage of this Technology Preview, a non-public
NAMEDREGION loaded.	
	5 MicroStation Solution Message USERPREF unloaded. Raster Snap = OFF Initializing Asset Manager opened

 <u>Set Design Standard, Design Standards Toolbar and Speed Table</u>: These tools are relevant to roadway design and use AASHTO Geometric Design Standards to alert designers when they are not meeting minimum geometric standards on alignments and profiles. These tools are not applicable to the TDOT Survey process, so will not be covered in this manual.

4.3.4 Civil Toggles

Geometry Civil Toggles can be helpful for quickly changing the way ORD behaves, allowing the user to spend less time adjusting settings (Figure 62).

FIGURE 62. CIVIL TOGGLES







• <u>Civil AccuDraw</u>: Tools allowing the user to define elements by precise inputs (Figure 63).

FIGURE 63. CIVIL ACCUDRAW TOOLS



 Settings: Allow the user to alter the look and feel of AccuDraw as well as the coordinate system (Figure 64). A list of shortcut key-ins can be accessed under the **Display** tab within the Civil AccuDraw Settings. To set Settings, go to the second icon in the Civil AccuDraw toolbar.



FIGURE 64. CIVIL ACCUDRAW SETTINGS

 Civil A	ccuDraw	Settings	_	×
Operation	Display	Coordinates	Favorites	
Auto Lo	ad			
Floating	g Origin			
Context	t Sensitiv	ity		
Smart H	Key-ins			
Preserv	/e Method	d Locks		
Sticky 2	Z Lock			
Always	Show Co	mpass		
Show A	ccudraw	Dialog		

- **Tools:** To activate/deactivate Civil AccuDraw, select the first icon. **The most commonly used tools are listed below:**
 - Distance-Direction The first tool in the Civil AccuDraw pallet, which is used to place lines based on a specific distance and direction from a known point. This option may be used to locate the first point of a present ROW line,



parcel or property line from a land corner or other known point. The user would draw a civil line starting the first point of the line at the reference point, then use Civil AccuDraw to enter the distance and direction to place the end point of the line.

 DX DY – The fourth tool in the Civil AccuDraw pallet, which is used to store points or the beginning of a line by entering the X and Y coordinates.







 Station-Offset – The second to last tool in the Civil AccuDraw pallet, which is used to place labels needing the station and offset reference from an alignment (e.g. present ROW lines).

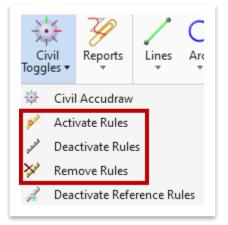




Civil AccuDraw tools are intended to be used in combination with placing horizontal or vertical civil geometry. **Civil AccuDraw CANNOT be running at the same time as Regular AccuDraw**, so make sure to deactivate regular AccuDraw before enabling Civil AccuDraw.

 <u>Activate/Deactivate/Remove Rules</u>: The user can activate or deactivate rules to toggle whether manipulators are available for editing on selected elements (Figure 65). Rules can also be completely removed.









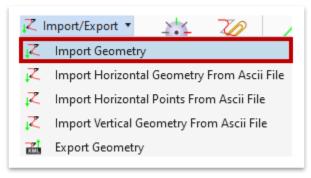
4.3.5 Exercise: Horizontal Geometry Creation – Import

In this exercise, we will import horizontal alignments from a gpk file and apply the applicable feature definition to create the preliminary centerline.

1. Create a new file and name it **Alignment – GPK**. Select the **TDOTSeed2D.dgn** and click **Save**.

File name:	Alignment - GPK	Save
Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) ~	Cancel
Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co	Browse

 Open the Import Geometry tool (Survey >> Geometry >> General Tools >> Import/Export).



 Select the 04_job32w.gpk file within the SURVEY_Training workset dgn subfolder and click Open. Note: The software should open to this location by default.





4. Within the **Import Geometry** dialog box, toggle on **Alignment** and then expand the structure, as shown below. By toggling on Alignment at the root level, the software will import **every** alignment tied to the gpk. **Note:** You could import specific alignments by toggling on or off the applicable chains under **CL**.

Import Geometry
C:\PROGRAMDATA\BENTLEY\OPENROADS DESIGNER C Aignment CCL BRYANJAMES CARDINAL CARDINAL KIRBY Curves Curves Ourves Ourves Ourves Ourves
< >>

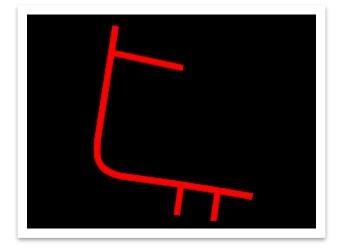
 Select the following Linear Feature Definition: Alignment >> Survey Preliminary Centerline. Make sure that the Create Civil Rules box is toggled on and then click Import. Note: You could also apply a feature definition after importing using the Set Feature Definition tool (Survey >> Geometry >> General Tools >> Standards).

Assign Feature Defini	tions from Table	
Feature Definitions Table	:	
Assign Feature Defini	tion	
Linear Features:	Survey Preliminary Centerline	\sim
Point Features:	No Feature Definition	\sim
Create Civil Rules		
	Import Cancel	

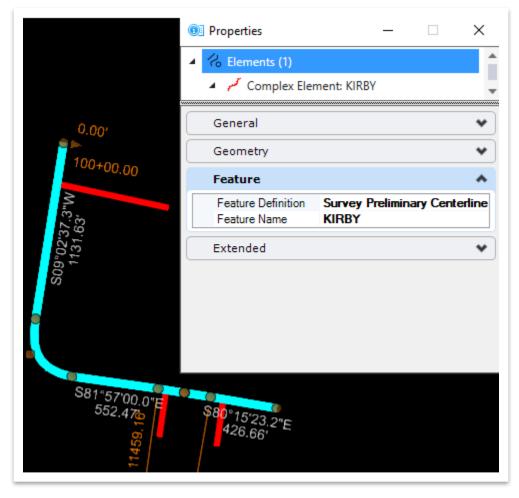




6. Click Fit View and notice that the geometry has now been imported.



7. Select the mainline (KIRBY) alignment and then open the Properties. Under the Feature tab, notice that both the Feature Definition and Feature Name fields are populated. Go ahead and review the three side road alignments as well. Note: We will annotate the alignment in Chapter 5 when we talk about plan preparation tools.



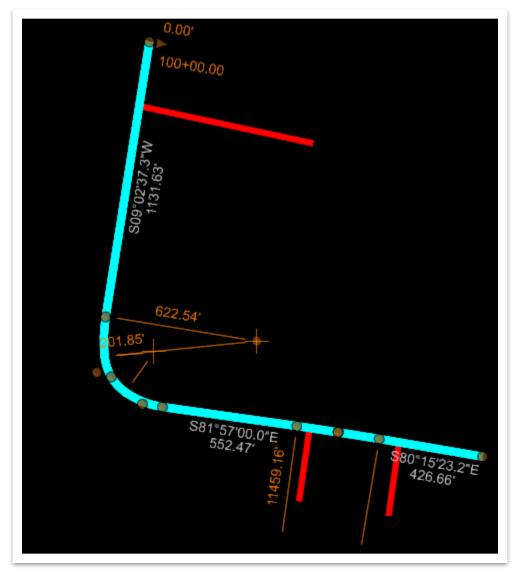




4.3.6 Exercise: Horizontal Geometry – Reports

In this exercise, we will create several different reports for the horizontal geometry and review the properties of each one. We will continue to utilize the same **Alignment – GPK.dgn** file.

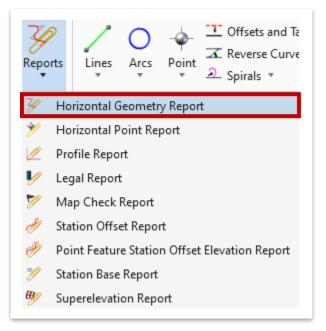
 As noticed in the previous exercise, when selecting an alignment in ORD, you'll see its geometric data (e.g. starting station, bearing, length, etc). One way to make edits to the geometry would be to left click within the orange text and key-in your update. Go ahead and deselect the alignment and notice that the data disappears since it is dynamic.







 Now that you've seen the geometric data in dynamic form, lets create it in report form. Open the Horizontal Geometry Report tool (Survey >> Geometry >> General Tools >> Reports), which will create a report for the selected element.



- 3. Within the Horizontal Geometry Report dialog box, select the following settings:
 - a. Lock To Start/End: Toggle ON (Note: Ignore if your station fields look different. They will update automatically once the next steps are taken.
 - b. Interval: 0.00 / Include Event Points: None / Included Profiles: None

🔏 Horizontal	_	×
Parameters		*
Lock To Start	\checkmark	
Start Station	100+00.00	
Lock To End	\checkmark	
End Station	129+47.84	
Interval		*
Interval	0.00	*
	0.00	*
Interval	0.00 None	* *
Interval Event Points		*





4. Notice the cursor prompt: Locate First Element. Select the KIRBY alignment.



- Notice the next cursor prompt: Locate Next Element Reset To Complete. You could select additional alignments to add to the report, but for this exercise, go ahead and right click to complete.
- Left click to accept the remaining prompts and the Horizontal Alignment Review Report should automatically open (within the Bentley Civil Report Browser).
 Note: If you hadn't toggled on Lock To Start/End, you could have selected specific points graphically when prompted <u>or</u> keyed-in a station range within the dialog box.

	$\times \times$	Onzonte	al Alignment Re	view ivepolit	
		Report	t Created: Monday, Mar Time: 2:42:44 PM	ch 8, 2021	
Project:	Default				
Description:					
File Name:			\OpenRoads Designer paces\TDOT_Standards	\WorkSets\SURVEY_1	Training\dgn\Alignmo
Last	t 3/8/2021 11:4				
Revised:	3/8/2021/11:4	15:42			
Revised:	3/8/2021 11:4	15:42	Note: All unit	s in this report are in feet u	inless specified otherwi
Revised.	lignment Nan			s in this report are in feet u	inless specified otherwi
A		ne: KIRBY		s in this report are in feet u	inless specified otherwi
Alignm	lignment Nan nent Descriptio	ne: KIRBY on:			inless specified otherwi
A Alignm	lignment Nan nent Descriptio	ne: KIRBY on:			Inless specified otherwind the
A Alignm	lignment Nan nent Descriptio Alignment Sty	ne: KIRBY on:	ent\Survey Preliminary (Centerline	
Alignm	lignment Nan nent Descriptio Alignment Sty	ne: KIRBY on:	ent\Survey Preliminary (Centerline	
Alignm	lignment Nan bent Descriptic Alignment Sty var	ne: KIRBY on: /le: Alignm	ent\Survey Preliminary (Station	Centerline Northing	Easting
Alignm Liement: Line ST	lignment Nan nent Descriptio Alignment Sty Par	ne: KIRBY on: /le: Alignm () ()	ent\Survey Preliminary (Station 10000.000 R1	Centerline Northing 826316.679	Easting 1816374.127





- 7. You may have noticed that some of the formatting is not what you are used to seeing. Within the report, we will change the precisions and the format for both Station and Direction. Note: Once you apply these updates, you will see them in the opened report and for any future reports that you create.
- 8. Within the **Bentley Civil Report Browser**, go to **Tools** >> **Format Options**. Change the following settings and then click **Close** and notice the updates.
 - a. Northing/Easting/Elevation Precision: 0.1234
 - b. All other Precision: 0.12
 - c. Station Format: ss+ss.ss
 - d. Direction Format: ddd^mm'ss.s"

引 Format Options					×
	Mode	Precision		Format	Close
Northing/Easting/Elev	vation:	0.1234	v		Include Angular Suffix
Angular:	Degrees ~	0.12	v	ddd.ddd ~	
Slope:		0.12	v	0.5 ~	
Use Alternate Slope if	Slope Exceeds:	0.00%			
Alternate Slope:		0.12	v	0.5 ~	
Linear:		0.12	×	De	elimiter: +
Station:		0.12	v	ss+ss.ss ~	
Acres/Hectares:		0.12	×		
Area Units:		0.12	v		
Cubic Units:		0.12	v	Convert to Cubi	c Yard:
Direction:	Bearings ~	0.12	v	ddd^mm'ss ~	
Face:	Right Face ~				
Vertical Observation:	Zenith ~				





9. Next, let's look at the Horizontal Alignment Legal Description. Within the Bentley Civil Report Browser, scroll down and expand the LegalDescription category on the left side. Left click on HorizontalAlignmentLegalDescription .xsl. Note: If you had closed out of the Bentley Civil Report Browser, you would need to initiate the Legal Report tool (Survey >> Geometry >> General Tools >> Reports) and follow the prompts.

🜍 Bentley Civil Report Browser	
File Tools	
▷ Cant	
Civil Terrain	
CivilGeometry	
CivilSurvey	
CorridorModeling	
Evaluation	
 LegalDescription 	
HorizontalAlignmentLegalDescr	iption.xsl
HorizontalAlignmentLegalDescr	iptionReference.xsl
HorizontalAlignmentLegalDescr	iptionReferenceASCII
ParcelLayoutFromReference.xsl	
PropertyDescription.xsl	
PropertyDescriptionExtended.xs	1
PropertyDescriptionExtended2.x	sl
PropertyDescriptionLongNames	.xsl
RightOfWayTakes.xsl	





10. Notice that the Horizontal Alignment Legal Description now appears for KIRBY.

	Horizontal Alignment Legal Description
	Report Created: Monday, March 8, 2021 Time: 5:07:46 PM
Project:	Default
Description:	
File Name:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Configuration\WorkSpaces\TDOT_Standards\WorkSets\SURVEY_Training\dgn\Alignment - GPK.dgn
Last Revised:	3/8/2021 11:45:42
Input Grid Factor:	Note: All units in this report are in feet unless specified otherwise.
having a ra thence alo said arc su to a point o	on a curve , dius of 622.54 feet and a central angle of 14.95°, ng the arc of said curve a distance of 162.46 feet, ubtended by a chord bearing S01°34'03.49"W, a distance of 162.00 feet. on a curve ,
thence alo said arc su	dius of 201.85 feet and a central angle of 49.28°, ng the arc of said curve a distance of 173.61 feet, ibtended by a chord bearing S30°32'52.29"E, a distance of 168.31 feet. 5°11'14.26"E, 1.56 feet,
having a ra thence alo said arc su	on a curve , dius of 344.13 feet and a central angle of 26.76°, ng the arc of said curve a distance of 160.74 feet, ubtended by a chord bearing S68°34'07.11"E, a distance of 159.28 feet.
thence S8 to a point of having a ra thence alo said arc su	1°56′59.96″E, 552.47 feet, on a curve , dius of 11459.16 feet and a central angle of 1.69°, ng the arc of said curve a distance of 338.71 feet, ubtended by a chord bearing S81°06′11.60″E, a distance of 338.69 feet. 0°15′23.24″E, 426.66 feet.





11. Now, expand the MapCheck category on the left side and left click on MapCheck.xsl. A portion of the Map Check Report is shown below for KIRBY. This report shows precision information based on plotted data (e.g. lengths, directions, coordinates) in the drawing rather than the internal precision stored by the software. The plotted values are used during construction to determine closure errors based on plotted precision. Scroll down to see the full report. Note: Once again, if you had closed out of the Bentley Civil Report Browser, you would need to initiate the Map Check Report tool (Survey >> Geometry >> General Tools >> Reports) and follow the prompts.

			ieck Report		
			Monday, March 8, 5:08:38 PM	2021	
Proje	ect: Default				
Descriptio					
File Nan		a\Bentley\OpenRoa n\WorkSpaces\TD		rkSets\SURVEY_Traini	ng\dgn\Alignmo
L Revise	ast 3/8/2021 11:45: ed:	42			
$\sim . \sim$					
Input (Fac		IRBY	Note: All units in the	his report are in feet unless	specified otherwi
Fac	tor:	IRBY Northing/ Length	Note: All units in the second	his report are in feet unless	specified otherwi
Fac A Alignm Type	tor: lignment Name: K nent Description: Point Name/	Northing/			specified otherwi
Fac A Alignm Type	tor: lignment Name: K nent Description: Point Name/ Direction	Northing/ Length	Easting	Elevation	specified otherwi
Fac A Alignm Type START	tor: lignment Name: K nent Description: Point Name/ Direction ()	Northing/ Length 826316.6791	Easting	Elevation	specified otherwi
Fac A Alignm Type START	tor: lignment Name: K nent Description: Point Name/ Direction ()	Northing/ Length 826316.6791 1131.63	Easting 1816374.1272	Elevation 0.0000	specified otherwi
Fac A Alignm Type START PC	tor: lignment Name: K nent Description: Point Name/ Direction () S09°02'37.28"W ()	Northing/ Length 826316.6791 1131.63 825199.1173	Easting 1816374.1272	Elevation 0.0000	specified otherwi
Fac A Alignm Type START PC	tor: lignment Name: K nent Description: Point Name/ Direction () S09°02'37.28"W ()	Northing/ Length 826316.6791 1131.63 825199.1173 622.54	Easting 1816374.1272 1816196.2491	Elevation 0.0000 0.0000	specified otherwi
Fac A Alignm	tor: lignment Name: K nent Description: Point Name/ Direction () S09°02'37.28"W () N80°57'22.72"W ()	Northing/ Length 826316.6791 1131.63 825199.1173 622.54 825101.2618	Easting 1816374.1272 1816196.2491	Elevation 0.0000 0.0000	specified otherwi

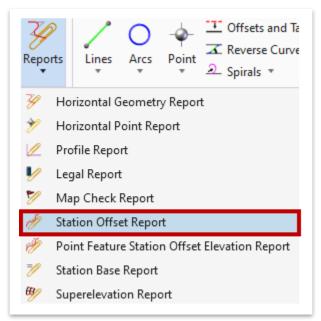


All the available reports can be accessed within the **Bentley Civil Report Browser** for the selected element(s) after you initiate any <u>one</u> of the reports. You do not need to generate the applicable report via the **Reports** tools in the ribbon every time. If you want to report on a different element or want to select additional elements, then you would need to re-initiate one of the reports and go through the prompts.

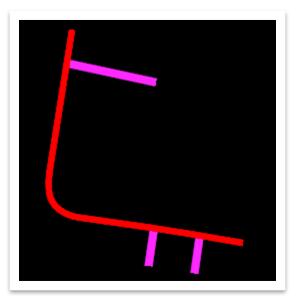




12. Next, lets run a Station-Offset Report. Before doing so, close the Bentley Civil Report Browser and deselect all elements, if necessary. Open the Station Offset Report tool (Survey >> Geometry >> General Tools >> Reports).



13. Notice the cursor prompt: Locate Element. Select the KIRBY alignment. Notice the next cursor prompt: Locate First Offset Element. Select each of the three side road alignments (CARDINAL, BRYANJAMES, EAGLESNEST) and then right click to complete. Once you select them, they will be highlighted, as shown below.





14. The **Station Offset Report** should automatically appear, which provides a list of stations and offsets for selected horizontal geometry elements. Offsets are always measured perpendicular from the base element to the offset element. The reported stationing is measured along the offset element. Offsets are given for the cardinal points on the base element (in this case **KIRBY**).

			Station Off	set Repo	N (
			Report Created: Mo Time: 5:	nday, March 8, 11:16 PM	2021		
Projec	ct: Def	ault					
Descriptio	n:						
Baseli (Activ Alignme	ve) KIR	RBY					
File Nam	e: CE		Bentley\OpenRoads \WorkSpaces\TDOT		rkSets\S	SURVEY_Train	ning\dgn\Alignment
La Revise	ast _{3/8} d:	/2021 11:45:4	2				
Input G Facto				Note: All units in t	this report	are in feet unless	s specified otherwise.
\sim	Base	eline Alignmo (KIRBY)	ent			set Alignment CARDINAL)	t
Station		(KIRBY) Distance to	ent Radial Direction	Station	X	CARDINAL) Distance to	
XX7	Туре	(KIRBY) Distance to	Radial Direction		(Type	CARDINAL) Distance to Offset Point	Radial Direction
102+64.31 R1	Type POT	(KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point	Radial Direction N80°57'22.72"W	Station 74+00.00 R1	(<u>Type</u> START	CARDINAL) Distance to Offset Point 0.00	Radial Direction
102+64.31 R1 103+02.98 R1	Type POT POT	(KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point -0.00	Radial Direction N80°57'22.72"W N80°57'22.72"W	Station 74+00.00 R1 81+22.21 R1	Type START END Offs	CARDINAL) Distance to Offset Point 0.00	Radial Direction S12°06'44.55''W S12°06'44.55''W
102+64.31 R1 103+02.98 R1	Type POT POT Base	(KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point -0.00 -721.17 eline Alignme (KIRBY) Distance to	Radial Direction N80°57'22.72"W N80°57'22.72"W	Station 74+00.00 R1 81+22.21 R1	(<u>Type</u> START END Offs (BI	CARDINAL) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 0.00 set Alignment RYANJAMES) Distance to	Radial Direction S12°06'44.55"W S12°06'44.55"W t
102+64.31 R1 103+02.98 R1	Type POT POT Base Type	(KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point -0.00 -721.17 eline Alignme (KIRBY) Distance to	Radial Direction N80°57'22.72"W N80°57'22.72"W ent Radial Direction	Station 74+00.00 R1 81+22.21 R1	(Type START END Offs (BI Type	CARDINAL) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 0.00 Set Alignment RYANJAMES) Distance to Offset Point	Radial Direction S12°06'44.55''W S12°06'44.55''W
102+64.31 R1 103+02.98 R1 Station	Type POT POT Base Type POC	(KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point -0.00 -721.17 eline Alignme (KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point 0.00	Radial Direction N80°57'22.72"W N80°57'22.72"W ent Radial Direction	Station 74+00.00 R1 81+22.21 R1 Station	(<u>Type</u> START END Offs (BI <u>Type</u> START	CARDINAL) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 0.00 set Alignment RYANJAMES) Distance to Offset Point 0.00	Radial Direction \$12°06'44.55"W \$12°06'44.55"W \$12°06'44.55"W Radial Direction
102+64.31 R1 103+02.98 R1 <u>Station</u> 122+34.51 R1 122+34.89 R1	Type POT POT Base Type POC POC	(KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point -0.00 -721.17 eline Alignme (KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point 0.00	Radial Direction N80°57'22.72"W N80°57'22.72"W ent Radial Direction S08°18'36.80"W S08°18'43.71"W	<u>Station</u> 74+00.00 R1 81+22.21 R1 <u>Station</u> 37+00.00 R1 40+00.00 R1	(<u>Type</u> START END Offs (BI <u>Type</u> START END Offs	CARDINAL) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 0.00 set Alignment RYANJAMES) Distance to Offset Point 0.00	Radial Direction \$12°06'44.55"W \$12°06'44.55"W t Radial Direction N81°45'40.29"W N81°45'40.29"W
102+64.31 R1 103+02.98 R1 <u>Station</u> 122+34.51 R1 122+34.89 R1	Type POT POT Base POC POC Base	(KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point -0.00 -721.17 eline Alignme (KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 300.00 eline Alignme (KIRBY) Distance to	Radial Direction N80°57'22.72"W N80°57'22.72"W ent Radial Direction S08°18'36.80"W S08°18'43.71"W	<u>Station</u> 74+00.00 R1 81+22.21 R1 <u>Station</u> 37+00.00 R1 40+00.00 R1	(<u>Type</u> START END Offs (BI <u>Type</u> START END Offs (EJ	CARDINAL) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 0.00 Set Alignment RYANJAMES) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 0.00 set Alignment AGLESNEST) Distance to	Radial Direction \$12°06'44.55"W \$12°06'44.55"W t Radial Direction N81°45'40.29"W N81°45'40.29"W
102+64.31 R1 103+02.98 R1 <u>Station</u> 122+34.51 R1 122+34.89 R1	Type POT POT Base POC POC Base Type	(KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point -0.00 -721.17 eline Alignme (KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 300.00 eline Alignme (KIRBY) Distance to	Radial Direction N80°57'22.72"W N80°57'22.72"W ent Radial Direction S08°18'36.80"W S08°18'43.71"W ent Radial Direction S08°18'43.71"W ent	Station 74+00.00 R1 81+22.21 R1 Station 37+00.00 R1 40+00.00 R1	(Type START END Offs START END Offs (E) Type	CARDINAL) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 0.00 set Alignment RYANJAMES) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 set Alignment AGLESNEST) Distance to Offset Point	Radial Direction \$12°06'44.55''W \$12°06'44.55''W t Radial Direction N81°45'40.29''W N81°45'40.29''W t Radial Direction Radial Direction Radial Direction





15. Lastly, let's look at the Station Base Report. Within the Bentley Civil Report Browser (still under StationOffset), left click on StationBaseCompare.xsl and notice the report appears. Note: Once again, if you had closed out of the Bentley Civil Report Browser, you would need to initiate the Station Base Report tool (Survey >> Geometry >> General Tools >> Reports) and follow the prompts.

			Station Base	Report			
		Rep	ort Created: Monday Time: 5:15:00		1		
Project:	Default						
Description:							
Baseline (Active) Alignment:	KIRBY						
File Name:		figuration\Wor	ey\OpenRoads Desig kSpaces\TDOT_Stan		ts\SURV	'EY_Training\d	gn\Alignment
Last Revised:	3/8/202	1 11:45:42					
Input Grid Factor:			Note:	All units in this rep	port are in	feet unless spec	ified otherwise.
	Base	eline Alignme (KIRBY)	ənt	XX		set Alignment CARDINAL)	t,,
Station		(KIRBY) Distance to	ent Radial Direction	Station	\ge	CARDINAL) Distance to	
	Туре	(KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point	Radial Direction		(Type	CARDINAL) Distance to Offset Point	Radial Direction
Station	Type 1 POT	(KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point 0.00	Radial Direction	Station	(<u>Type</u> START	CARDINAL) Distance to Offset Point -0.00	Radial Direction S12°06'44.55"V
Station 102+64.31 R ⁻ 103+02.98 R ⁻	Type 1 POT 1 POT	(KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point 0.00	Radial Direction N80°57'22.72"W N80°57'22.72"W	<u>Station</u> 74+00.00 R1 81+22.21 R1	(Type START END Off	CARDINAL) Distance to Offset Point -0.00	Radial Direction S12°06'44.55"V S12°06'44.55"V
Station 102+64.31 R ⁻ 103+02.98 R ⁻	Type 1 POT 1 POT Base	(KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 0.00 eline Alignme (KIRBY) Distance to	Radial Direction N80°57'22.72"W N80°57'22.72"W	<u>Station</u> 74+00.00 R1 81+22.21 R1	(Type START END Off (BI	CARDINAL) Distance to Offset Point -0.00 -721.17 set Alignment RYANJAMES) Distance to	Radial Direction S12°06'44.55"V S12°06'44.55"V t
Station 102+64.31 R 103+02.98 R	Type 1 POT 1 POT Base Type	(KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 0.00 eline Alignme (KIRBY) Distance to	Radial Direction N80°57'22.72"W N80°57'22.72"W ent Radial Direction	<u>Station</u> 74+00.00 R1 81+22.21 R1	(Type START END Off (BI Type	CARDINAL) Distance to Offset Point -0.00 -721.17 set Alignment RYANJAME S) Distance to Offset Point	Radial Direction S12°06'44.55"W S12°06'44.55"W t
Station 102+64.31 R ⁻ 103+02.98 R ⁻ Station	Type 1 POT 1 POT Base Type 1 1 POC	(KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 0.00 eline Alignme (KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point	Radial Direction N80°57'22.72"W N80°57'22.72"W ent Radial Direction S08°18'36.80"W	<u>Station</u> 74+00.00 R1 81+22.21 R1 <u>Station</u>	(Type START END Off (BI Type START	CARDINAL) Distance to Offset Point -0.00 -721.17 set Alignment RYANJAMES) Distance to Offset Point 0.00	Radial Direction S12°06'44.55"V S12°06'44.55"V t Radial Direction N81°45'40.29"V
Station 102+64.31 R 103+02.98 R 5tation 122+34.51 R 122+34.51 R	Type 1 POT 1 POT 1 POT 1 POT 1 POT 1 POT 1 POC 1 POC	(KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 0.00 eline Alignme (KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point 0.00	Radial Direction N80°57'22.72"W N80°57'22.72"W ent Radial Direction S08°18'36.80"W S08°18'43.71"W	<u>Station</u> 74+00.00 R1 81+22.21 R1 <u>Station</u> 37+00.00 R1 40+00.00 R1	(<u>Type</u> START END Off: (BI <u>Type</u> START END Off:	CARDINAL) Distance to Offset Point -0.00 -721.17 set Alignment RYANJAMES) Distance to Offset Point 0.00	Radial Direction S12°06'44.55"V S12°06'44.55"V t Radial Direction N81°45'40.29"V N81°45'40.29"V
Station 102+64.31 R 103+02.98 R 5tation 122+34.51 R 122+34.51 R	Type 1 POT 1 POT 1 POT 1 POT 1 POT 1 POC 1 POC 1 POC 1 POC	(KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 0.00 eline Alignme (KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 0.00 eline Alignme (KIRBY) Distance to	Radial Direction N80°57'22.72"W N80°57'22.72"W ent Radial Direction S08°18'36.80"W S08°18'43.71"W	<u>Station</u> 74+00.00 R1 81+22.21 R1 <u>Station</u> 37+00.00 R1 40+00.00 R1	(<u>Type</u> START END Off: (BI <u>Type</u> START END Off: (EJ	CARDINAL) Distance to Offset Point -0.00 -721.17 set Alignment RYANJAMES) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 300.00 set Alignment AGLESNEST) Distance to	Radial Direction \$12°06'44.55"V \$12°06'44.55"V \$12°06'44.55"V t Radial Direction N81°45'40.29"V N81°45'40.29"V t
Station 102+64.31 R 103+02.98 R Station 122+34.51 R 122+34.51 R 122+34.89 R	Type 1 POT 1 POC 1 POC 1 POC 1 POC 1 POC 1 POC	(KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 0.00 eline Alignme (KIRBY) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 0.00 eline Alignme (KIRBY) Distance to	Radial Direction N80°57'22.72"W N80°57'22.72"W ent Radial Direction S08°18'36.80"W S08°18'43.71"W ent Radial Direction	<u>Station</u> 74+00.00 R1 81+22.21 R1 <u>Station</u> 37+00.00 R1 40+00.00 R1	(Type START END Off (BI Type START END Off (EJ Type	CARDINAL) Distance to Offset Point -0.00 -721.17 set Alignment RYANJAMES) Distance to Offset Point 0.00 300.00 set Alignment AGLE SNE ST) Distance to Offset Point	Radial Direction \$12°06'44.55''V \$12°06'44.55''V t Radial Direction N81°45'40.29''V N81°45'40.29''V t Radial Direction



To get the **side road** reports, you would simply select the appropriate preliminary centerline(s) and go through the same process as above. Remember, you can select multiple alignments at the same time.





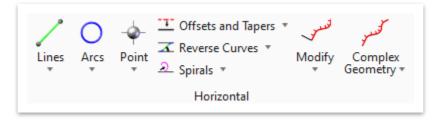
Other reports available for **Civil Geometry** within the **Reports** tools (**Survey** >> **Geometry** >> **General Tools**) include:

- <u>Horizontal Point Report</u>: Contains a list showing point name, feature, description, northing, easting and elevation.
- **Profile Report:** Contains a list showing the profile elements.
- <u>Point Feature Station Offset Elevation Report</u>: Contains point name, point feature, station, and offset from selected points to a baseline, civil horizontal geometry or survey element.
- <u>Superelevation Report</u>: Contains the superelevation data along the selected element(s).

4.4 Lecture: Horizontal Civil Geometry

The **Horizontal Civil Geometry** tools house all the commands to create, modify and manipulate horizontal geometry, such as points, lines, all types of curves and spirals (Figure 66). Also, these tools offer options to combine, copy, offset and taper already placed geometry, and edit specific properties of alignments.

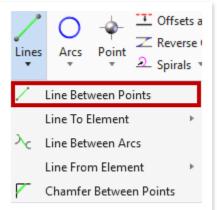
FIGURE 66. HORIZONTAL CIVIL GEOMETRY TOOLS



4.4.1 Lines Tools

The horizontal Lines tools are used to create horizontal linework (Figure 67). The most common method of placement is using the Line Between Points option. When a line is placed without the use of Snaps or Civil AccuDraw, the element has basic manipulators for moving the end points of the line, moving the entire line, or editing the distance and direction. If a line is placed with Snaps or Civil AccuDraw. the normal manipulators are replaced by Snap or AccuDraw manipulators. Snap manipulators will automatically update the line as the snapped element updates unless the snap is broken.

FIGURE 67. LINES TOOLS



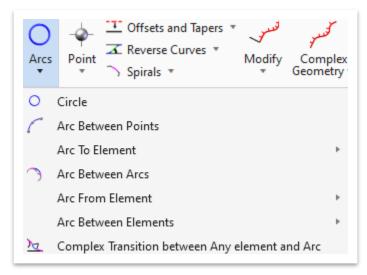




4.4.2 Arcs Tools

The horizontal **Arcs** tools are used to create horizontal simple curves and allow the user to create arcs in the drawing defined by various parameter combinations (Figure 68). The most commonly used Arc tools are **Arc Between Points** and **Arc Between Elements** (Simple Arc).

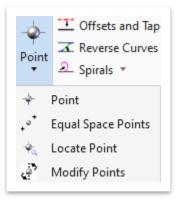
FIGURE 68. ARCS TOOLS



4.4.3 Point Tools

The **Point** tools allow for the construction of civil point elements (Figure 69). The user can place a single point or multiple points at equal spacing. We will look further into the Equal Space Points tool in Section 4.4.10.

FIGURE 69. POINT TOOLS







4.4.4 Offsets and Tapers Tools

The **Offsets and Tapers** tools can be used to offset a copy of an element and create tapered offsets of elements (Figure 70). The user can offset a section of an element with the **Single Offset Partial** tool. The **Taper** offset tools allow the user to offset an element at a taper defined by a ratio or by two offset distances. Elements created by offset tools will have a rule linking them to the base element (e.g., if the base element is moved, the offset element will move with it). If the base element is modified in any way (lengthened, radius changed, etc.) the offset element will update to match while the offset rule is active.

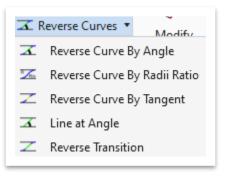
FIGURE 70. OFFSETS AND TAPERS TOOLS

<u> </u>	لسري Tfsets and Tapers 🔹 م
	Single Offset Entire Element
$\overline{\Box}$	Single Offset Partial
Y	Variable Offset Taper
4	Ratio Offset Taper

4.4.5 Reverse Curves Tools

The **Reverse Curves** tools can be used to create reverse curves (Figure 71). The most commonly used option for placing a reverse curve is the **Reverse Curve by Tangent**. Two referenced tangent lines must be already placed in the drawing to use this option. There is an optional setting for placing a transition length in between the reverse curves.

FIGURE 71. REVERSE CURVES TOOLS







4.4.6 Spirals Tools

Spirals can be created with the **Spiral From Element** tool, where an element defines tangency at one end of the spiral, or with the **Spiral Between Elements** tool, where a spiral is constructed between two elements that determine tangency (Figure 72).

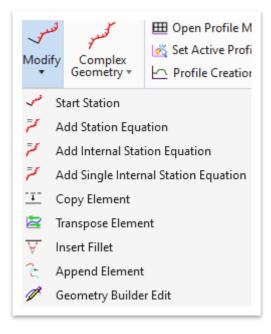
FIGURE 72. SPIRALS TOOLS

<mark>ک</mark> s	pirals 🔻	Ŧ
2	Spiral From Element	
\mathbf{r}	Spiral Between Elemer	nts

4.4.7 Modify Tools

The **Modify** tools allow the user to change basic aspects of a horizontal alignment, such as **stationing** (including inserting station equations), **copying**, **transposing** and **appending** elements (Figure 73).

FIGURE 73. MODIFY TOOLS







4.4.8 Complex Geometry Tools

The **Complex Geometry** tools allow the user to create complex geometry elements through several methods (Figure 74).

FIGURE 74. COMPLEX GEOMETRY TOOLS

y Cor Geor	mplex netry •	Ⅲ Open Pro ☑ Set Active ☑ Profile Cr		
1	Complex By Element			
Z	Comple	ex By Pl		
1	Define B	By Best Fit		
Ē	Geometry Builder			
Æ	Geomet	try Connector		

- **<u>Complex By Element</u>**: Allows the user to combine existing geometry elements into one complex element.
- **<u>Complex By Pl</u>**: Allows the user to create a new complex element by defining points of intersection and radii.
- **Define By Best Fit:** Allows the user to construct an element that best fits a course defined by a selected linear object.
- <u>Geometry Builder</u>: Allows the user to enter all the design parameters (e.g. X, Y, bearings, distances, degree of curvature) into a table via a dialog box. This tool is used if the user has all the information to store each piece of geometry using a tabular form (ROW and Parcel definition).
- <u>Geometry Connector</u>: Allows the user to free or lock elements that you wish to keep within the geometry.

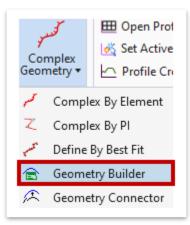




4.4.9 Exercise: Geometry Builder

In this exercise, we will utilize known metes and bounds descriptions from a deed, in which we will input into ORD. The Geometry Builder would best be used by TDOT Survey to plot property information from deeds into a development level so that the parcels could be fit together before establishing actual property lines. We will continue to utilize the same **Alignment – GPK.dgn** file.

1. Open the Geometry Builder tool (Survey >> Geometry >> Horizontal >> Complex Geometry).



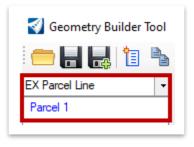
2. Within the **Geometry Builder Tool** dialog box, click on **Add new geometry** in the upper left corner.

죃 Geometry Bui	lder Tool		_		×
	1 4 🛛 🔁				
	X: 0.00	Y: 0.00'	+	Begin Po	oint
	Bearing	▼ Deg M	in Sec	-	Ŧ
	Bearing	Distance		Туре	
	•				^
					ž
	-			Close	
< >	Not Closed ㅋ 🏷 ㅋ				.::





 Click on the drop-down arrow next to No Feature Definition and select the EX Parcel Line feature definition (Linear >> Right Of Way). Name this new geometry Parcel 1 by left clicking within the NewGeometry1 field. Note: You could add as many parcels as you'd like, but for this exercise we will only create one.



4. For this exercise, we will assume that we know the bearings and distances from the deed. Key-in the data below, including the starting XY coordinates. Remember to use the ^ key for degrees. To add additional lines for bearings/distances, you can either hit Enter after keying in the Distance or left click in the bottom blank row. As you enter each row, you will notice the parcel line temporarily being drawn in your file.

	Bearing	Distanc		
	S80°38'15.7"E	370.37	Line	-
	N30°33'50.2"E	265.42'	Line	-
	N09°01'32.4"W	317.66'	Line	
	N86°24'15.3''W	430.66'	Line	-
	S15°59'30.4''W	293.93'	Line	- ×
•	S14°53'26.7"E	234.34'	Line	- v 🔉
lace	e Non-Tangent Complex Ci	vil Element Un-Ruled	Place	Close

5. Once you have the data entered, toggle on **Create ruled civil elements** (highlighted in red).



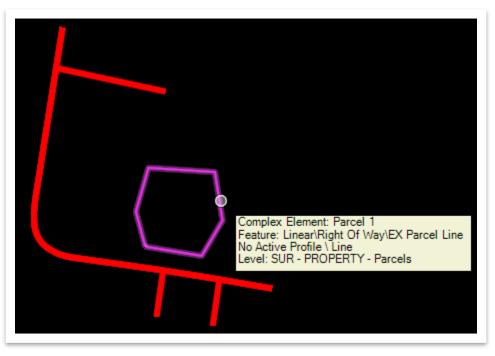




6. You will get an alert message. Click **OK**.



 Within the Geometry Builder Tool dialog box, click Place and your parcel should look like the image below. Notice that if you select the parcel, the correct TDOT feature and symbology is applied.



8. Go ahead and Close the Geometry Builder Tool dialog box. You will be asked if you want to save the file. Go ahead and save the xml file in your SURVEY_Training workset dgn subfolder and name it Parcel 1. Note: If you already had a xml file, you could open it within the tool as well.





4.4.10 Best Fit Horizontal Geometry

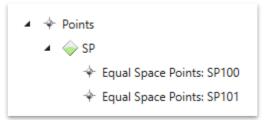
As discussed earlier in Section 4.4.3, the **Equal Space Points** tool (Figure 75) is located within the **Horizontal Point** tools (**Survey >> Geometry >> Horizontal >> Point**). This will be used to split the existing roadway pavement (RD) shots and to guide the creation of the **Survey Preliminary Centerline** via the **Best Fit** tool.

FIGURE 75. EQUAL SPACE POINTS DIALOG BOX

🔏 Equal Space Point	ts — 🗆	×
Plan		*
Placement Mode	Between Points	\sim
Interval	0.00	
Number Of Points	1	
Elevation		*
Elevation Mode	None	\sim
Rotation		*
Rotation Mode	Absolute Value	\sim
Rotation	N90°00'00.0"'E	
Feature		*
Feature Definition	SP	\sim
Name	SP	
Description		

The **Feature Name** field (**SP**) will count in sequential order with each point placed within the file (Figure 76). However, it is only sequential starting at 1. There is an enhancement request filed with Bentley so that ORD will auto-increment based on the starting point number you enter (e.g. SP100, SP101, etc). You may fill in a Description for each point if you would like or just leave it blank.

FIGURE 76. EQUAL SPACE POINTS: FEATURE NAMING

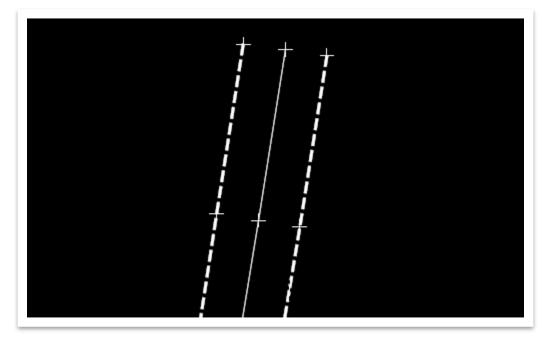






Once you have placed all Equal Space Points, you will have to **Place SmartLine** to connect all points (**Survey >> Drawing >> Placement**) (Figure 77). Previously, the points could be added in COGO in Geopak, but that functionality does not exist yet in <u>ORD</u> and has been requested as an enhancement with Bentley. You must have the linear element (SmartLine) to select when utilizing the **Define By Best Fit** tool (**Survey >> Geometry >> Horizontal >> Complex Geometry**). The symbology of the SmartLine is not critical during its creation.

FIGURE 77. EQUAL SPACE POINTS: PLAN VIEW







Once the **Define By Best Fit** tool is initiated, the additional parameters including the Feature Definition can be filled in to create the **Survey Preliminary Centerline** (Figure 78). The stationing will be added after the centerline is placed via the **Start Station** tool (**Survey >> Geometry >> Horizontal >> Modify**).

🔏 Create Best Fit Horizontal	– 🗆 X
Parameters	*
Best Fit	Make Complex Element
Best Fit Parameters	*
Envelope	0.00
Radius Rounding	0.00
Include Spirals	
Force Symmetrical Spirals	
Spiral Length Rounding	0.00
Default Radius	0.00'
Feature	*
Feature Definition	Survey Preliminary Centerline 🗸
Name	"Name of Road"

FIGURE 78. CREATE BEST FIT HORIZONTAL DIALOG BOX

In order to see the offset difference between the equal space points along the CL in relation to the Best Fit line, you can run a **Point Feature Station Offset Elevation** report (Figure 79). We will look further into this type of report in the next exercise.

FIGURE 79. POINT FEATURE STATION OFFSET ELEVATION REPORT EXAMPLE

Point	Description	Station	Offset Elevation	Feature
Survey Prelim CL Point	$\mathbf{x} imes \mathbf{x}$	100+00.00 R1	-0.052	Point\Survey\Transportation
Survey Prelim CL Point 1	2	100+50.07 R1	-0.132	Point\Survey\Transportation
Survey Prelim CL Point 2	3 🔨	101+00.59 R1	-0.052	Point\Survey\Transportation
Survey Prelim CL Point 3	4 .	101+54.21 R1	-0.084	Point\Survey\Transportation



4.4.11 Exercise: Horizontal Geometry Creation – Best Fit

In this exercise, we will create a best fit preliminary centerline via the breaklines contained within the survey text file. We will also make some modifications to the centerline and create a station offset report.

1. Create a new file and name it **Alignment – Best Fit**. Select the **TDOTSeed2D.dgn** and click **Save**.

Save as type: Micro Station DGN Files (*.dgn) Cancel Seed: C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co Browse	File name:	Alignment - Best Fit.dgn	Save
Seed: C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co Browse	Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) $\qquad \qquad \lor$	Cancel
	Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co	Browse

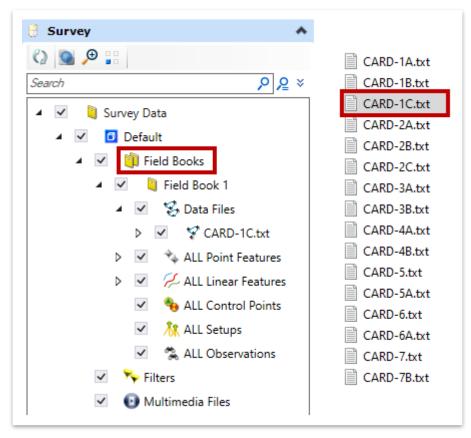
 First, let's create the survey field book. For this exercise, we will only import the CARD-1C.txt file. Within the Explorer, navigate to Field Books folder (Survey >> Survey Data >> Default).

Explorer	• 4 ×
😝 Items	*
🕘 OpenRoads Model	*
🕼 Sheet Index	*
🕘 OpenRoads Standards	*
🕘 Drainage and Utilities Model	*
🖯 Survey	*
🔇 🧕 🗩 📲	
Search 👂	¥ ⊈∕
🔺 🗹 🔋 Survey Data	
🔺 🗹 🧧 Default	
🔽 🏹 Field Books	
🗸 🥆 Filters	
 Multimedia Files 	

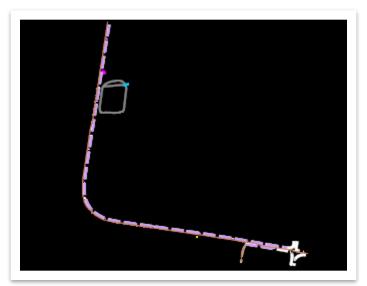
3. Open File Explorer and browse to the class files within the SURVEY_Training workset located here: C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\ Configuration\WorkSpaces\TDOT_Standards\Worksets\SURVEY_Training\ dgn\.



4. Select the ASCII text file **CARD-1C.txt**, then drag and drop into the **Field Books** folder within the **Explorer**.



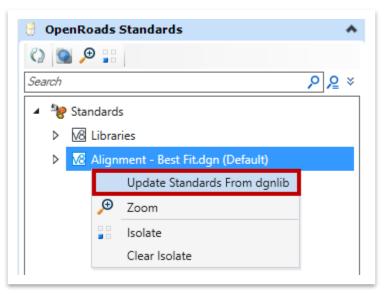
5. Click Fit View and review the file. You should see the image below.



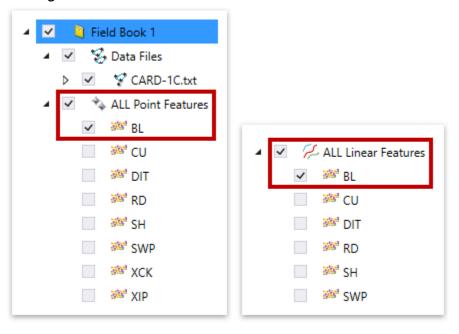




6. As a reminder, the first thing we need to do after import is update the dgnlib standards so that <u>all</u> survey locators are the correct scale. Expand the OpenRoads Standards tab within Explorer. Right click on the active file (Alignment – Best Fit.dgn) and select Update Standards From dgnlib. Give the software a minute to process.



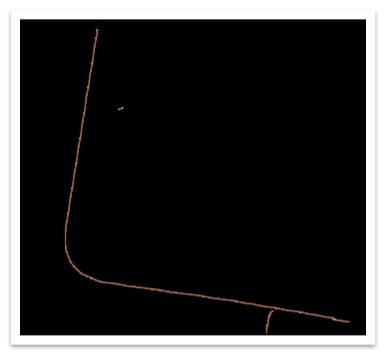
 Next, go back to the Survey tab within the Explorer and expand All Point Features and All Linear Features. Toggle off all features other than BL for each category. This will display only the BL features which will be used to create a Best Fit alignment.



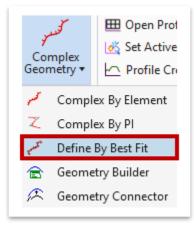




8. Notice that only the **breaklines** (points and linear features) are shown. Click **Fit View** again, if necessary.



 Now, we will create a survey preliminary centerline (complex geometry) via the Define By Best Fit tool. Go ahead and open the Define By Best Fit tool (Survey >> Geometry >> Horizontal >> Complex Geometry).





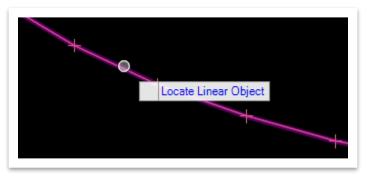


10. Within the Create Best Fit Horizontal dialog box, select the following settings.

- a. Best Fit: Make Complex Element
- b. Envelope: 10.00
- c. Radius Rounding: 10.00
- d. Include Spirals: None
- e. Default Radius: 2000.00
- f. Feature Definition: Alignment >> Survey Preliminary Centerline
- g. Name: Kirby Rd

Create Best Fit Horizontal	- 🗆 X
Parameters	*
Best Fit	Make Complex Element
Best Fit Parameters	*
Envelope	10.00
Radius Rounding	10.00
Include Spirals	
Force Symmetrical Spirals	\checkmark
Spiral Length Rounding	0.00
Default Radius	2000.00'
Feature	*
Feature Definition	Survey Preliminary Centerline 🧹
Name	Kirby Rd

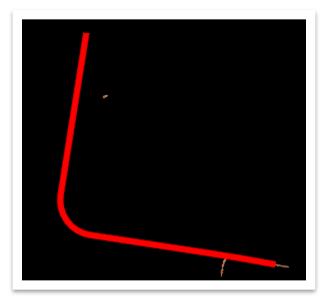
11. You will be prompted to first accept the Best Fit: Make Complex Element prompt. Left click to accept and then notice the next cursor prompt: Locate Linear Object. Select the BL survey chain and then left click through the remaining prompts to accept.



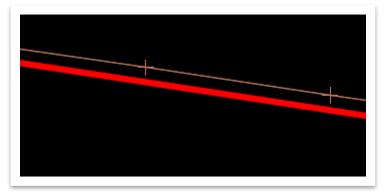




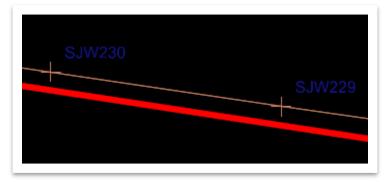
12. Once completed, you should notice a red survey preliminary centerline. Go ahead and right click to close the **Best Fit** tool.



13. Zoom in and notice that there are two separate lines. This is to be expected since the **Best Fit** line does not perfectly overlay the breakline.



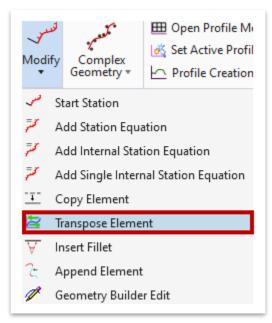
14. Next, turn on the **Names** decorations (**Survey >> Analyze >> Decorations**) so we can see the surveyed point names. You will notice that the point names go chronologically from right to left in terms of numbering.







15. The alignment was created without stationing. If we added stationing right now, it would be backwards and upside down. We need to first **Transpose** the best fit line, which essentially reverses the direction of the centerline. Open the **Transpose Element** tool (**Survey >> Geometry >> Horizontal >> Modify**).



16. Notice the first cursor prompt: **Locate First Element To Transpose**. Select the **Kirby Rd** centerline that was just created. Make sure to zoom in so that you don't select the breakline by accident.



17. Right click to reset since we are only concerned with the one centerline. Notice the last prompt: **Accept Transpose Selected Elements**. Left click to accept. It will look like nothing happened, but you will see shortly that when we apply the stationing, it will be in the correct direction.

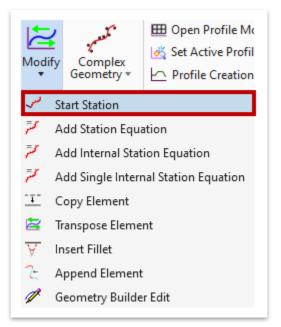




18. Before setting the start station, let's examine the alignments that are now in the file. Within the Explorer, under the OpenRoads Model tab expand Alignment – Best Fit.dgn (Default) >> Alignments >> Survey Preliminary Centerline. Notice there are two centerlines. The Best Fit Horizontal centerline was created initially and then the transposed centerline resulted in the Complex Element (Kirby Rd1). Go ahead and delete the Best Fit Horizontal: Kirby Rd centerline by right clicking on the name and selecting Delete. Then, select the new complex element in the drawing and open its Properties. Under the Feature tab, remove the "1" from the feature name (first image). Afterwards, you should only see the Complex Element in the updated name, as shown in the second image. Note: You may need to close out and reopen ORD to see the name update.

Survey Preliminary Centerline
Kirby Rd
inary Centerline
Element: Kirby Rd

19. Next, let's apply a specific **Start Station** to the centerline. Open the **Start Station** tool (**Survey >> Geometry >> Horizontal >> Modify**).







- 20. Within the **Define Starting Station** dialog box, select the following settings. This will set the stationing to start right at the beginning of the chain.
 - a. Start Distance: 0.00'
 - b. Start Station: 100+00.00
 - c. Distance: 0.00'

log Define 🛛 -	-	×
Parameters		*
Start Distance	0.00'	
Start Station	100+00.00	
Distance	0.00'	

21. Notice the cursor prompt: **Locate Element**. Select the **Kirby Rd** centerline and then left click through the remaining prompts to accept.

SJW230 SJW229
Complex Element: Kirby Rd Feature: Alignment/Survey Preliminary Centerline No Active Profile \ Line Level: SUR - CL - Preliminary

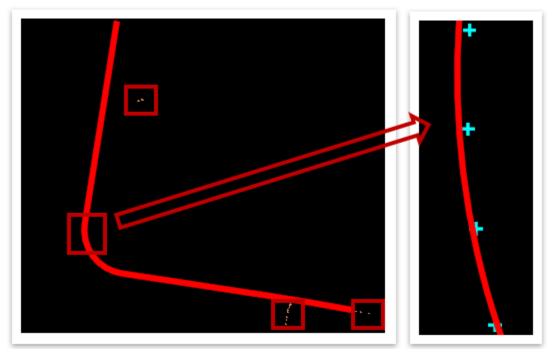
22. Once again it will look like nothing happened. Using the **Element Selection** tool, select the **Kirby Rd** centerline and notice now that there is an orange starting station of **100+00.00** on the northern end. The orange text is selectable and can be edited if you wish to change the starting station. You can also change the properties of the best fit line by selecting the centerline and opening the **Properties** window.







23. Now, let's create a Point Feature Station Offset Elevation Report along the best fit centerline. First, turn off the Names decorations (Survey >> Analyze >> Decorations) and the SUR - DTM - Breaklines level. We need to select the survey points that we want included in the station and offset report. Using the Element Selection tool, select all the BL point features along the centerline, excluding the outlying points (highlighted below). Note: It is quicker to first select all elements in the drawing and then hold down the CTRL key and deselect the elements you don't need.



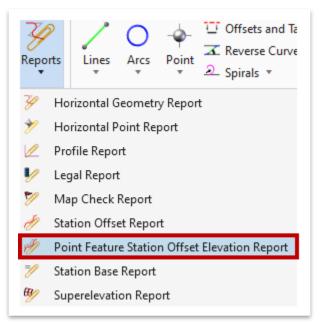
24. You should have **66** points selected. While the points are selected, the software will provide the total count at the bottom of the drawing window.



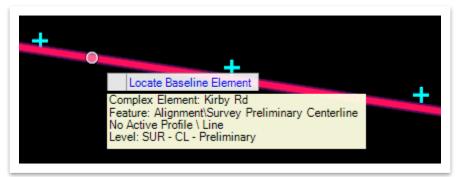




25. Next, open the **Point Feature Station Offset Elevation Report** tool (**Survey >> Geometry >> General Tools >> Reports**).



26. Notice the cursor prompt: Locate Baseline Element. Select the Kirby Rd centerline.







27. Notice the next cursor prompt: **Data Point To Accept Selected Elements**. Left click to accept and the report should open automatically.

		Report C	reated: Wednes Time: 7:20		n 10, 2021	
P	roject:	Default				
Descr	iption:					
$\langle X \rangle$	aseline (Active) nment:	Kirby Rd				
File	Name:		mData\Bentley\C uration\WorkSpa dgn			orkSets\SURV
$\times \times$	Last					
	evised:	3/10/2021	19:19:32			
<	evised: put Grid Factor:	3/10/2021	19:19:32		Note: All units in	this report are in
In	put Grid Factor:	3/10/2021	19:19:32 Station	Offset	Note: All units in Elevation	this report are in Feature
In Point	put Grid Factor:	$\sum_{i=1}^{i}$			XX	
In Point SJW279	put Grid Factor:	$\sum_{i=1}^{i}$	Station	Offset	Elevation	Feature
In Point SJW279 SJW278	put Grid Factor:	$\sum_{i=1}^{i}$	<u>Station</u> 100+00.00	Offset 0.15	Elevation 800.3050	Feature BL
In Point SJW279 SJW278 SJW277	put Grid Factor:	$\sum_{i=1}^{i}$	Station 100+00.00 100+47.76	Offset 0.15 -0.27	Elevation 800.3050 800.1680	Feature BL BL
In Point SJW279 SJW278 SJW277 SJW276	put Grid Factor:	$\sum_{i=1}^{i}$	Station 100+00.00 100+47.76 100+98.27	Offset 0.15 -0.27 -0.37	Elevation 800.3050 800.1680 799.9100	Feature BL BL BL
In Point SJW279 SJW278 SJW277 SJW276 SJW275	put Grid Factor:	$\sum_{i=1}^{i}$	Station 100+00.00 100+47.76 100+98.27 101+48.62	Offset 0.15 -0.27 -0.37 -0.35	Elevation 800.3050 800.1680 799.9100 799.7970	Feature BL BL BL BL BL
In Point SJW279 SJW278 SJW277 SJW276 SJW275 SJW274	put Grid Factor:	$\sum_{i=1}^{i}$	Station 100+00.00 100+47.76 100+98.27 101+48.62 102+00.62	Offset 0.15 -0.27 -0.37 -0.35 -0.28	Elevation 800.3050 800.1680 799.9100 799.7970 799.5680	Feature BL BL BL BL BL BL
In Point SJW279 SJW278 SJW276 SJW276 SJW275 SJW274 SJW273	put Grid Factor:	$\sum_{i=1}^{i}$	Station 100+00.00 100+47.76 100+98.27 101+48.62 102+00.62 102+50.86	Offset 0.15 -0.27 -0.37 -0.35 -0.28 -0.22	Elevation 800.3050 800.1680 799.9100 799.7970 799.5680 799.3740	Feature BL BL BL BL BL BL
	put Grid Factor:	$\sum_{i=1}^{i}$	Station 100+00.00 100+47.76 100+98.27 101+48.62 102+00.62 102+50.86 102+98.66	Offset 0.15 -0.27 -0.37 -0.35 -0.28 -0.22 0.01	Elevation 800.3050 800.1680 799.9100 799.7970 799.5680 799.3740 799.3220	Feature BL BL BL BL BL BL BL

28. Once reviewed, go ahead and close the report. Delete the **field book** within the **Explorer** so that only the alignment is in the active file.



Once the complex geometry has been placed, you may modify it graphically by either grabbing the handles and moving the points or by using the dynamic fields to change the bearings and distances. Once again, we will add annotation in Chapter 5.

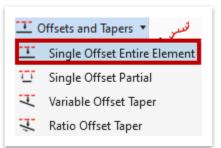




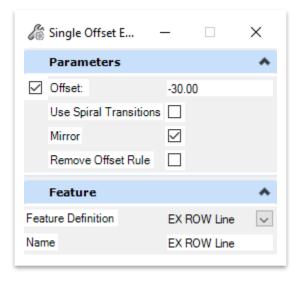
4.4.12 Exercise: Horizontal Offsets – ROW Lines

In this exercise, we will add existing ROW lines in the survey file utilizing the horizontal offset tools. We will open back up the **Survey Model – Edited.dgn** file.

 Attach the Alignment – Best Fit.dgn file as a reference. For simplicity, turn off all levels in the active survey file. For this exercise, let's assume the existing R.O.W. is at a 30' offset on each side of the centerline. Open the Single Offset Entire Element tool (Survey >> Geometry >> Horizontal >> Offsets and Tapers) so that we can create the existing ROW lines.



- 2. Within the **Single Offset Entire Element** dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Offset: -30.00
 - b. Use Spiral Transitions / Remove Offset Rule: Unchecked
 - c. Mirror: Checked
 - d. Feature Definition: EX ROW Line (Linear >> Right Of Way)
 - e. Name: EX ROW Line



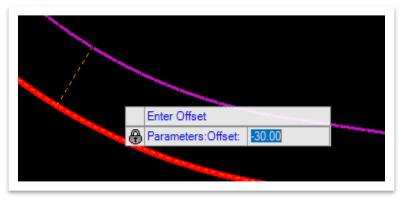




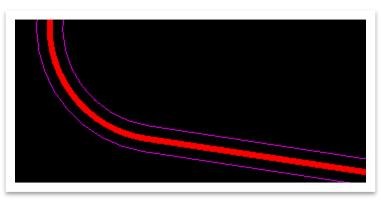
3. Notice the cursor prompt: Locate Element <Alt> to Pick element in complex. Select the Kirby Rd centerline.



4. Move your cursor to the northern side of the centerline. Left click to accept the placement of the existing ROW line and then left click again to select **Yes to Mirror** so that it is also placed on the southern side.



5. Turn on the **SUR - PROPERTY - ROW Lines** level and you should now see **two** existing ROW lines along the entire centerline.



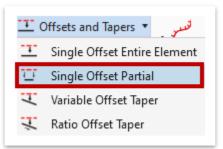


The **Offsets and Tapers** tools must be used to associate the existing ROW lines to the centerline.





 Now, let's place an existing ROW line within a specific station range along the centerline. Open the Single Offset Partial tool (Survey >> Geometry >> Horizontal >> Offsets and Tapers).



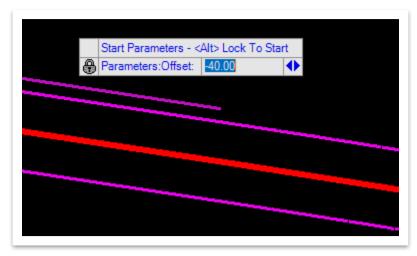
- Notice the cursor prompt: Locate Element <Alt> to Pick element in complex. Select the Kirby Rd centerline. Within the Single Offset Partial dialog box, select the following settings. Note: You must select the centerline before setting stations.
 - a. Offset: -40.00
 - b. Use Spiral Transitions / Remove Offset Rule: Unchecked
 - c. Mirror: Checked
 - d. Start Distance: 100+00.00 (Checked)
 - e. End Distance: 125+00.00 (Checked)
 - f. Feature Definition / Name: EX ROW Line (Linear >> Right Of Way)

🔏 Single Offset Par	_		\times
Parameters			*
Offset:	-40.00		
Use Spiral Transition	s 🗌		
Mirror	\checkmark		
Remove Offset Rule			
Distance			*
Lock To Start			
Start Distance	100+0	0.00	
Lock To End			
End Distance	125+0	0.00	
Length	2500.0	0	
Feature			*
Feature Definition	EX RO	W Line	\sim
Name	EX RO	W Line	

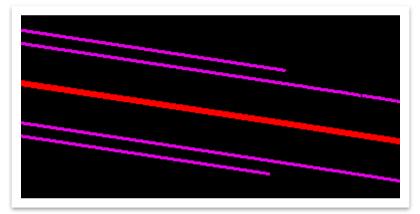




 Once again, move your cursor to the northern side of the centerline. Left click to accept the placement of the existing ROW line and then again to accept the extent. Left click once more to select **Yes to Mirror** so that it is also placed on the southern side.



9. You should now see **two** additional existing ROW lines along the centerline that are shorter than the previous two that we placed.





If the survey preliminary centerline gets updated in the alignment file after **associated** elements have been placed in the survey file (e.g. existing ROW lines), the elements will automatically update maintaining the same offset(s). You will visually see the update(s) the next time that you open the survey file.

While this process utilized the offset tools to create geometry, other civil geometry tools can also be used in the office (e.g. place line, place arcs, place points, Civil AccuDraw). The key is making sure the correct feature definition is selected when creating the geometry.





4.5 Lecture: Vertical Civil Geometry

The **Vertical Civil Geometry** tools contain all the tools necessary to create profiles (Figure 80). An active existing terrain model must be available to create a profile from a surface. An active alignment must be available to create a proposed profile.

FIGURE 80. VERTICAL TOOLS

Open Profile Model Set Active Profile Profile Creation *	Lines	Curves	Element Profiles *	Modify	Complex Geometry *	
Vertical						

4.5.1 Open Profile Model

In ORD, vertical civil geometry is viewed using the **Profile Model** within the file in which the alignment or plan view element is placed. Each horizontal geometry element can have its own profile view assigned to it.

The process to open a profile model is as follows:

1. Open a new drawing window (for profile views, it is recommended to use **View 2**, although not mandatory).

I								i.
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	L
								1

2. Open the Profile Model tool (Survey >> Geometry >> Vertical).



- 3. Select (data-point) alignment or plan view element (e.g. edge of pavement or ditch line) as the reference geometry for the profile.
- 4. Data-point inside of the view selected in step #1.



A profile model must be open to work with vertical geometry tools. This, however, is not a separate model space as the name implies but rather a view within the design model space. Also, an alignment must be stored in the current DGN file.

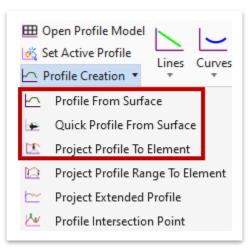




4.5.2 Profile Creation Tools

The **Profile Creation** tools allow the user to create a profile from the existing terrain (Figure 81). The three most common tools that surveyors will use for creating profiles are described below.

```
FIGURE 81. PROFILE CREATION TOOLS
```



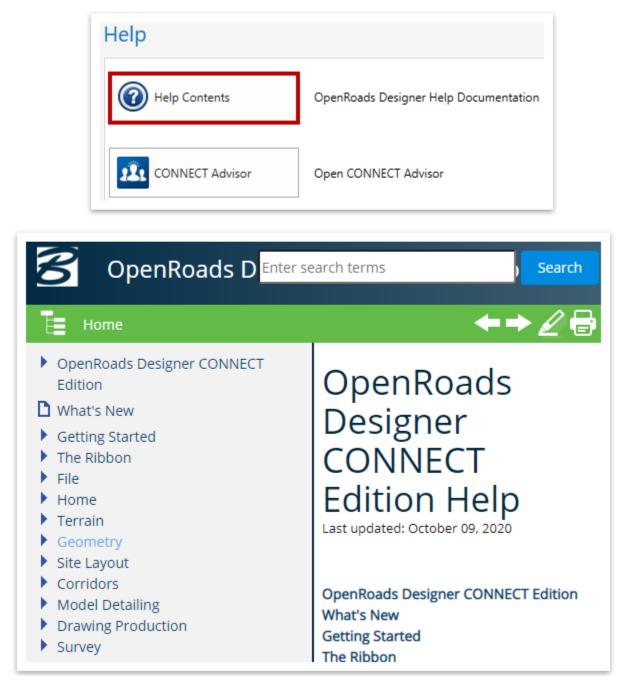
- <u>Profile from Surface</u>: Generates a profile whose elevations are determined by draping onto a surface. For example, this option would be used for creating an existing ground profile for an alignment or civil feature.
- Quick Profile from Surface: A companion tool that provides the same results as the Profile from Surface tool but simplifies the input by assuming that the entire element is draped and that the offsets are zero. This would be used to create a profile of a civil element by matching the slope and elevation of adjoining elements.
- <u>Project Profile to Element</u>: Used for showing one element's profile in the profile view of another plan view element. For example, viewing a gas utility line in relation to the survey preliminary centerline.





The other options under the **Profile Creation** tools are typically not used in survey, so they will not be covered in this class. However, if the user is interested in learning more about these tools, please refer to the Bentley ORD Help Documentation, which can be accessed via **File >> Help >> Help Contents**. This option will bring up a web browser window (Figure 82).

FIGURE	82. ORD	HELP	DOCUME	ENTATION









The profile will update automatically if any changes are made to the horizontal alignment, such as radial updates or alignment shortening / extending.

4.5.3 Set Active Profile

The **Set Active Profile** tool allows the user to set the active profile which will control the 3D model (Figure 83). A 3D spline is created for the 3D model representing the combination of the selected plan element and profile element.

FIGURE 83. SET ACTIVE PROFILE TOOL





The rest of the Vertical Geometry tools are primarily used by design. A short description of those tools is included in this section for reference. However, because these tools do not apply to Surveyors, they will not be covered in this class.

4.5.4 Lines Tools

The vertical **Lines** tools are used to create profile tangents by using several options (Figure 84).

- **Profile Line between Points**: The most commonly used tool which generates a profile line between two user-defined points.
- **<u>Profile Line to Element</u>**: Generates a profile line at a delta slope from a specific location to a reference element.
- **<u>Profile Line from Element</u>**: Generates a profile line at a delta slope from a reference element to a designated location.

Lines Curves Element Modify Co Profiles Modify Co Geo

FIGURE 84. VERTICAL LINES TOOLS

Profile Line between Elements: Generates a profile between two previously placed curves.

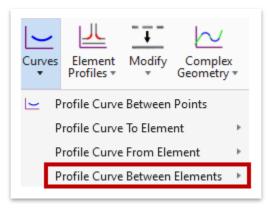




4.5.5 Curves Tools

The vertical **Curves** tools are used to create profile curves by using several options (Figure 85). The most commonly used option is the **Profile Curve Between Elements**, which constructs a vertical curve between two lines or elements.

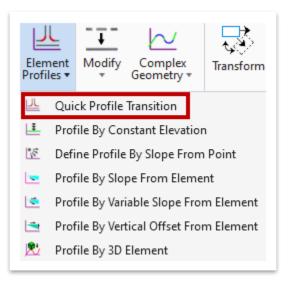
FIGURE 85. VERTICAL CURVES TOOLS



4.5.6 Element Profiles Tools

The **Element Profiles** tools are used to add profiles to elements by defining transitions, slopes or offsets (Figure 86). However, the most commonly used command is the **Quick Profile Transition**, which defines the profile of an element by matching the slope and elevation of adjoining elements.

FIGURE 86. ELEMENT PROFILES TOOLS



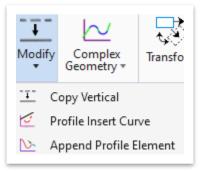




4.5.7 Modify Tools

The **Modify** tools are used to copy or modify vertical profiles (Figure 87). The user can insert curves on tangent sections or add elements to existing complex profiles.

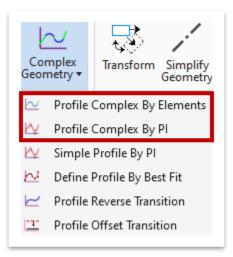
FIGURE 87. MODIFY TOOLS



4.5.8 Complex Geometry Tools

The **Complex Geometry** tools are used to create complex geometry elements through several methods (Figure 88).

FIGURE 88. COMPLEX GEOMETRY TOOLS



- **Profile Complex By Elements:** Used for combining existing geometry elements into one complex element.
- **<u>Profile Complex By PI</u>**: Used for creating a new complex element by defining points of intersection and radii.

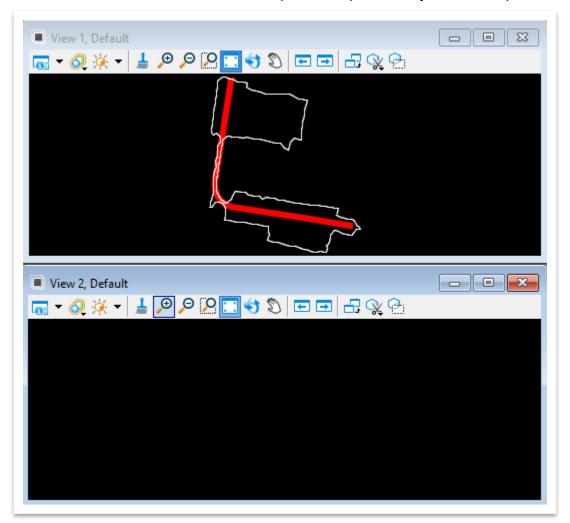




4.5.9 Exercise: Vertical Geometry Creation

In this exercise, we will be opening the profile model, creating and viewing the preliminary centerline profile. We will open back up the **Alignment – Best Fit.dgn** file.

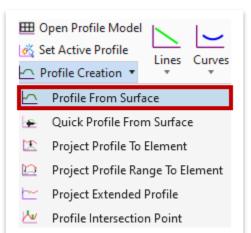
- 1. Attach the following reference files using the **Coincident World** attachment method and click **Fit View**.
 - Existing Terrain TIN.dgn
 - Survey Model Edited.dgn (turn off)
- To turn the triangles off, select the terrain boundary and open the Properties. Under the Reference tab, set the Override Symbology field to Yes and then toggle off the triangles under Calculated Features Display. Go ahead and open View 2 as well, which is where we will place the preliminary centerline profile.







3. Zoom in so you can see the red preliminary centerline. Open the **Profile From Surface** tool (Survey >> Geometry >> Vertical >> Profile Creation).



4. Notice the cursor prompt: **Locate First Element To Profile**. Select the preliminary centerline (Kirby Rd). Since we are only profiling one centerline, right click to complete.

0	
	Locate First Element To Profile
Fea	nplex Element: Kirby Rd ture: Alignment\Survey Preliminary Centerline Active Profile \ Arc el: SUR - CL - Preliminary

5. Notice the next cursor prompt: **Locate Reference Surface**. Select the terrain boundary and then right click to complete. **Note:** If your terrain was already set to active, then you would simply right click to accept.







- 6. Now, within the **Profile From Surface** dialog box, select the following settings and then left click through each prompt to accept.
 - a. Point Selection: All
 - b. Profile Adjustment: None
 - c. Draping Option: Triangles
 - d. Horizontal/Vertical Offsets: 0.00
 - e. Lock To Start / End: Checkmark
 - f. Feature Definition: EX Ground Profile (Linear >> Profiles >> Roadway >> Existing)
 - g. Name: Kirby Existing Profile

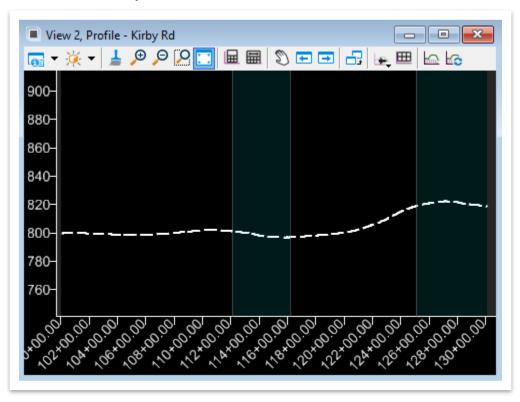
🄏 Profile Fro	- 🗆 ×
Parameters	*
Point Selection	All
Profile Adjustment	t None 🗸
Draping Option	Triangles 🗸
Horizontal Offsets	0.00
Vertical Offsets	0.00
Range	*
Lock To Start	
Start Distance	100+00.00
Lock To End	\checkmark
End Distance	130+08.63
Feature	^
Feature Definition	EX Ground Profile 🗸
Name	Kirby Existing Profile

7. Next, open the **Open Profile Model** tool (Survey >> Geometry >> Vertical).

🖽 Open Profile Model			JL		\sim
Mathematical Set Active Profile Mathematical Set Active Profile Creation ▼	Lines	Curves	Element Profiles *	Modify	Complex Geometry *
		Vertica	I		



8. Notice the cursor prompt: Locate Plan Element. The software is asking for the centerline. Select the Kirby Rd centerline in plan view (View 1). Notice the next cursor prompt: Select or Open View. Left click anywhere within View 2 and you should see the existing ground profile with the correct symbology. Note: Once the profile is created, it will always be in the file. You may have to re-visualize it if you close View 2 at any time.



- Alternatively, you could have used the Quick Profile From Surface tool (Survey >> Geometry >> Vertical >> Profile Creation).
 - a. Select Reference Element (Kirby Rd centerline).
 - b. Select **Reference Terrain** (terrain boundary).
 - c. Right click to complete the creation.



The **Profile From Surface** option in Step 3 gives you more options, such as setting adjustment profiles, horizontal and vertical offsets and start / end ranges. Most likely, surveyors will be using the **Quick Profile From Surface** option. These two options only work with alignment geometry, which means **the reference element must be set with an alignment**.



4.6 Lecture: Vertical Civil Geometry – Utilities

The automatic projection method of existing utilities onto profiles will depend on the type of utility and scenario. This will also determine whether a utility model is needed or not. For those <u>linear</u> utilities that do not require a depth to be shown on the profile (single line representation), a utility model is **not** needed. For those <u>linear</u> utilities that do require a depth to be shown on the profile (top and bottom of pipe) or if the utility is crossing the centerline, a utility model **is** needed. **Note:** Linear refers to along the centerline.

When creating a utility model, the **Extract From Graphic** tool will be the TDOT standard, which will be shown in Exercises 4.6.2 and 4.6.3. However, the alternative option would be to use the **Nodes** and **Conduits** method under the **Drainage and Utilities** workflow if your utility extractions look erroneous (Figure 89). This would entail cross-referencing the surveyed properties for a given utility (e.g. pipe size, elevations) and then keying in the applicable data within these tools so that the conduit would be visualized correctly on the profile. We will utilize this method in Chapter 7 (Exercises 7.2.2, 7.3.2 and 7.4.2) when placing low wire crossings, control points and benchmarks in the profile.

FIGURE 89. NODE AND CONDUIT TOOLS





There have been multiple service tickets filed with Bentley regarding the **Extract From Graphic** tool. Bentley has put a large emphasis on enhancing this tool, which will be reflected in the next software release, thus making it more reliable.

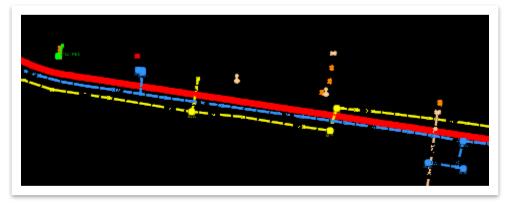




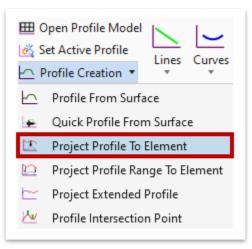
4.6.1 Exercise: Utility Profile Projection – Non-Utility Model

In this exercise, we will project an existing <u>linear</u> water line onto the roadway profile. This process would also be applied for **Gas**, **Electric** and **Fiber** lines, which <u>do not</u> require a utility model for the projection. Existing linear **Storm** and **Sanitary** profile creation will be discussed in the next exercise. We will continue to utilize the same **Alignment – Best Fit.dgn** file.

 Within the active file, turn off all levels other than SUR - CL - Preliminary. Turn off the Existing Terrain – TIN.dgn reference file. Turn on the Survey Model – Edited .dgn reference file and turn off all levels other than the utility levels (SUR - UTL).



2. Open the **Project Profile To Element** tool (**Survey >> Geometry >> Vertical >> Profile Creation**).



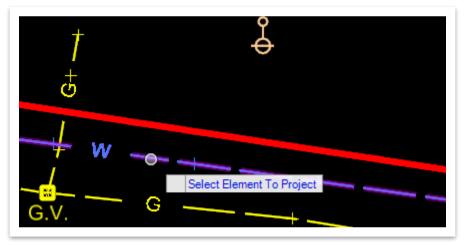




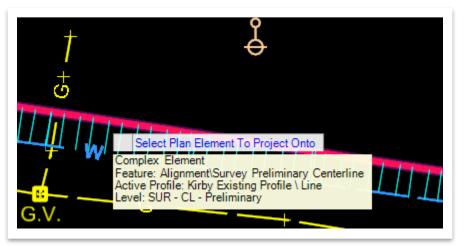
- 3. Within the **Place Projected Profile** dialog box, select the following settings. Since no pipe size was included in the survey, we will assume an unknown size. If you knew the size, you would pick the applicable size in the feature definition.
 - a. Feature Definition: Unknown (Linear >> Utilities >> Existing >> Underground >> Water)
 - b. Name: EX Water Unknown

🔏 Place	_		×
Feature			*
Feature Definition	Unknow	'n	\sim
Name	EX Wat	er - Unkn	own

4. Notice the cursor prompt: Select Element To Project. Select the water line.



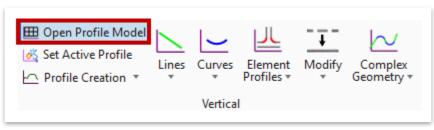
5. Notice the next cursor prompt: **Select Plan Element To Project Onto**. Select the Kirby Rd centerline. **Note:** You should see turquoise lines temporarily between the water line and the centerline until you physically left click on the centerline.



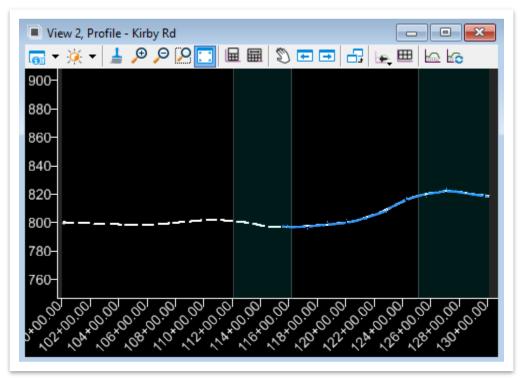




 If you had closed the profile model (View 2), go ahead and re-visualize it once again using the Open Profile Model tool (Survey >> Geometry >> Vertical) and follow the prompts. <u>You must first have the survey preliminary centerline profile</u> <u>created and visible before projecting any utilities to it</u>, which we previously did in Exercise 4.5.9.



7. Notice that since we projected the existing water line, it now shows in profile view. The "W" in the linestyle is vertically exaggerated and cannot be singularly adjusted at this time. Note: While there is a vertical exaggeration tool within the View Attributes menu for profiles, it adjusts everything rather than just the letter in the utility linestyle. An enhancement has been logged with Bentley so that linestyle vertical exaggerations can be controlled in a future software release.



You would project the other existing utility lines classified in this exercise in the same manner. Remember, if the projection does not work, it means that the Plan By 3D Element tool was not applied to the utility line(s) in the Survey Model – Edited.dgn file. Reference Exercise 3.5.4, Steps 7-10.



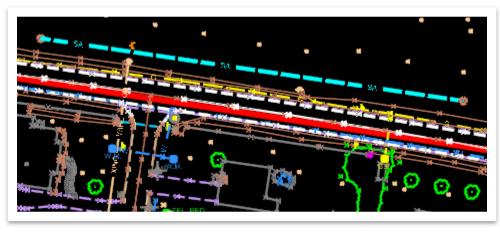
4.6.2 Exercise: Utility Profile Projection – Utility Model

In this exercise, we will project an existing <u>linear</u> sanitary line onto the roadway profile. This process does require a **3D** utility model for the projection so that the pipe depths can be visually displayed automatically. This process would also be applied for **Storm** lines.

1. Create a new file and name it **Utility Model**. Select the **TDOTSeed2D.dgn** and click **Save**.

File name:	Utility Model	Save
Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) $\qquad \qquad \lor$	Cancel
Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co	Browse

- 2. Attach the following reference files using the **Coincident World** attachment method and then click **Fit View**.
 - Alignment Best Fit.dgn
 - Existing Terrain TIN.dgn (turn off the triangles)
 - Survey Model Edited.dgn (turn on all levels other than the ROW lines)
 - Survey Model SA.dgn
- Notice the existing Sanitary (SA) line on the north side of the Kirby Rd preliminary centerline (highlighted below). This utility has been added in the Survey Model SA reference file for the purpose of this exercise, because the survey data did not have a linear utility of this kind along the centerline.







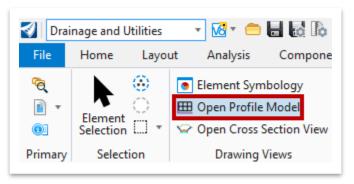
4. First. we must create a **3D utility model** so we can project the **8**" **SA** line onto the profile. Go ahead and switch to the **Drainage and Utilities** workflow in the top left corner.

1	Survey 🔻 🐱
Fil	OpenRoads Modeling
	OpenRoads Drawing Production
8	Survey
	Geotechnical
	Reality Modeling
	Drawing
Expl	Drainage and Utilities
- A	

5. Next, expand the **Drainage and Utilities Model** tab within the **Explorer**, which we will reference throughout the exercise.

👌 Drainage and Utilities Model		
🔇 🥥 🗩 📲		
Search	× 2ٍ <	
Orainage and Utilities Model		

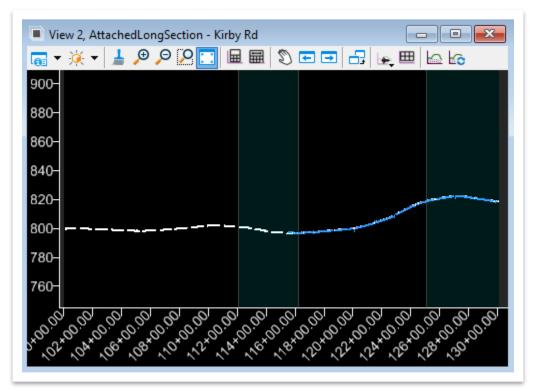
 Now, Open Profile Model (Drainage and Utilities >> Utilities View >> Drawing Views) and follow the prompts once again to visualize the Kirby Rd profile. Go ahead and select View 2 for this exercise.



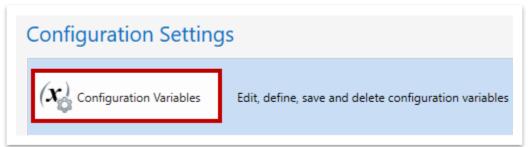




7. You should see the existing centerline profile along with the projected water line that we added in the last exercise.



- 8. Before we create the existing 3D utility model for the SA line, we need to modify the SUDA_USE_HAESTAD_CONDUIT configuration variable so that the selected conduit feature definition will be applied in the actual profile. In the current software version, the conduit size is not carried over once projected onto the profile, which is a known defect. This modification will need to be done one time if you need to project any existing modeled utilities onto the profile. Bentley has indicated that this issue has been fixed in the next software version so Steps 9-13 will not be required.
- 9. Go to File >> Settings >> Configuration >> Configuration Variables.







10. Within the **Configuration Variables** window, key-in **SUDA_USE_HAESTAD_ CONDUIT** in the search bar at the top.

🜍 Configuration Variables : User [Personal]						
<u>F</u> ile						
<u>C</u> ategory	^	SUDA_USE_HAESTAD_CONDUIT				
All Cells		Variable Name	Description			
Clash Detection Colors Data Files		SUDA_USE_HAESTAD_CONDUIT	SUDA_USE_HAESTAD_CONDUIT			

- 11. The variable should now be selected (left click on it if not). Once selected, click **Edit** on the right side of the window. Within the **Edit Configuration Variable** window, select the following settings and then click **OK**.
 - a. Edit Mode: Overwrite
 - b. New Value: 0

🛃 Edit Configu	uration Variable ×
Variable:	SUDA_USE_HAESTAD_CONDUIT
Edit <u>M</u> ode:	Overwrite 🔻
<u>N</u> ew Value:	0
Expansion:	0
	<u>O</u> K Cancel

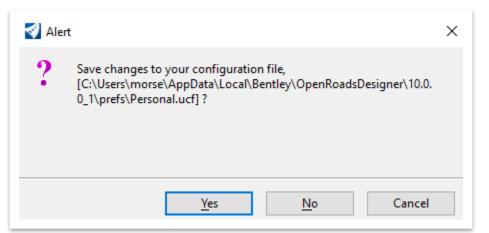
12. Notice that the variable **Level** has now updated from Workspace to **User**. That means that this variable update is applied to your machine only and is not part of the overall workspace configuration settings. Click **OK** once done to close the **Edit Configuration Variable** window.

SUDA_USE_HAESTAD_CONDUIT			
Variable Name	Description	Level	Flags
SUDA_USE_HAESTAD_CONDUIT	SUDA_USE_HAESTAD_CONDUIT	User	





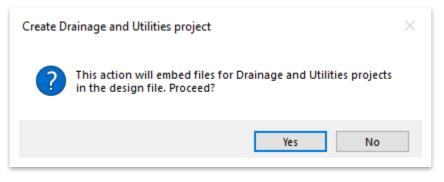
13. You should get an alert asking if you want to save changes to your configuration file. Click **Yes**.



14. Now we will begin creating an existing 3D utility model for the **SA** line. Open the **Extract From Graphic** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Layout >> Layout**).

	Place Pond ☐ Place Low Impact Develo	Extract From Graphic	<mark>+∠ 0</mark> Filter Manager
Layo	out		

15. A warning will display asking if the you want to embed files for **Drainage and Utilities** projects in the design file. Click **Yes**.









Give the software a minute to load the necessary drainage and utility modeling files in the background. This only occurs in a new file for the first drainage and utility modeling tool that is opened. All other subsequent tools will open immediately from then on in the file.

- 16.Open the Extract From Graphic tool once again (Drainage and Utilities >> Layout >> Layout) and select the following settings.
 - a. Method: Selection
 - b. Use 3D Element Elevations: Unchecked
 - c. Vertical Offset: 0.00
 - d. Create Trench: Unchecked
 - e. Design Stage: No Design Stage
 - f. Feature Definition: SA (Conduit >> WasteWaterSegment >> Existing)
 - g. Name Prefix: SAEx
 - h. Description: 8" (This sets the size of the utility)

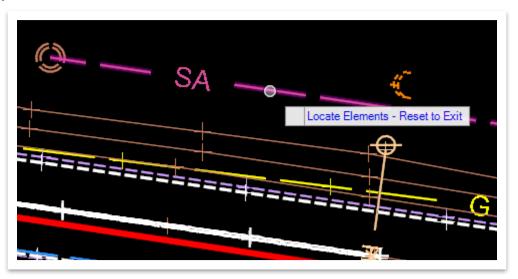
http://www.com/actives.com/act	ra — 🗆 🗙
Parameters	*
Method	Selection
Use 3D Element Elevations?	
Vertical Offset	0.00
Create Trench	
Design Stage	No Design Stage 🗸 🗸
Feature	*
Feature Definition	SA 🗸
Name Prefix	SAEx
Description	8"





17. Left click to accept the Method and then notice the next prompt: Locate Elements

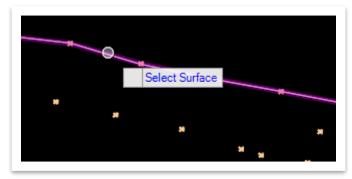
Reset to Exit. Select the existing SA line on the north side of Kirby Rd and then right click to complete. Note: If you had multiple SA lines that were the same size, you could select them all and extract at one time.



18. Left click to accept the Use 3D Elements Elevations? prompt.



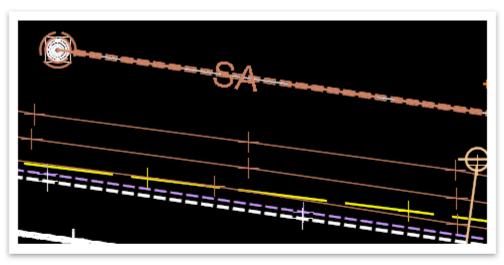
19. Notice the next prompt: **Select Surface**. Select the existing terrain boundary and then left click through the remaining prompts to accept. Right click to clear the tool.

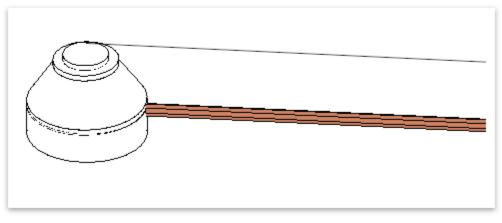






20. You should now see that two generic **nodes** and a 3D utility line (**conduit**) were created on top of the 2D sanitary line. Right click and hold anywhere within **View** 1 and select **View Control >> 2 Views Plan/3D** to open the split 2D/3D views, which are shown below. **Note:** Click within **View 2** to activate the view and then turn off all reference files. Feel free to rotate the 3D view **dynamically** to review the SA line.

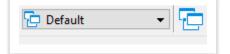






Bentley has indicated that the next software release will allow for a Node feature definition to be selected within the **Extract From Graphic** tool, which will place the correct nodes (structurally and visually) rather than generic nodes.

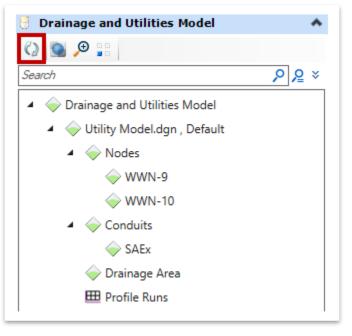
21.Go ahead and switch back to the **Default** view in the lower left corner of the drawing window and then close **View 2** for now.



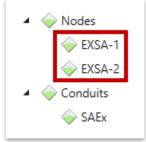




- 22. Turn off the following reference files:
 - Utility Model.dgn (Default-3D)
 - Survey Model Edited.dgn
 - Survey Model SA.dgn
- 23. Within the Explorer, notice that there are now Nodes and Conduits listed for the SA line under the Drainage and Utilities Model tab. It's OK if you have different default node numbers in your file because we will update the names in the next step. Note: If the nodes and conduits are not showing, click the Refresh icon under the Drainage and Utilities Model header (highlighted below). If the nodes still do not show, close and re-open the Explorer.



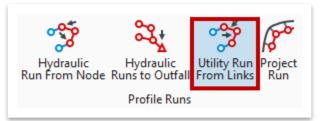
24. Let's go ahead and rename the nodes, which is recommended for each project. Right click on each Waste Water Node (**WWN**) name and select **Rename**. For this exercise, rename the nodes to **EXSA-1** and **EXSA-2**. **Note:** You likely wondered why the nodes were not numbered 1 and 2 by default. There is a defect logged with Bentley regarding the default numbering of nodes for hydraulic conduits and it should be addressed in a future software release.







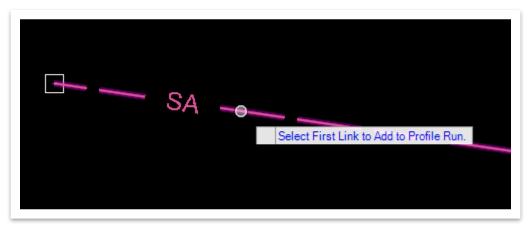
25. Next, we will create the existing **SA** profile line. Open the **Utility Run From Links** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Layout >> Profile Runs**).



- 26. Within the Create Profile Run dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Name: Profile Run
 - b. Feature Definition: 8" (Linear >> Utilities >> Existing >> Underground >> Sewer >> Sanitary)
 - c. Name Prefix: EX SAS 8 in

🔏 Create	_	×
Parameter	5	*
Name	Profile Run	
Feature		*
Feature Feature Definition	8"	*

27. Notice the cursor prompt: **Select First Link to Add to Profile Run**. Select the **SA** line.



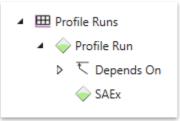




28. Notice the next cursor prompt: Pick Next Link to Add to Profile Path. Reset to Quit Picking. Right click to finish since we are only profiling <u>one</u> SA line. Note: If you had multiple <u>separate</u> SA lines, you would need to apply the tool to each individually. When it prompts you to pick the next link, that option only works if you have multiple <u>connected</u> utility segments.



29. Once again, within the **Explorer** notice that a new **Profile Run** has been created under the **Drainage and Utilities Model** tab.



30. Now we need to project the SA utility run onto the survey preliminary centerline. <u>This must be done in the alignment file or else the modeled utilities will not show</u> in the overall survey profile when referenced. It is recommended to create all utility models first and then open the alignment file to do the projections. Go ahead and open the Alignment – Best Fit.dgn file once again and attach the Utility Model.dgn reference file.

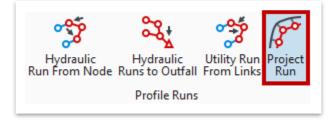




31. Before we project the utility run, we need to do a **reference activation** for the **Utility Model.dgn** file due to a defect with the current software version. This process will allow the conduit attributes of the projected **SA** line to be visually correct in profile view, or else the conduit will be solid white. Within the **References** window, right click on the **Utility Model.dgn** file and select **Activate** and give it a second to process.

<u>A</u> ttach	
<u>D</u> etach	
R <u>e</u> load	
E <u>x</u> change	
Open in New Session	
Activate	
Deactivate	

- 32. Right click on the same reference file once more and select **Deactivate**. This serves as a refresh for the software. Go ahead and close the **References** window for now.
- 33. Next, open the Project Run tool (Drainage and Utilities >> Layout >> Profile Runs). Once again, you will get the Create Drainage and Utilities project alert because it is the first time we have opened a drainage and utility modeling tool in this file. Go ahead and click Yes.







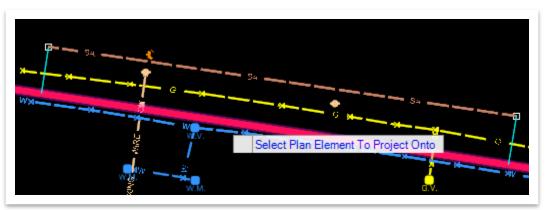
- 34. Open the **Project Run** tool again. Within the **Project Reach Path** dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Vertical Offset: 0.00
 - b. Feature Definition: 8" (Linear >> Utilities >> Existing >> Underground >> Sewer >> Sanitary)
 - c. Name Prefix: EX SAS 8 in

🔏 Project R	_	\times
Parameters	;	*
Vertical Offset	t 0.00	
Feature		*
Feature Feature Definition	8"	▲

35. Notice the cursor prompt: Select Profile Run. Select the SA line.



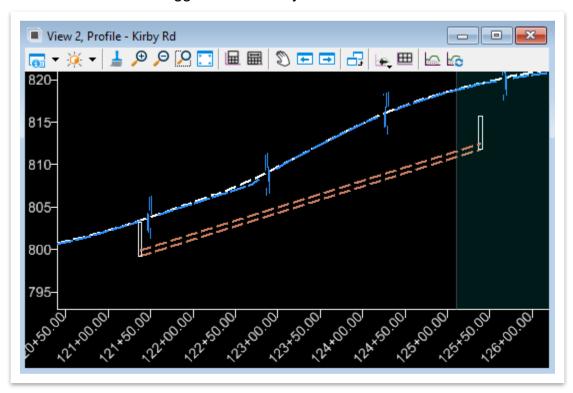
36. Notice the next cursor prompt: **Select Plan Element To Project Onto**. Select the **Kirby Rd** centerline. **Note:** Once again, you should see turquoise lines temporarily between the SA line and the centerline until you physically left click on the centerline.







37. It will look like nothing happened. Go ahead and open **View 2** and then **Open Profile Model (Drainage and Utilities >> Utilities View >> Drawing Views)**. Select the **Kirby Rd** centerline and then click anywhere within **View 2**. Notice that the **SA** line (conduit) plotted correctly (size and attributes) but the nodes plotted white and on the **Default** level. This is a known defect with the current software version and has been logged with Bentley.





Bentley has indicated that the next software release will allow the correct attributes to be carried through automatically for **referenced utilities** for both the nodes and conduits.

We will look at how to manually apply the correct attributes to the **SA** line and how annotation is added in Chapter 5 once the profile named boundary has been created, which is a prerequisite.

Plotting an existing linear drainage profile would be done in the same manner as the SA profile. This method allows for the pipe depth to be drawn automatically. However, as a reminder, if your utility extractions look erroneous, use the **Nodes** and **Conduits** tools to create the utility model.

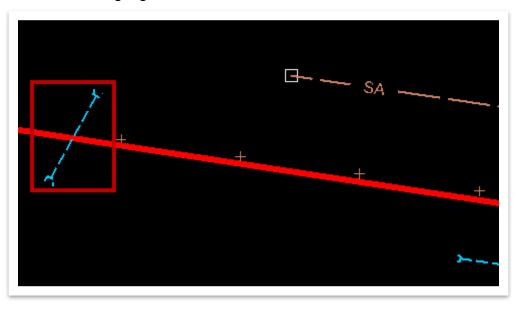




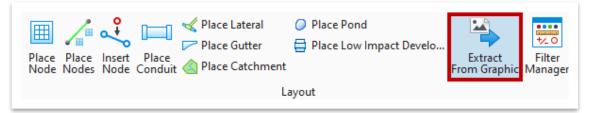
4.6.3 Exercise: Crossing Utilities – Profile

In this exercise, we will add a <u>crossing</u> storm utility (RCP) to the roadway profile. This process also requires a **3D** utility model for the projection so that the pipe depths can be visually displayed automatically. This process would also be applied for **all** other types of utility lines. We will open back up the **Utility Model.dgn** file.

 Turn on the Survey Model – Edited.dgn reference file. Within that file, turn off all levels except SUR - DRG - Pipe and Culverts. For this exercise, we will focus on the 18" RCP, highlighted below.



2. Now we will begin creating an existing 3D utility model for the **18**" **RCP** line. Open the **Extract From Graphic** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Layout >> Layout**).







- 3. Within the **Extract Utilities From Graphics** dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Method: Selection
 - b. Use 3D Element Elevations: Unchecked
 - c. Vertical Offset: 0.00
 - d. Create Trench: Unchecked
 - e. Design Stage: No Design Stage
 - f. Feature Definition: Cross Drains Ex (Conduit >> StormWater >> Culvert Pipes >> Existing)
 - g. Name Prefix: Cross Drain Ex
 - h. Description: 18" (This sets the size of the utility)

🔏 Extract Utilities Fron	n Gra — 🗌	\times
Parameters		*
Method	Selection	\sim
Use 3D Element Elevations?		
Vertical Offset	0.00	
Create Trench		
Design Stage	No Design Stage	\sim
Feature		*
Feature Definition	Cross Drains Ex	\sim
Name Prefix	CrossDrain Ex	
Description	18"	\checkmark

Left click to accept the Method and then notice the next prompt: Locate Elements

 Reset to Exit. Select the existing RCP crossing Kirby Rd and then right click to complete.



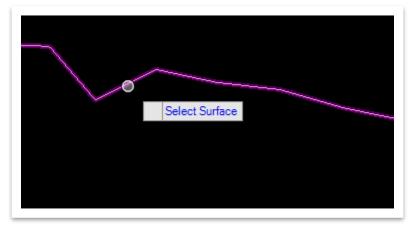




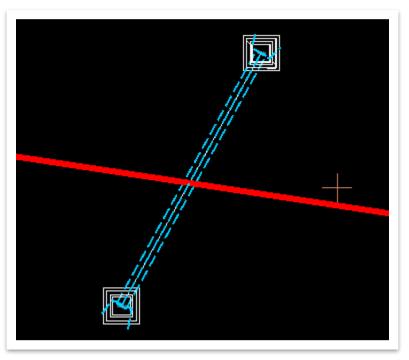
5. Left click to accept the Use 3D Elements Elevations? prompt.



6. Notice the next prompt: **Select Surface**. Select the existing terrain boundary and then left click through the remaining prompts to accept. Right click to clear the tool.



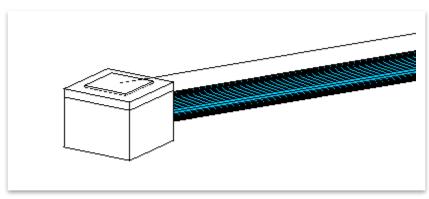
7. You should now see that two generic **nodes** and a 3D drainage pipe (**conduit**) were created on top of the 2D RCP line. The nodes are not critical when profiling crossing utilities since the pipe (conduit) is the only visualized component. **Note:** If you don't see the outer blue lines, make sure that the **Utility Model.dgn** (**Default-3D**) reference file is turned on, including all levels.







 Once again, to view the 3D view of the existing RCP, right click and hold anywhere within View 1 and select View Control >> 2 Views Plan/3D to open the split 2D/3D views, which are shown below. Note: Feel free to rotate the 3D view dynamically to review the RCP.



9. Go ahead and switch back to the **Default** view in the lower left corner of the drawing window and then close **View 2** for now, if still opened.

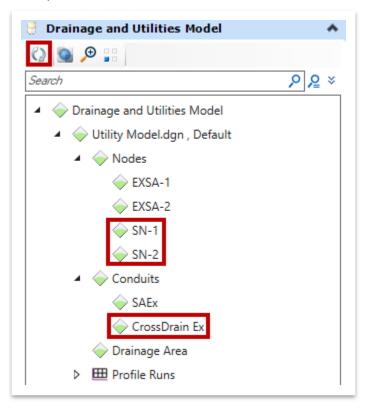
🔁 Default	-

10. Turn off the following reference files:

- Utility Model.dgn (Default-3D)
- Survey Model Edited.dgn



11. Within the **Explorer**, notice that there are now **Nodes** and **Conduits** listed for the **cross drain** under the **Drainage and Utilities Model** tab. We will leave the default names as-is for this exercise. **Note:** If the nodes and conduits are not showing, click the **Refresh** icon under the **Drainage and Utilities Model** header (highlighted below). If the nodes still do not show, close and re-open the **Explorer**.



- 12. Now we need to add the crossing storm utility (RCP) to the survey preliminary centerline profile. As a reminder, <u>this must be done in the alignment file or else the modeled utilities will not show in the overall survey profile when referenced</u>.
- 13. Open the Alignment Best Fit.dgn file once again and the Utility Model.dgn reference file should still be turned on. Go ahead and open View 2, which should still show the profile for the Kirby Rd centerline. Notice the existing water and sanitary lines that we created in the previous exercises are shown. Note: If you do not see the profile, open the Open Profile Model tool (Drainage and Utilities >> Utilities View >> Drawing Views) and follow the prompts.





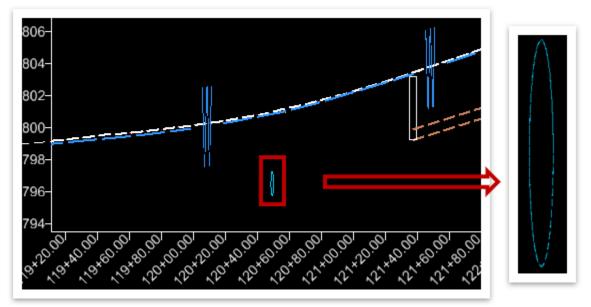
14. Within the Profile view (View 2), select the Create 3d Cut tool.



15. Within the **Create 3d Cut** dialog box, select the **Full Profile** placement method. This option tells the software to find all crossing utilities for the entire profile. The other option is **Corners**, which allows you to draw a specific extent.

Create	_		×
Parameters			*
Placement Method	Full Pr	ofile	\sim

16. Left click anywhere within **View 2** to accept and notice that the existing 18" RCP cross drain is now shown on the profile. **Note:** As a reminder, we will look at how annotation is added in Chapter 5 once the profile named boundary has been created.



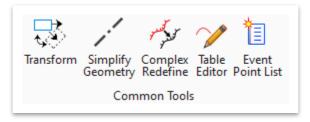




4.7 Lecture: Common Tools

These tools should be used with caution and are used to simplify geometry, while also allowing for redefinition and removal of rules (Figure 90).

FIGURE 90. COMMON TOOLS



4.7.1 Transform

The **Transform** tool is used any time the user wants to translate, rotate or scale either regular or civil elements (Figure 91). Once civil elements are transformed, they become simplified elements, meaning if the element is a target of a rule then that rule is removed during the transformation process. A warning box appears if the civil elements are about to be transformed.

FIGURE 91. TRANSFORM ELEMENTS DIALOG BOX

🔏 Transform E	lements —	×
Transform:	SUSFoot To Meter	· 🌶
Сору	 🖓 🗁 🗊	
Use Fence:		Ŧ
Translate:	Cursor Point	~
Scale:	Active Scale	~
Scale:	1	
About:	Zero Origin	~
	8 8 × "	

4.7.2 Simplify Geometry

This tool allows the user to remove rules and intervals from horizontal and vertical geometry. In addition, it removes rules and relationships from other elements (e.g. snap rules, offset rules, etc). **This tool should not be used for survey**.





4.7.3 Complex Redefine

This tool allows the user to redefine part of an existing complex alignment while preserving the name of the alignment so that all rules built off the original geometry will update with the new geometry. **This tool should not be used for survey**.

4.7.4 Table Editor

This tool allows the user to edit complex alignments that have been created by defining points of intersection (Figure 92). The user can edit both **horizontal** and proposed **vertical** alignments. To activate, simply select the tool and then the applicable centerline in the drawing.

Station	Back Tangent Length	Back Bearing	Back Spiral Length	Northing	Easting	Radius	Arc Length
100+00.00				826331.30	1816376.29		
114+14.42	1209.37	N09°01'23.8"E	0.00	824878.43	1816145.58	260.00	410.11
127+59.82	891.53	N81°21'10.8"W	0.00	824667.63	1817531.72	13800.00	497.62
130+08.63	0.00	N79°17'13.0''W		824621.38	1817776.21		

FIGURE 92. ALIGNMENT TABLE EDITOR

4.7.5 Event Point List

This tool allows users to store specific points by **Station Offset** or **Northing Easting** as well as store both horizontal and vertical cardinal points (Figure 93). This tool is typically used in conjunction with creating specific cross sections.

FIGURE 93. EVENT POINT LIST







Chapter 5. Plan Development Tools

The Plan Development tools are located under the **Drawing Production** tab in the Survey workflow (Figure 94). These tools are used to add text, notes, labels and create sheets for plans, profiles and cross sections. Annotation groups have been setup utilizing feature definitions to automatically annotate civil geometry. The Drawing Production tools that are applicable for survey include: Annotations, Place Text, Place Notes (Intelligent Labels), Named Boundaries and Drawing Scales.

FIGURE 94. DRAWING PRODUCTION TAB



5.1 Objectives

At the conclusion of this chapter, participants will be able to:

- 1. Add element and model annotation for plan view geometry.
- 2. Modify annotation and add existing ROW labels.
- 3. Create a TDOT control point table.
- 4. Create a profile drawing model with annotation.

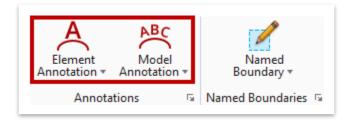
5.2 Lecture: Drawing Production Tools for Survey

Once the survey field data is imported into ORD and all civil geometry (plan and profile) has been added or projected, the drawing production tools should be utilized to add annotation for both plan and profile data. For the plan civil geometry that is created post-import, additional tools will be utilized to place survey-specific labels.

5.2.1 Annotations

Annotations are permanent text for survey data (imported from text files), and civil geometry (alignments and profiles). The user has the option to annotate **one element** at a time or the **entire model** (Figure 95). Annotating a large model may take several minutes depending on how much geometry is in the file.

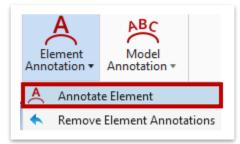
FIGURE 95. ANNOTATION TOOLS





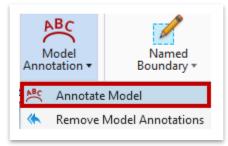


 <u>Annotate Element</u>: Enables the single annotation of elements, by way of individual selection or selection sets (e.g. all gas lines) (Figure 96).
 FIGURE 96. ANNOTATE ELEMENT TOOL



• <u>Annotate Model</u>: Enables the annotation of all elements within the model(s) at one time <u>after selecting the desired annotation group</u> (Figure 97). **Note:** Once the tool is initiated, there is no option to select an annotation group. Everything in the model gets annotated as opposed to just the labels that are tied to the selected annotation group. A defect has been logged with Bentley and should be addressed in a future software release.

FIGURE 97. ANNOTATE MODEL TOOL





Automated labels have been created for all **linear** features collected by survey and are detailed in Table 3.

TABLE 3. FIELD CODES

Field Codes	Text to be Displayed	Element Template Used to Plot Label
BRI	Description	\Survey\Annotation\Bridges\ Bridge Text
BEAM, CRKB, DOWN, STRCL, TB, UP	Description	\Survey\Annotation\Bridges\ Hydraulic Data Text





Field Codes	Text to be Displayed	Element Template Used to Plot Label
CV, PIPE (points)	Point Name Invert Elevation	\Survey\Annotation\Pipes and Culverts\ Pipes and Culverts Point Numbers \Survey\Annotation\Pipes and Culverts\ Pipes & Culverts Point
		Elevations
CV, PIPE (lines)	Description Length of Pipe	\Survey\Annotation\Pipes and Culverts\ Pipes and Culverts Text
ABUT, APRON, DAM, DIKE, DIT, GAGE, LEVEE, RRAP, SPILL	Description	\Survey\Annotation\Pipes and Culverts\ Pipes and Culverts Text
CRK, LAKE, POND, RIVER, RPDS, SINK, WET	Description	\Survey\Annotation\Natural Features\ Natural Features Text
BC, PAD	Description	\Survey\Annotation\Non-Trans Features\ Survey Non-Trans Text
AFLD, CEM, CG, FN, GATE, GRAVE, MISC, PIT, ROCKW, RWP, RWPWF, SEP, SIGNP, SWP, TANK, TOWER	Description	\Survey\Annotation\Non-Trans Features\ Survey Non-Trans Text
CITY, COUNTY, STATE	Description	\Survey\Annotation\ROW\ Political Boundary Text
ESMT, ESMTD	Description	\Survey\Annotation\ROW\ Easement Lines Text
PL, PLWF	Description	\Survey\Annotation\ROW\ Property Lines Text
ROW, ROWWF	Description	\Survey\Annotation\ROW\ ROW Lines Text
BE, BIKE, DR, FE, MED, PK, RWAY, RWT,	Description	\Survey\Annotation\Transportation Features\ Tran Features Text





Field Codes	Text to be Displayed	Element Template Used to Plot Label
RWTWF, SH, TRAIL, TUN		
CU, SWT	Description	\Survey\Annotation\Transportation Features\ Curb & SW Features Text
EP, RD	Description	\Survey\Annotation\Roads\ Roads Text
GRCB, GRL, GRM, GRR, IMP, JB	Description	\Survey\Annotation\Roadside Barriers\ Roadside Barriers Text
RR, RRSS	Description	\Survey\Annotation\Railroads\ Railroads Text
GL (all sizes)	Size	\Survey\Annotation\Underground Utilities\ Gas Text
SAS (all sizes)	Size	\Survey\Annotation\Underground Utilities\ Sanitary Sewer Text
WL (all sizes)	Size	\Survey\Annotation\Underground Utilities\ Water Text
UM	Description	\Survey\Annotation\Overhead Utilities\ Poles and Misc Text

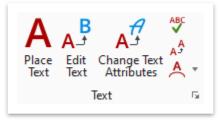




5.2.2 Text Tools

We will use some of the **Text** tools in the upcoming exercises, but they were covered in the Fundamentals (ORD) Manual (Figure 98).

FIGURE 98. TEXT TOOLS



5.2.3 Intelligent Labels



All individual <u>intelligent</u> labels placed after your elements/models are annotated will be via the **Place Label** tool (**Survey >> Drawing Production >> Notes**). Currently, you need to select the applicable **Element Template** first, which will apply the correct attributes. However, the intent is that the attributes are controlled by the cell label and dimension style selected as

opposed to the Element Template. **Note:** There is a defect logged with Bentley regarding this issue. In a future software release, you should not need to select any Element Template prior to placing the label.

Element Templates were covered in the Fundamentals (ORD) Manual. By default, the Type should be set to **Cell** in the **Place Label Settings** dialog box (Figure 99). The user will select the appropriate input for each field shown below.

lace Label Setting	ıs —		×
Type:	Cell	×	
Cell Name:	Select a cell	*	
Dimension Style:	Select a Dimension Style	*	D
Label Rotation:	Horizontal	×	
Start At:	Terminator	Ŷ	
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto	×	

FIGURE 99. PLACE LABEL SETTINGS DIALOG BOX





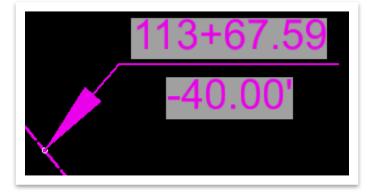
- Place Label w/ Leader: Used to place a label with a leader (e.g. station/offset).
 This is the most commonly used option.
- Place Label w/o Leader: Used to place a label without a leader (e.g. property line length, bearing).
- <u>Type</u>: Cell or Text Favorite. Automatic labels of both kinds have been setup as part of the TDOT workspace. Most **Text Favorites** are tied to annotation groups but will occasionally be selected here to place a label. The more common option will be a **Cell** label when utilizing the Place Label tool.
- <u>Cell Name / Favorite Name</u>: Field is dependent on the Type field. All <u>cell</u> names used here begin with an underscore (e.g. _SUR) and will be listed first in the drop-down menu. The software pulls from <u>all</u> cell libraries within the workspace so please be patient after opening the drop-down menu while the cells load.
- <u>Dimension Style</u>: The styles have been setup per TDOT standards (dimensions, text and leader properties, etc). The naming convention starts with the discipline abbreviation to align with the TDOT levels.
- <u>Label Rotation</u>: Sets the rotation of the label relative to the leader line (Horizontal, Vertical, Inline). **Note:** An enhancement has been logged with Bentley to add an **Along Element** option.
- <u>Start At</u>: Sets whether the label should start from the terminator or the cell. It is recommended setting this option to **Terminator**.
- <u>Horizontal Attachment</u>: Sets the leader attachment side (Auto, Left, Right). It is recommended setting this option to **Auto** so that your leader attachment side will be correct based on the angle of your label.
- <u>Annotation Scale</u>: Turns on the Annotation Scale. By default, this is taken from the model's annotation scale setting. It is recommended to always keep this enabled so that the labels will scale accordingly.
- Place Label w/ Regular Association: If this option is enabled and the Place Label
 w/ Relative Association is turned off, the label is placed with regular association. If you move the element, the label remains at the same place with only the leader line moving in conjunction with the element.
- <u>Place Label w/ Relative Association</u>: This option is enabled only when Place Label w/ Regular Association is enabled. If you move the element, the label will also move with it meaning that the label will stay at the same location relative to the original snap point.





Visually, you can see the linked fields (grey boxes) when placing intelligent labels, such as an existing ROW station/offset label (Figure 100). This **text user preference** can be controlled here: **File >> Settings >> User >> Preferences >> Text**. If you uncheck **Hide Field Background**, the grey boxes will appear (Figure 101). **Note:** There is an erroneous circle that appears at the arrowhead when placing certain cell labels. This is a known annotation defect and has been logged with Bentley. <u>Do not delete the circle or else the linked fields will disappear</u>.

FIGURE 100. LINKED ANNOTATION FIELDS





🜍 Preferences [OpenRoad	sDesigner_Imperial] ×
Category Database Descartes	Name for Preferences: Default Preferences
Help Settings Input Language Look and Feel	<u>Fit Text</u> Justify Enter Data Fields Like IGDS <u>Hide Field Background</u> Apply Field Background from Text Style
Mouse Wheel Operation Position Mapping Raster Manager Reference Render Ribbon Spelling Tags	ED Character: Degree Display Char: 176 Text Editor Font Size: 14 Constraint Font Size: 12
Text	Focus Item Description:
Update Settings View Options View Options - Civil	Hides the decorative fill normally drawn behind fields within text elements.
	Defaults <u>O</u> K Cancel





If you associate the label with an element (e.g. centerline), the label will automatically update if the element moves regardless of whether the label is live in the file or referenced. If referenced, however, the label will not visually update until you re-open the reference file that it is in. If the associated element and label are both live in the file, then the label should update instantenously. <u>The key for automatic updates is that the arrowhead snap point must be snapped to an element (e.g. line) as opposed to a point in space</u>. Also, if there is no association with an element when initially placing the label, it will not update. Even after labels are placed, the user can always move the arrowhead to a new location, if necessary, and the label should then update accordingly.



To move the arrowhead to a new location, you must first select it so that the blue square appears on the tip of the arrowhead (Figure 102). Normally, you would need to initiate the **Element Selection** tool and draw a square around the arrowhead for it to appear. However, since the erroneous circle exists, you can simply left click it. Then, you would left click the blue square and move the arrowhead to the new location. Of course, you could always delete the label and place it again.

FIGURE 102. ARROWHEAD MOVEMENT



Plan labeling that is not included in the annotation groups will be placed in this manner in the survey **<u>design</u>** model. This method will also be used for profile labeling in the profile **<u>drawing</u>** model after the named boundary has been created.

5.2.4 Named Boundaries

The **Named Boundary** tool is used to automatically create **plan**, **profile** and **cross-section** sheet models along an alignment (Figure 103). The plan sheet creation was covered in the Fundamentals (ORD) Manual. The profile sheet creation will be discussed in this chapter and is necessary for survey because <u>permanent</u> profile annotation cannot be added until a profile named boundary has been created. The same goes for cross sections as well.



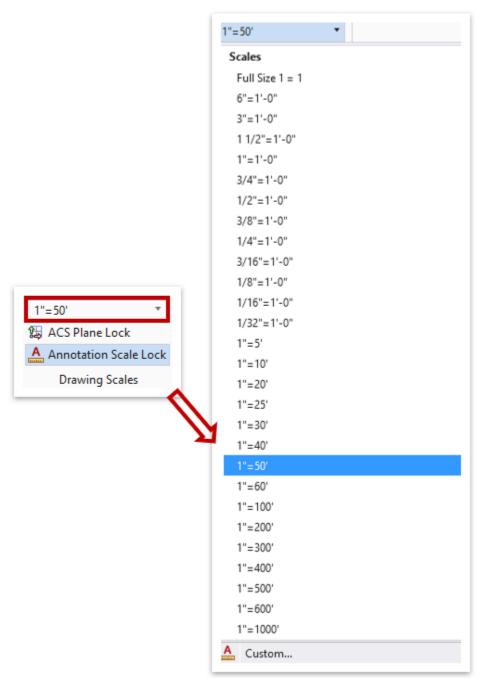




5.2.5 Drawing Scales

The **Drawing Scale** enables the user to adjust the size of the geometry in the drawing by simply selecting the desired scale (Figure 104). Although most elements will scale accordingly, some have been marked as **non-annotatable** (e.g. pavement markings, sign posts, etc) meaning they are true size and will not scale. Because civil geometry is dynamic, the applied scale can occur at any time without having to delete or replace geometry. **The delivered files should be set to the applicable project scale**.

FIGURE 104. DRAWING SCALES







5.2.6 Exercise: Plan Annotation and Drawing Scales

In this exercise, we will add survey centerline and feature <u>plan</u> annotation and utilize the Place Label tool to add additional labels (e.g. existing ROW sta/off). In the current software version, there are multiple known annotation limitations that will be referenced in the upcoming exercises. Bentley has indicated they should be addressed in the next release. We will continue to utilize the same **Alignment – Best Fit.dgn** file.



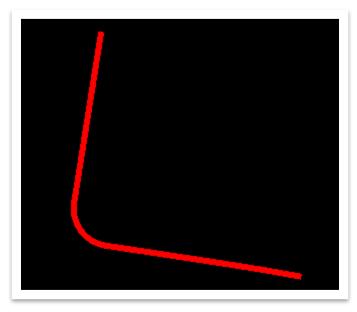
Take Note!

Remember, elements placed with regular ORD tools (e.g. Place Line) will not be annotated using these tools. Any geometry placed with regular ORD tools instead of Civil Geometry (covered in Chapter 4) will need a Feature Definition assigned to benefit from automatic annotation.

1. Switch back to the **Survey** workflow in the upper left corner and then make sure the **Default** view is open in the lower left corner of the drawing window.

🔁 Default	-

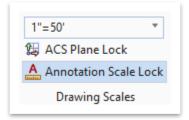
2. Go ahead and close **View 2** (profile) for now if not already closed and turn off all reference files.



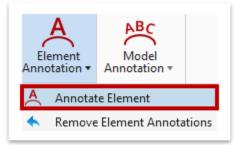




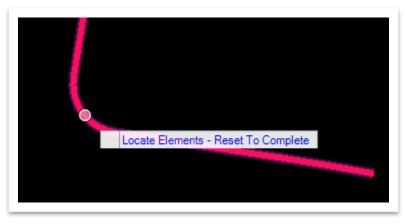
 We will now apply annotation to the preliminary Kirby Rd centerline. Make sure the Drawing Scale is set at 1" = 50' by going to Survey >> Drawing Production >> Drawing Scales. Note: This drawing scale should match the project scale.



4. Open the Annotate Element tool (Survey >> Drawing Production >> Annotations >> Element Annotation).



5. Notice the cursor prompt: Locate Elements - Reset to Complete. Select the preliminary Kirby Rd centerline and then right click to reset.







You should now see the centerline annotation (stationing, curve data, tick marks, etc). Note: If you don't see any annotation, you'll need to turn on the SUR - CL - Preliminary Curve Text and SUR - CL - Preliminary Text levels.





Remember, if you want to visually see what annotation fields are automatically linked (grey boxes), uncheck the **Hide Field Background** user preference (**File >> Settings >> User >> Preferences >> Text**).





7. Next, lets open the Survey Model – Edited.dgn file once again and turn on all levels in the active file. We will annotate the survey features that were brought in earlier from the field book. Steps 8-9 show the Element Annotation method, which would be used if you only wanted to annotate certain features. Currently, however, this method cannot be used for this purpose due to a defect with the tool that Bentley has acknowledged should be fixed in the next software version. If you do not want to see the Element Annotation steps, skip ahead to Step 10 where we will utilize the Model Annotation method instead. Note: You can ignore any erroneous survey linework for this exercise.



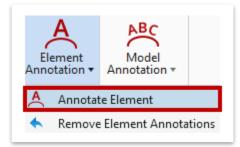




8. Utilizing the Element Selection tool, select the specific Element Templates (ET) that you want to annotate. These correlate to the TDOT survey feature codes. Within the Element Selection window, click the arrow to expand the options and then click the ET tab (highlighted). For this example, the highlighted ET's were selected. Note: You do not need to hold down CTRL to select all ET's. Simply left click each individually.

Element Selection	—		×
♦ 52 22 () /	- 0		
¥ + - Z ○			
8	Ξ		
78 U	-		٢
FL 17 11		~	
Element Template			\sim
6SAS		•	Î
		•	
6SAS		•	
6SAS BC		• • • •	
6SAS BC EW		•	
6SAS BC EW GL		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
6SAS BC EW GL PAD		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
6SAS BC EW GL PAD PIPE		• • • • • •	
6SAS BC EW GL PAD PIPE WL		• • • • • • •	
6SAS BC EW GL PAD PIPE WL XCK		• • • • • • • • • • • •	

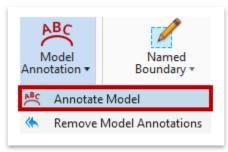
9. Next, you would open the Annotate Element tool (Survey >> Drawing Production >> Annotations). Notice the cursor prompt: Data Point to annotate selected elements. Data-point ONCE to accept the annotation of the selected elements and then wait a few seconds for the software to process. The annotation would then be applied to only those elements tied to the selected ET's.



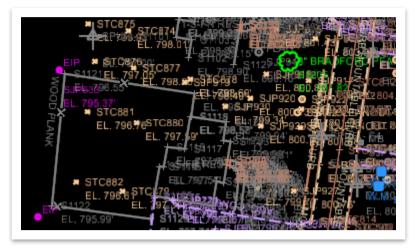




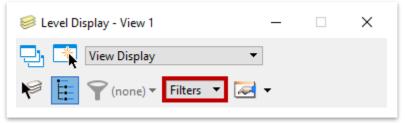
10. As previously mentioned, we will utilize the **Model Annotation** method for this exercise, which will label the field book data automatically based on field codes. Open the **Annotate Model** tool (**Survey >> Drawing Production >> Annotations**).



11. Notice the cursor prompt: **Accept Design Model**. Left click to accept and then <u>give</u> <u>the software a minute to process</u> before the annotation is visualized. The screenshot below is just a portion of the overall survey. **Note:** Normally, you would have the option to select a specific annotation group to apply but there is a defect logged with the **Model Annotation** tool as well that should be fixed in the next software version.



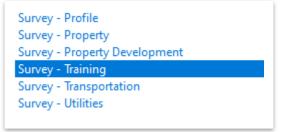
12. For simplicity, a level filter has been setup for training purposes only called Survey
Training. Open the Level Display and then switch the option to Filters (highlighted).



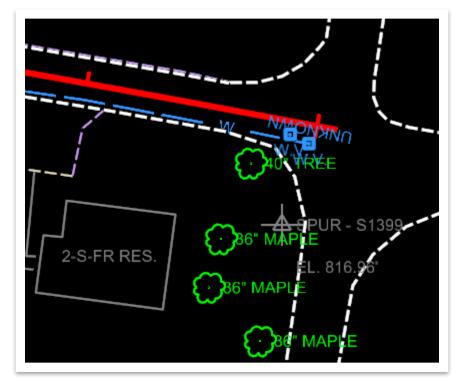




13. Scroll down and select the Survey - Training level filter.



14. Zoom in to the far eastern portion of the survey and notice the annotation below. Remember, we changed these tree feature codes earlier in the manual, but it was in the original survey file. For the purpose of the annotation procedure shown in this exercise, you can ignore that. **Note:** Feel free to check out the other ORD level filters that have been setup for survey.







15. Now, let's now look at the gas and water lines in the middle of the survey crossing the road. You will notice that the labels say UNKNOWN. This is because the size was not provided in the survey text files. Only the generic GL and WL feature codes were used for this project, as opposed to 2GL or 2WL for example. It is important to keep in mind that the annotation is only as good as the survey data. The utility annotation (plan view) has been setup to label the size every 500', including the beginning and ending points of a given line or complex element. Annotation cleanup is expected in ORD, but for this exercise, we will leave all labels as-is.



16. Next, let's look at the utility annotation. Zoom in to the eastern-most north/south SA line and notice there is a 6" label at each end. This is because the field code used in the text file was 6SAS. Remember, in ORD, the utility size will not be seen within the linestyle but rather added as annotation. Note: You can also see the size of any utility by selecting it and viewing the Properties.









As a reminder, if you wanted to change the **Feature Code** after the fact, you could make the change in the text file and re-import <u>or</u> you could highlight the Feature Code in the field book and make the change in the **Details** tool. The annotation would then **automatically** update.

To move text around to avoid overlaps, you can either left click (and hold) on the text and move your mouse to the new location <u>or</u> open the **Move** tool (**Survey >> Drawing >> Manipulate**). The labels may also be rotated or mirrored using the standard ORD **Drawing** tools. These labels should not be scaled as their sizes are controlled by the **Annotation Scale**.

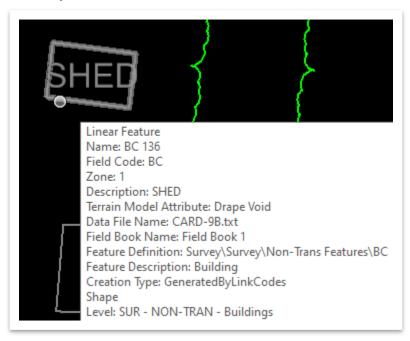
17. Let's assume that after annotating, we realized that there was an error in the text file resulting in a misspelling. For this exercise, we will assume that the **SHED** highlighted below was supposed to say **SHED2**. Zoom in so we can edit the label.



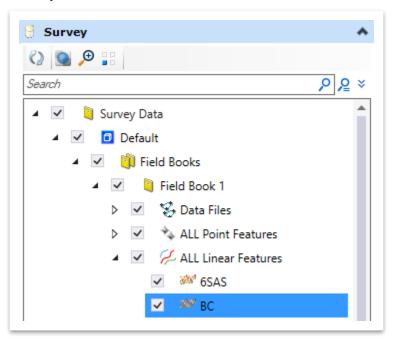




18. Select the outer boundary of the shed and notice that the Field Code is **BC**. You will also notice that the Name is **BC 136**. **Note:** For the purpose of this exercise, it is OK if your number varies.



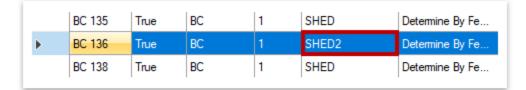
19. Knowing the Field Code, highlight the **BC** Linear Feature in the field book within the **Explorer**.







20. Open the **Details** tool (**Survey** >> **Field Book** >> **Primary**). Scroll down and select **BC 136** (or the one that matches the shed in your file). Left click in the **Description** column and add a "**2**" to the description, as shown below. Notice that the label automatically updates in plan view. Close the **Survey Details** window once done.





21. Just to the left of the shed is a **1-S-BR RES.** structure. Let's assume that you wanted to split the label into 2 lines so that it would fit better within the boundary.



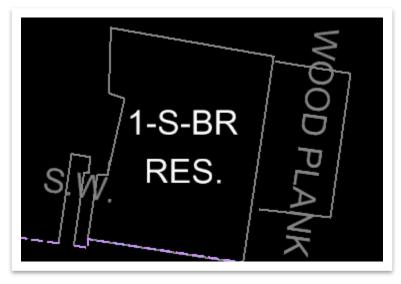




22. Go ahead and switch to the **Drawing** workflow and open the **Drop** tool (**Drawing** >> **Home** >> **Groups**). Note: The desire is to be able to make this type of edit either within the **Details** tool or within the **Text Editor** without having to drop the text first. An enhancement has been logged with Bentley.

	🏀 Drop Element	- 🗆	×
Create Region			
Groups 🕞	Dimensions:	To Geometry	•
	✓ Shared Cells:	To Geometry	•
	Solids:	To Surfaces	•
	Use Fence:	Inside	-

23. Left click on the text to apply the **Drop** and the open the **Element Section** tool. Notice that the text turns white once dropped. Double click on the text to open the **Text Editor** and then make the edit. Left click anywhere outside the editor and notice the update. The label loses its applicable color so that attribute update would need to occur. **Note:** You can **Drop** multiple labels at once, if necessary.









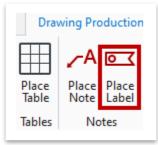
When annotation is placed utilizing the element or model annotation tools, **all labels are intelligent**. If you edit the spelling within the field book **Details**, the label is still intelligent. If you split the text into 2 lines, the label is no longer intelligent. If you need to **Remove Element** or **Model Annotation** at any time, only intelligent labels will be removed using those tools. Once you re-annotate, you would need to delete any new labels on top of those that you had previously dropped, as shown below. In general, annotation should be placed at the <u>end</u> just prior to delivering the files to design.



24. Next, we will add **station/offset** and then **bearing/length** <u>intelligent</u> labels to one of the existing ROW lines. Go ahead and switch back to the **Survey** workflow and turn on the **SUR - PROPERTY - ROW Lines** level. Select the **Property Station and Offset** element template (**Survey >> Annotation >> ROW**) which will place the labels with the correct symbology.



25. Now, open the Place Label tool (Survey >> Drawing Production >> Notes).



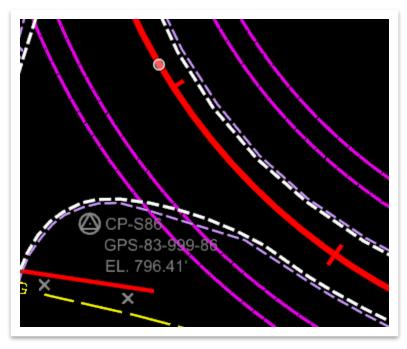




- 26. Within the **Place Label Settings** dialog box, select the following settings and leave the others as default. **Note:** When selecting the cell name, give the software a second to load since it is pulling from all cell libraries within the TDOT workspace. An enhancement has been logged with Bentley. You can also key-in the cell name, which often will be quicker than the drop-down arrow.
 - a. Select the leader icon at the top
 - b. Type: Cell
 - c. Cell Name: _SUR PROPERTY ROW Station and Offset Flag
 - d. Dimension Style: SUR PROPERTY ROW Lines Text

🔏 Place Label Setting	s —		×
Type:	Cell	~	
Cell Name:	_SUR - PROPERTY - RC	- WC	
Dimension Style:	SUR - PROPERTY -	ROW	وف
Label Rotation:	Horizontal	~	
Start At:	Terminator	~	
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto	~	

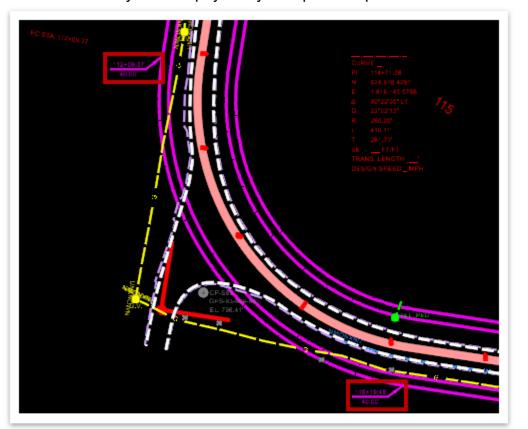
27. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner: **Identify Element or DataPoint**. Select the **Kirby Rd** centerline.

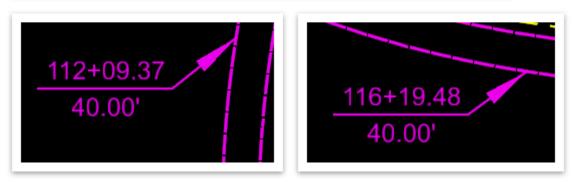






28. Notice the next prompt in the lower left corner: **Select Point Location**. Snap to both radius extents of the southernmost existing ROW line (one at a time), as shown below, to place the labels. **Note:** The labels **will not** populate with the correct data until you have physically accepted the placement of the label.





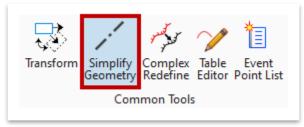




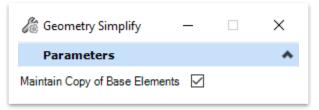
29. Next, we will place a **bearing/distance** label on the same existing ROW line. Select the **ROW Lines Text** element template (**Survey >> Annotation >> ROW**).



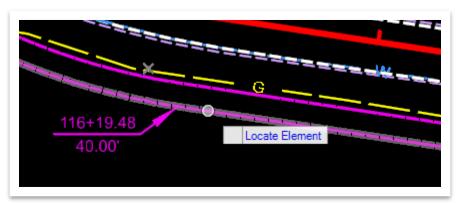
30. Since the existing ROW lines are one element (one chain), we need to simplify the geometry before we can label each individual line. Open the **Simplify Geometry** tool (**Survey >> Geometry >> Common Tools**).



31. Within the **Geometry Simplify** dialog box, toggle on the **Maintain Copy of Base Elements** option.



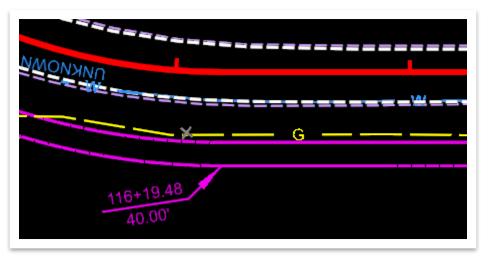
32. Notice the cursor prompt: **Locate Element**. Select the southernmost existing ROW line.







33. Before we place the label, let's rotate the view so that the bearing/distance label will be along the existing ROW line. Open the Rotate View tool, set the Method to 3 Points and rotate as shown below. You could also utilize the Dynamic Plan View tool (Survey >> Home >> Model Analysis and Reporting) and select the existing ROW line. Note: An enhancement has been logged with Bentley to add an Along Element option in the Place Label tool in a future software release so that you wouldn't have to rotate the view.

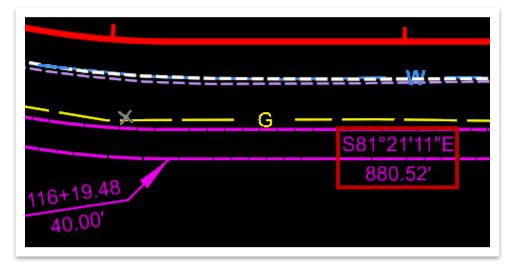


- 34. Now open the **Place Label** tool once again (**Survey** >> **Drawing Production** >> **Notes**). This time we will utilize the **Place a label without a leader** option (highlighted in red). Select the following settings and leave the others as default. to complete the fields.
 - a. Select the non-leader icon at the top
 - b. Type: Cell
 - c. Cell Name: _SUR PROPERTY ROW Bearing and Distance
 - d. Dimension Style: SUR PROPERTY ROW Lines Text

🔏 Place Label Setting	ıs —		×
Туре:	Cell	~	
Cell Name:	_SUR - PROPERTY -	ROW -	
Dimension Style:	SUR - PROPERTY	′ - ROW	
Label Rotation:	Horizontal	~	
Start At:	Terminator	Ŷ	
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto	~	
	A C		



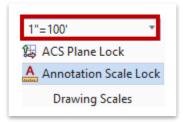
35. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner: **Identify Element or DataPoint**. Select the existing ROW line segment and left click anywhere along the line to accept placement. **Note:** To rotate the view back to due North, open the **Rotate View** tool once again and set the **Method** to **Top** since this file utilized a **3D** seed.





This process to place existing ROW line labels would also be used to label **easements**, **property lines/parcels**, **political boundaries**, etc. The key is selecting the applicable element template, cell label and dimension style.

36. Lastly, go ahead and change the Drawing Scale from 1"=50' to 1"=100' (Survey >> Drawing Production >> Drawing Scales) and notice how the annotation adjusts automatically for all survey features. Change it back to 1"=50' once you are done reviewing. Note: Give the software a second to process the scaling updates.



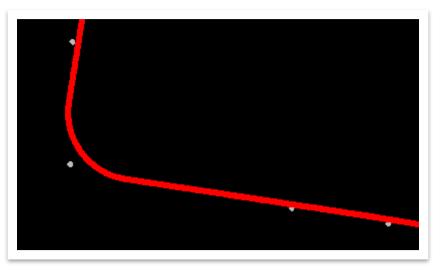




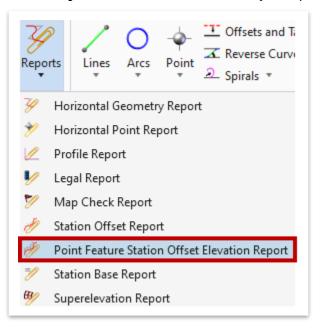
5.2.7 Exercise: Control Point Table

In this exercise, we will create a TDOT control point table and then place it in the survey file. We will continue to utilize the same **Survey Model – Edited.dgn** file.

 For simplicity, turn off all levels in the active file other than SUR - CTRL - Points. Within the Alignment – Best Fit.dgn reference file, turn off all levels other than SUR - CL - Preliminary. Then select all four grey control points.



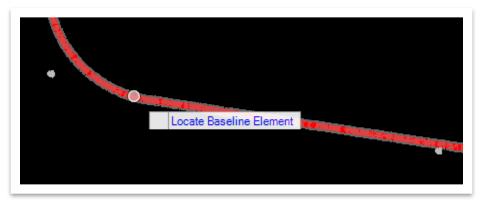
2. Now, open the **Point Feature Station Offset Elevation Report (Survey >>** Geometry >> General Tools >> Reports).







3. Notice the cursor prompt: Locate Baseline Element. Select the Kirby Rd centerline.



 Left click to accept the selected elements and the Station Offset Elevation Feature Report should automatically open. Remember, you can go to Tools >> Format Options within the Bentley Civil Report Browser to edit any formats or decimal places, if necessary.

		Statio	n Offset Elev	ation Fea	ature Repor	t XXX
			Report Created: Time: 1	Friday, April 9 10:49:25 AM	, 2021	
	Project:	Default				
Desc	ription:					
$\langle X \rangle$	Baseline (Active) gnment:	Kirby Rd				
File	e Name:					/EY_Training\dgn\Sur
		Woder - Luit				
×,	Last Revised:	4/9/2021 10:	$ \land \land \land \land$			
$\sim 2^{\circ}$	Last Revised: Input Grid Factor:		$ \land \land \land \land$	Note: All units	in this report are in fee	t unless specified otherw
X	Input Grid Factor:		$ \land \land \land \land$	Note: All units Offset	in this report are in fee Elevation	t unless specified otherw
Point	Input Grid Factor:	4/9/2021 10: iption	48:36	XX		
Point S85	Input Grid Factor:	4/9/2021 10: iption 9-85	48:36 <u>Station</u>	Offset	Elevation	Feature
$\sim 2^{\circ}$	Descr 83-99	4/9/2021 10: iption 9-85 9-86	48:36 	Offset 24.94	Elevation 801.2740	Feature XCP





5. A custom TDOT report has been created for control points. Within the **Bentley Civil Report Browser**, select the **TDOT Control Points.xsl** option under the **StationOffset** category on the left-hand side.

 StationOffset
TDOT Control Points.xsl
CivilToolsStationOffset.xsl
CivilToolsStationOffsetExtended.xsl
ProfileExistingProposedElevation.xsl
ProfileExistingProposedElevationExtended.xsl
ProfileStationElevation.xsl
ProfileStationElevationASCII.xsl
ProfileStationOffsetElevationASCII.xsl
StationBaseCompare.xsl
StationBaseCoordinates.xsl
StationBaseCrossSlope.xsl
StationBaseSimpliedCrossSlope.xsl
StationBaseSingle.xsl
StationBaseVerticalClearance.xsl
StationBaseWGrades.xsl
StationOffset.xsl
StationOffsetAlongSingleAlignment.xsl
StationOffsetAlongSingleAlignmentExistGround.x:
StationOffsetAlongSingleAlignmentWRadius.xsl
StationOffsetElevationFeature.xsl
StationOffsetNorthingEasting.xsl
StationOffsetNorthingEastingElevationFeature.xsl
StationOffsetWithVersine.xsl
StationOffsetWSmoothingRadius.xsl
TransverseFeature.xsl
VerticalFace.xsl

6. You should now see the **control point table** generated on your screen, as shown below.

CONTROL POINTS							
Point	Northing	Easting	Elevation	Feature	GPS Point	Station	Offset
S85	825368.9221	1816198.2196	801.2740	XCP	GPS83-999-85	9+66.65	24.94
S86	824896.3469	1816189.5290	796.4070	XCP	GPS83-999-86	14+11.66	63.06
S87	824726.1694	1817048.0004	807.9080	XCP	GPS83-999-87	22+61.07	14.85
S88	824665.7880	1817421.0331	821.3680	XCP	GPS83-999-88	26+39.13	17.76





 Next, let's export the table as an Excel file, which can then be added into the survey file prior to delivering to Design. Within the Bentley Civil Report Browser, go to File >> Save As and browse to your WorkSet directory.

1	Bentley Civil Report Brows	er
File	Tools	
	Open	
	Save As	
	Append	
	Page Setup	
	Print	
	Print Preview	
	Exit	

8. Name the file **TDOT – Control Points** and change the **File Type** to **Excel File** (*.xlsx). Go ahead and close the **Bentley Civil Report Browser**.

File name:	TDOT - Control Points	\sim
Save as type:	Excel File (*.xlsx)	\sim
 Hide Folders 	Save Cancel]

9. Within **File Explorer**, open the Excel file and make any additional customizations as necessary.

	CONTROL POINTS						
Point	Northing	Easting	Elevation	Feature	GPS Point	Station	Offset
					GPS83-		
S85	825368.9221	1816198.2196	801.2740	XCP	999-85	9+66.65	24.94
					GPS83-		
S86	824896.3469	1816189.5290	796.4070	XCP	999-86	14+11.66	63.06
					GPS83-		
S87	824726.1694	1817048.0004	807.9080	XCP	999-87	22+61.07	14.85
					GPS83-		
S88	824665.7880	1817421.0331	821.3680	XCP	999-88	26+39.13	17.76





10. Once the excel file has been edited, copy the data. Open the **Paste Special** tool (Survey >> Drawing >> Selection) and select the **Embedded Microsoft Excel** Worksheet option.

Data Type		
Embedded	I Microsoft Excel Work	sheet
Picture of	Microsoft Excel Works	heet
Linked Mie	crosoft Excel Workshee	:t
Text To De	sign File	
Rich Text t	o Design File	
Linked Tex	t To Design File	
Device Ind	ependent Bitmap to D	esign File
	Paste	Cancel

11. Within the **Paste OLE Object** dialog box, sect the **Method** to **By Size**. Click the grey arrow to expand the box and set the **Scale** to **600** (12' x 50 scale).

haste OLE	Object	_		\times
Object: Micros Paste as:			eet ▼	
Method:	By Size		-	
Scale: Size: (8429.400	Rota 600.0000	parent l te With	Backgrou	nd

12. Left click to place the table anywhere within the **Survey Model – Edited.dgn** file.

		(CONTROL	POINTS			
Point	Northing	Easting	Elevation	Feature	GP \$ Point	Station	Offset
S85	825368.9221	1816198.2196	801.2740	XCP	GPS83-999-85	9+66.65	24.94
S86	824896.3469	1816189.5290	796.4070	XCP	GPS83-999-86	14+11.66	63.06
S87	824726.1694	1817048.0004	807.9080	XCP	GPS83-999-87	22+61.07	14.85
S88	824665.7880	1817421.0331	821.3680	XCP	GPS83-999-88	26+39.13	17.76

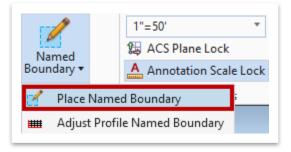




5.2.8 Exercise: Profile Named Boundary and Annotation

In this exercise, we will create a profile named boundary so that **existing annotation** can be applied to the profile drawing model. We will open back up the **Alignment – Best Fit.dgn** file.

- Go ahead and open the Kirby Rd profile (View 2). We will now place one named boundary for the entire profile, so all annotation can be done in one model. <u>Remember, you must create a profile named boundary in order to place any profile</u> <u>annotation. You cannot add permanent annotation in the dynamic profile window</u>.
- 2. Next, open the Place Named Boundary tool (Survey >> Drawing Production >> Named Boundaries >> Named Boundary).



3. Make sure that the **Civil Profile** option is toggled on. Select **Profile 50H 5V Scale** for the Drawing Seed. Most of the fields should automatically populate based on the selected seed.

Control Place Named Boundary Civil Profile —	\times
A 🏹 🔜 🕅 🎵 🎵	
Drawing Seed: Profile 50H 5V Scale 🗸	
Detail Scale: 1"=50' 🗸	

4. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner of the drawing window: **Identify Profile View**. Left click anywhere within **View 2**.





5. Use the grey arrows to lock the **Start** and **Stop Location** to the profile extents so that the entire profile is accounted for. **Note:** You cannot key-in stations until the profile view has been selected in Step 4.

✓ Stop Location: 130+08.63	Start Location:	100+11.74	◀
	Stop Location:	130+08.63	▶

6. Key-in **Kirby Rd Existing Profiles** for both the **Named Boundary** name and the **Group** name.

Name:	Kirby Rd Existing Profiles
Description:	
Method:	Station Limits 🔹
Group:	(New) 🗸
Name:	Kirby Rd Existing Profiles

7. To create one overall profile named boundary, the Length field will need to be adjusted based on each project length. By default, the value in the seed is set to 1200' which is setup for Design to plot 50-scale profile sheets. Since Survey does not need to create individual profile sheets, go ahead and edit this value to 3050' for this exercise. This will allow the creation of <u>one</u> named boundary and ultimately one drawing model rather than multiple drawing models.

Length:	3050.000000	oo Itotoc





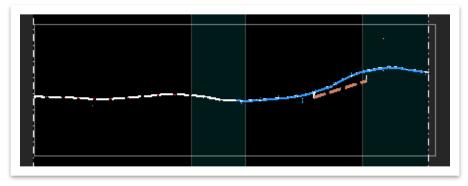
8. Leave the other default values as-is and make sure that the **Create Drawing** option is toggled on at the bottom.

🄏 Place Named Boundary	/ Civil Profile —	×
	R 🖓 🔳 🕅 🏒 😭 🎞	
Drawing Seed:	Profile 50H 5V Scale 👻	
Detail Scale:	1"=50' 👻	
Name:	Kirby Rd Existing Profiles	
Description:		
Method:	Station Limits 👻	
Group:	(New) 👻	
Name:	Kirby Rd Existing Profiles	
Description:		
Start Location:	100+11.74	◀
Stop Location:	130+08.63	
Length:	3050.000000	oo
Vertical Exaggeration:	10.000000	
Available Profile Height:	100.000000	00 Inter
Top Clearance:	0.500000	
Bottom Clearance:	0.500000	
Elevation Datum Spacing:	5.000000	
Station Datum Spacing:	100.000000	
Profile Shifts:	Datum Stations 👻	
	Use Terrains	
	Use Active Vertical	
	Whole Conduits Only	
	Create Drawing	
	Show Dialog	





9. Left click anywhere within View 2 **three** times. Zoom out and you should see **one** profile named boundary drawn into the file, represented by a white border.



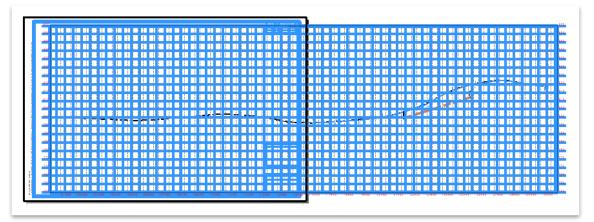
10. The **Create Drawing** window will appear automatically after creating the named boundary, since we toggled it on in Step 8. Click **OK** to accept all default settings. **Note:** If the **Name** field shows the name twice, simply click in the field and remove.

3 o	Create Drawing			×
	Mod Nam One Sheet Per Dg	e: Kirby Rd Existing Profiles	•	•
	Drawing Seed:	Profile 50H 5V Scale		
	View Type:	Civil Profile		
	Discipline:	Civil		
	Purpose:	Elevation View		
	Seed Model:	Drawing Model TDOT Profile 50H 5V.dgnlib, Profile 50H 5		
	Filename:	(Active File)		4
	<u>A</u>	1"=50' 👻		
	Annotation Group:	Profile Grid 5V		
		Sheet Model		
	Seed Model:	TDOT Profile 50H 5V.dgnlib, Profile 50H 5		
	Filename:	(Active File)		
	Sheets:	(New) 🔻		
	<u>A</u>	Full Size 1 = 1		
	Drawing Boundary:	Profile 50H 5V Scale 🔹		
	Detail Scale :	1"=50' (By Named Boundary) 👻		
		Add To Sheet Index Make Sheet Coincident Open Model OK Ca	ancel	





11. As a reminder, the named boundary process creates a sheet and a drawing model for every named boundary. By default, the software should open to the <u>one</u> **sheet** model in **View 1**. **Note:** The sheet model is only needed when printing sheets, so it can be deleted for Survey purposes. We will delete the sheet model later in the exercise. For now, we will focus on annotation which is done in the **drawing** model.



12. Next, open the **Models** window (Survey >> Home >> Primary).



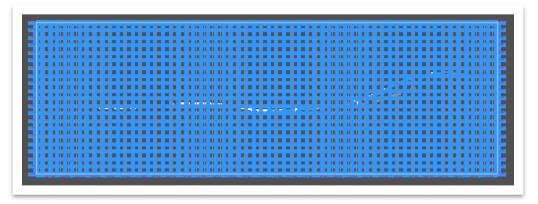
13. You should see **Default**, **Default 3-D**, **Kirby Rd Existing Profiles** and **Kirby Rd Existing Profiles** [Sheet]. Go ahead and double click on the Kirby Rd Existing **Profiles** <u>drawing</u> model to make it active.

🗇 Moo	dels				_		×
) II (🚰 🔲 🍸 🗙					
Туре	2D/3D	Name ^	Description	券	Design File		
0 1		Default	Master Model	\checkmark	C:\Alignmer	nt - Best	Fit.dgn
	Ĩ	Default-3D		\checkmark	C:\Alignmer	nt - Best	Fit.dgn
		Kirby Rd Existing Profiles			C:\Alignmer	nt - Best	Fit.dgn
Là		Kirby Rd Existing Profiles [Sheet]			C:\Alignmer	nt - Best	Fit.dgn

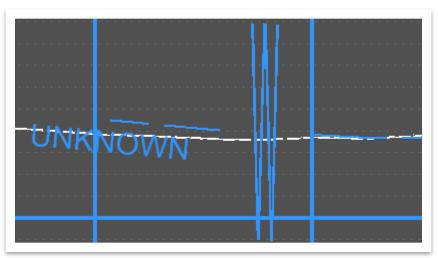




14. You should see the image below. All annotation will be added here for the existing profile features.



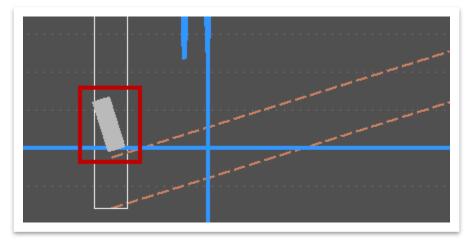
15. Zoom in to the beginning of the water line and notice that an UNKNOWN label was placed automatically when the profile drawing model was created. Remember, we selected the Unknown feature definition earlier when we projected this line since no pipe size was included in the survey. The automatic label is based off the selected feature definition when projecting the utility onto the centerline. Note: There is a defect logged with Bentley on projected profile label placement. The utility annotation (profile view) has also been setup to label the size every 500', including the beginning and ending points.



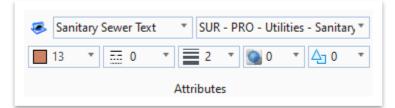




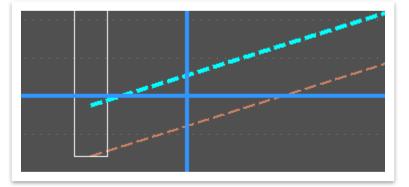
16. Ideally, the existing SA line would also be automatically annotated based on the utility pipe size and type, as well as the cross-drain with the pipe size and invert elevation. The automatic profile annotation for a modeled utility does not work in the current software version, so there is a defect logged with Bentley. Visually, you will notice the grey field background shown below at the beginning of the SA line, indicating a linked label that did not populate. We are working with Bentley on all annotation issues that stem from the software. Note: The hide field background toggle was turned off just for this screenshot.



17. In the interim, you can use the labeling tool to add labels for **modeled** utilities in profile view. First, select the **Sanitary Sewer Text** element template (**Survey >> Annotation >> Utilities >> Underground >> Profile**).



18. Next, using the Element Selection tool, select the top of the SA line.







- 19. Now, open the **Place Label** tool once again (**Survey >> Drawing Production >> Notes**). Within the **Place Label Settings** dialog box, select the following settings and leave the others as default.
 - a. Select the non-leader icon at the top
 - b. Type: Text Favorite
 - c. Cell Name: Survey Utility Size and Label (SA)
 - d. Dimension Style: SUR UTL Sanitary & FMS
 - e. Label Rotation: Inline

🔏 Place Label Setting	gs — □ ×	
Type:	Text Favorite v	
Favorite Name:	Survey Utility Size and Li	
Dimension Style:	👽 SUR - UTL - Sanitary & F 🏼 💩	
Label Rotation:	Inline v	
Start At:	Terminator v	
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto v	

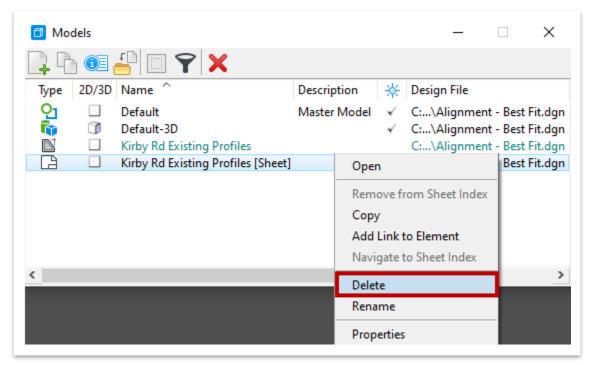
20. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner: **Select Point Location**. Snap anywhere along the top of the **SA** line and then rotate the label accordingly for placement, as shown below.







21. As mentioned earlier, the sheet model is primarily used for printing. Within the Models window, go ahead and delete the **sheet** model by right clicking on it and selecting **Delete**. Click **Yes** when the **Alert** appears asking if you are sure you want to delete the sheet model.





Surveyors will need to create a profile **drawing** model along each existing alignment in which utilities need to be shown. Designers will then take the survey profile(s) and utilize them when creating the proposed profile sheets.

Profile **drawing** models are shown by default with the grid and a dark gray background and serve as the location for annotation.

With the profile drawing model open, you can open a 2nd view and reference in the **survey model dgn** file, and then click **fit view** and zoom into the plan elements, if desired.





Chapter 6. Survey Drainage Elements

Within any TDOT survey, there are other drainage and hydraulics related elements (plan and profile) that need specific procedures applied in ORD prior to delivering the files to design. The overall survey alignment file will contain the centerline profile drawing model, but also additional profiles as described in this chapter. While most of the tools have been previously described in the manual, there will be additional tools used for some procedures and thus various workflows utilized.

6.1 Objectives

At the conclusion of this chapter, participants will be able to:

- 1. Create a bridge sketch via point cloud and survey text files.
- 2. Create an existing stream alignment.
- 3. Add an existing box culvert crossing to profile view.
- 4. Create a flood plain section via survey text files and office chain creation.
- 5. Create a stream profile.
- 6. Delineate a culvert drainage area and compare to StreamStats data.
- 7. Annotate each element listed above after creation.

6.2 Lecture: Bridge Sketches

Bridge sketches are typically created to show the profile of existing bridges and then utilized in drainage and hydraulic analysis. With the increase of Lidar data available in Tennessee, these sketches can be created from point clouds or from the traditional survey text files. Regardless of the method, bridge sketches will essentially be profile drawing models in ORD.

6.2.1 Exercise: Bridge Sketch – Point Cloud

In this exercise, we will create a bridge sketch via point cloud data and then create the overall profile drawing model prior to adding the applicable annotation.

1. Create a new file and name it **Survey Model – Bridge Sketch (PC)**. Select the **TDOTSeed3D.dgn** and click **Save**.

File name:	Survey Model - Bridge Sketch (PC)	Save
Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) <	Cancel
Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co	Browse





 Next, we need to import the bridge point cloud file. Open the Point Clouds tool (Survey >> Home >> Primary >> Attach Tools >> Point Clouds).



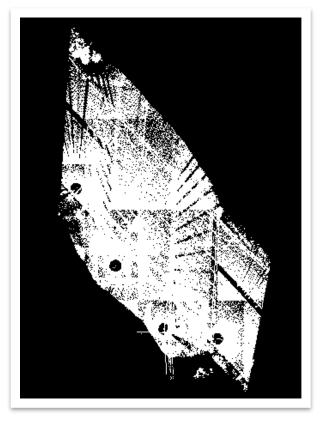
 Within the Point Clouds window, go to File >> Attach and select the Knox Co. SR33 Bridge.pod file within the SURVEY_Training workset dgn subfolder and click Open. Note: For future reference, point cloud Density can be controlled in this window, as highlighted below.

🧔 Poir	nt Clo	ouds (1	of 1 listed)			_			×	2
<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u>	dit	<u>V</u> iew	<u>S</u> ettings	<u>U</u> tilities						
Ē	Ξ	<u> ()</u>	🚱 💮 e	🎡 💿 🍕	}					
File Nar	ne ´	^		Description		۵	\$_	k	j,	
Knox Co	. SR3	3 Bridg	e.pod			100	\checkmark	\sim	\checkmark	
123	4	5 6 7	8 ~	° 🕨 🗓						

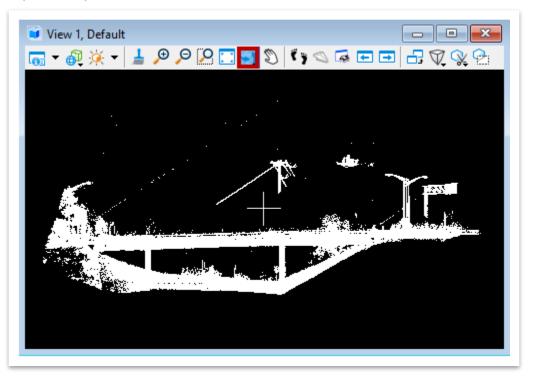




4. Click **Fit View** to visualize the point cloud.



5. Now, click **Rotate View** and set the **Method** to **Dynamic**. Rotate so that you can inspect the point cloud.







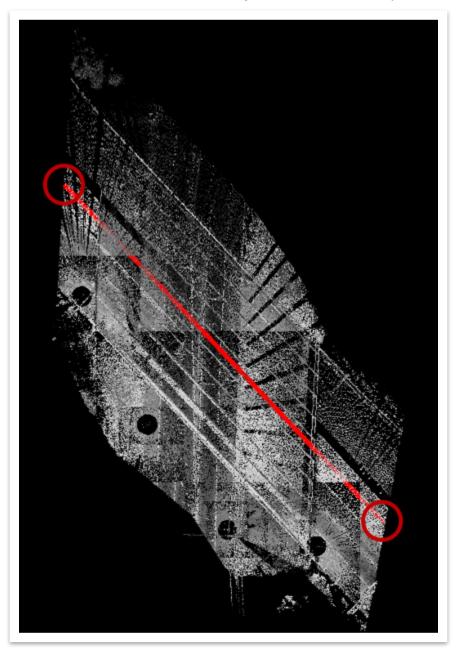
6. Next, we will utilize smartlines to outline some of the important features of the bridge, which will help us create a profile view later in the exercise. We need to first isolate one section of the bridge, so we don't have to deal with duplicate columns in the profile view. Go ahead and adjust the Point Cloud Style to Intensity so you can see the bridge beams better.

🧉 View 1 - Top, Default	
📑 🕶 👰 🤆 🕶 📕	🔎 🗔 🛐 🕲 👣 🗠 幕 (
View Number: 1 👻 🖳	
Presentation	== *
Display Style: 🖓 Wireframe	×
🛵 ACS Triad	🔆 Fast Cells
Background	🖹 Fill
Boundary Display	I Grid
📷 Camera	宿 Level Overrides
😴 Clip Back	Eine Styles
😪 Clip Front	Line Weights
😪 Clip Volume	P Markers 🔹
Constructions	Patterns
💢 Default Lighting	🖉 Tags
Dimensions	A Text
📼 🛛 Data Fields	1 ₊ Text Nodes
Displayset	Transparency
સ Height Field	
Global Brightness: 🔶 <	> Ø
🛃 View Setup	*
left for the second style left left left left left left left le	*
Style: fintensity	✓





7. Open the Place SmartLine tool (Survey >> Drawing >> Placement). Draw a line along the center of the bridge point cloud so that it defines a relatively straight section. Do not snap to any of the point cloud points, otherwise the profile will not work correctly. The line has been colored for the purpose of the screenshot, but it is not necessary to set any symbology. Note: Rotate your view accordingly. The view below was rotated via the Top method and has a point could Density of 50.







 Now, let's switch to the Reality Modeling workflow in the upper left corner so we can cut a section along the smartline that was just placed. Open the Section tool (Reality Modeling >> Home >> Primary >> Section Tools).



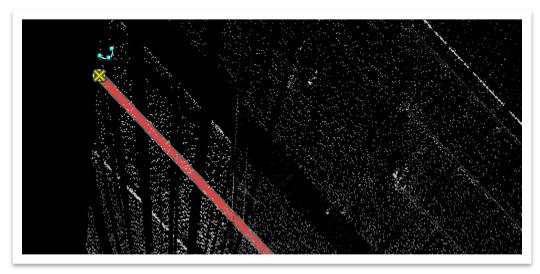
- 9. Within the Create Section Wizard dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Section Name: Section
 - b. Section Level: Default
 - c. Thickness: 2.50
 - d. Step Definition: Manual
 - e. Forward/Backward Step: 10.00
 - f. Left/Right Step: 10.00
 - g. Rotation Step: 10.000000

Create Section Wizard	_	×
	> // //	
	ç [©] 🕵 🙏 🙏	
Section Name:	Section	
Section Level:	Default	-
Thickness	2.50	2121212
Step Definition:	Manual	•
Step Demition.		
Forward/Backward Step:	10.00	THEFT
Left/Right Step:	10.00	211111
Rotation Step:	10.000000	





10. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner: **Enter first point on plane**. Snap to the left end of the smartline that you previously drew.



11. Notice the next prompt in the lower left corner: **Enter second point on plane**. Snap to the opposite end of the smartline which should automatically open the **Create Section Wizard**. Select **Target View 2** and click **Next**.

_		×
<i>N</i> .		
\sim		
,	Finis	h
	~	~





- 12. Then, select the following settings and click **Finish**.
 - a. Scale While Moving: Fit
 - b. Clip Volume: Section Extent
 - c. Clip Volume Settings: Forward and Backward

Create Section Wizard		_		\times
Cross Section View (22) - Field of Vie Each time the section is moved the cr adjusted automatically (Fit) or mainta position (Preserve Scale).	oss section zoom			er
Enabling the clip volume will automat Clip volume can fit totally within the S wider than the Section Extent (Scaled	ection Extent (Sec			
Depth Scale Factor affects the direction scale factor affects the XY of the view		tion view	v. The Xì	(
Scale While Moving:	Fit		\sim	
Clip Volume:	Section Extent		\sim	
Clip Volume Settings:	Forward and Back	ward	\sim	
Cancel < Back	Add Slave Vi	ew	Finis	h

13. **View 2** should open automatically, and you should see a **section** view of the bridge.



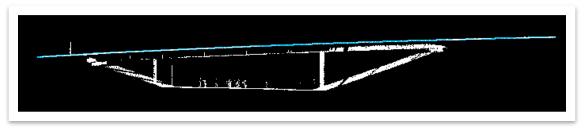




14. We will now begin drawing our lines for the profile in **View 2**. First, select the **Deck** - **Top** element template (**Survey >> Drainage >> Bridge >> Bridge Sketch**).



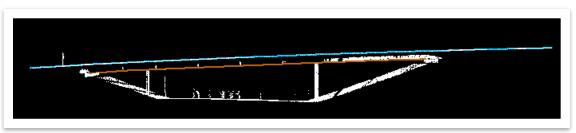
15. Then, switch back to the Survey workflow in the upper left corner and open the Place SmartLine tool once again (Survey >> Drawing >> Placement). Trace the top of the point cloud from one end to the other. Once you complete the smartline, you should see a light blue line along the top of the bridge. Note: The Deck Top - Line must be more than 2 vertices.



16. Next, we will repeat the same process for the bottom of the bridge. First, however, select the Girder - Bottom element template (Survey >> Drainage >> Bridge >> Bridge Sketch).



17. Once you complete the smartline, you should see an orange line along the bottom of the bridge.



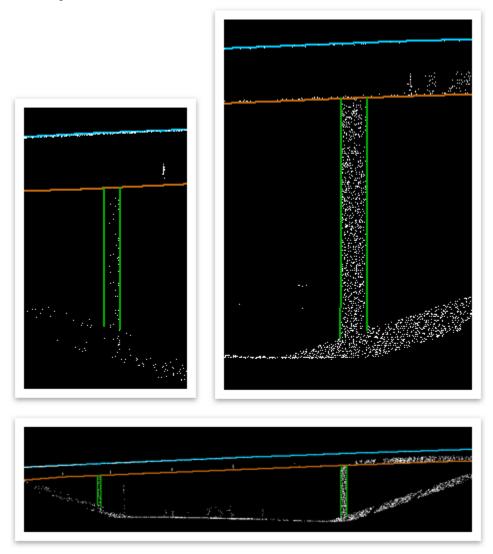




18. Now we will draw smartlines to represent the **column** extents. Select the **Pier/Bent** element template (**Survey >> Drainage >> Bridge >> Bridge Sketch**).



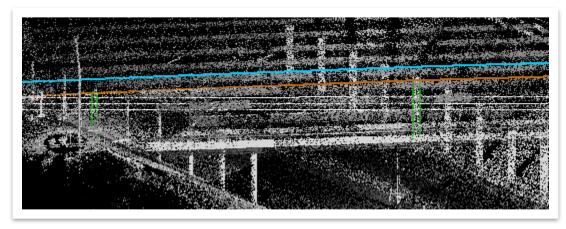
19. Draw a SmartLine for each side of the columns, totaling 4 smartlines. A close-up of the left and right columns is shown below, followed by an overall extent. <u>The column extent lines cannot be vertical or else the software will crash in an upcoming step</u>. They can be a singular line but must slightly taper. Note: You may want to turn on AccuDraw for easier control of the lines. Also, the point cloud Density was lowered to 10 for this screenshot.







20. Go ahead and close **View 2** and then rotate the view **dynamically** in **View 1** to verify line placement.



21. Once you have confirmed that the lines look correct, highlight the pod file within the **Point Clouds** window and click **Detach**, and then close the window and save the file. We are now finished with the extraction process.

🍈 Point Clouds (1 o	of 1 listed)	_		×
<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew	<u>S</u> ettings <u>U</u> tilities			
🗄 • 庄 🆓 🕻	💫 🐼 🐼 🚳			
File Name 🔷	Description	لچ 🙆	k	J
Knox Co. SR33 Bridge	.pod	10 🗸	\checkmark	\checkmark
1234567	8 🎿 📐 🕹			
1234567	8 🗾 📐 🕹			

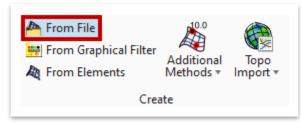
22. Now we need to convert the 3D elements into 2D elements. Let's create a new file and name it Alignment – Bridge Sketch (PC). Select the TDOTSeed2D.dgn and click Save. Note: The bridge sketch would likely be a profile model within the overall 2D survey alignment file but has been separated out for the purpose of training.

File name:	Alignment - Bridge Sketch (PC) 🗸 🗸	Save
Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) $\qquad \qquad \lor$	Cancel
Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co	Browse





23. Go ahead and switch to the **OpenRoads Modeling** workflow. First, we need to attach the surface. Open the **From File** tool (**OpenRoads Modeling >> Terrain >> Create**).



- 24. Select the **Knox Co. SR33 Bridge.tin** file within the **SURVEY_Training** workset dgn subfolder and click **Done**. Within the **Import Terrain Model(s)** dialog box, skip down to **File Options**.
- 25. Under File Options, select the following settings.
 - a. **Source File Units:** Leave as-is. This field will take care of itself and disappear once the geographic coordinate system is selected in the next step.
 - b. Feature Definition: Terrain\Survey Existing Ground
 - c. Import Options: Import Terrain Only

Options	
Filter	*
Source File Units	Unknown
Feature Definition	*
Feature Definition	Terrain\Survey Existing Ground 🗸
Triangulation Options	*
Import Options	Import Terrain Only

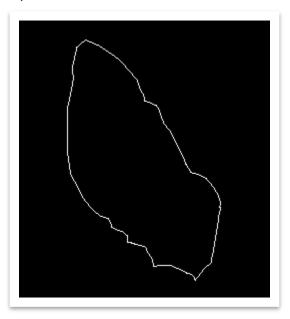




26. Under Geographical Coordinate Systems, click the ellipses next to the Source field. You should already have the correct coordinate system saved as a Favorite (TN83/2011F – NSRS11 (NAD83/ 2011) Tennessee State Plane Zone, US Foot) from earlier in the manual. If not, you can browse to it here: Library >> Projected (northing, easting, ...) >> North America >> United States of America >> Tennessee. Once selected, click OK.

Library	Search					
_	Favorites		Coordinate Sy	stem	*	^
	11(NAD83,	Name	TN83/201	1F		
		Description	NSRS11(N	AD83/20		
		Projection	Lambert C	onformal (
			EPSG Code	6576		
			Source	EPSG:657	6	
			Units	US Survey	Foot	
			First Standard Pa	36°25'00.0	0000"N	
<		>	Second Standard	35°15'00.0	0000"N	4

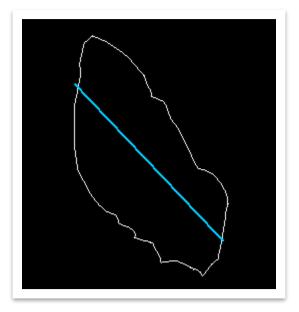
27. Next, click Import and then close the Import Terrain Model(s) dialog box once processed. Click Fit View, turn the triangles off and set the terrain to Active. Note: The white terrain boundary in this 2D file is adequate for this exercise, but if you wanted to view the entire terrain in a 3D model, you would create a 3D file and import the TIN in the same manner.



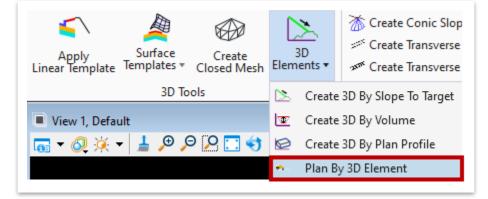




28.Go ahead and attach the previously created file (**Bridge Sketch – Point Cloud.dgn**) as a reference using the **Coincident World** attachment method and then click **Fit View**. Go ahead and turn off the **Default** level in the file you just attached. You should see the light blue line representing the top of the bridge deck.



29. Open the **Plan By 3D Element** tool (**OpenRoads Modeling >> Model Detailing >> 3D Tools >> 3D Elements**).



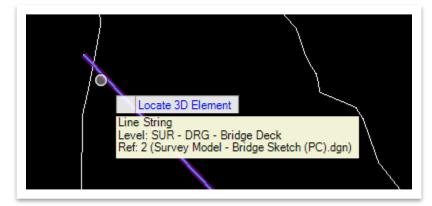




30. Within the Plan By 3D Element dialog box, select the Deck - Top feature definition (Linear >> Structures >> Bridge Sketch >> Existing). You can leave the default Name as-is for now.

🔏 Plan B	_		×
Feature			*
Feature Definition	Deck -	Тор	\sim
Name	EX Dec	k	

31. Notice the cursor prompt: **Locate 3D Element**. Left click on the **light blue** line representing the top of the bridge deck.



32. Next, we will apply the same process to the bottom of the bridge. Open back up the Plan By 3D Element tool, if not already opened, and select the Girder - Bottom feature definition (Linear >> Structures >> Bridge Sketch >> Existing).

_		×
		*
Girder ·	Bottom	\sim
EX Giro	der Bottom	1
		Girder - Bottom





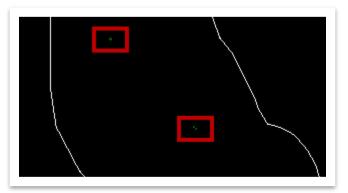
33. Once again, notice the cursor prompt: **Locate 3D Element**. Left click on the **orange** line representing the bottom of the bridge. **Note:** To identify it, right click on the line until you see the "orange" line highlighted because it is likely underneath the blue bridge deck line. Then, left click to Locate 3D Element. If that method is still problematic, turn off the **SUR - DRG - Bridge Deck** level temporarily.



34. Lastly, we will apply the same process to the four bridge column extents. Turn off the SUR - DRG - Bridge Deck and SUR - DRG - Bridges levels in the active file and all reference files for now. The element template was setup on a different level so that the column extents would be easier to see. Then, open back up the Plan By 3D Element tool, if not already opened, and select the Pier/Bent feature definition (Linear >> Structures >> Bridge Sketch >> Existing).

🔏 Plan B	- [×
Feature		*
Feature Definition	Pier/Bent	~
Name	EX Bent	

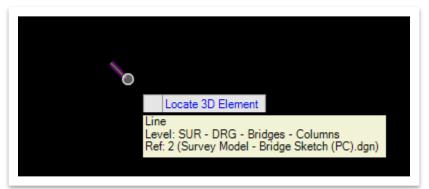
35. Zoom in until you see the two sets of two green column extents, highlighted below.



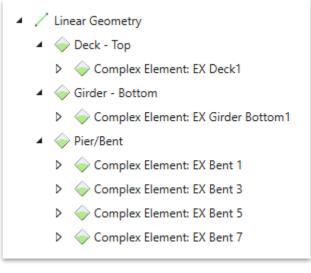




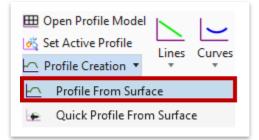
36. Once again, notice the cursor prompt: **Locate 3D Element**. Left click on each **green** column extent, one at a time.



37. It will seem like nothing happened. However, within the **Explorer**, if you open the **OpenRoads Model** tab and go to **Alignment – Bridge Sketch (PC).dgn >> Linear Geometry**, you will notice that the **Deck - Top**, **Girder - Bottom** and **Pier/Bent** categories were created.



38. Go ahead and turn <u>all</u> levels back on (active file and reference files) other than Default. Then, open the Profile From Surface tool (OpenRoads Modeling >> Geometry >> Vertical >> Profile Creation).



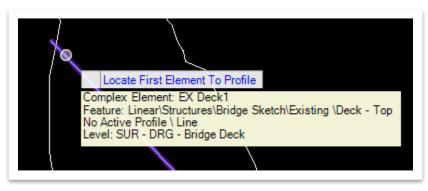




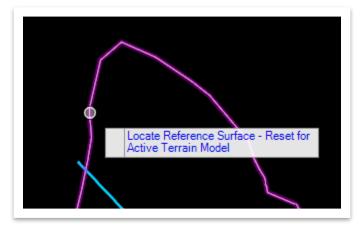
- 39. Within the **Profile From Surface** dialog box, let's first set the feature settings.
 - a. Feature Definition: Deck Top (Linear >> Structures >> Bridge Sketch >> Existing)
 - b. Name: EX Deck

	*
Deck - Top	\sim
EX Deck	
	-

40. Notice the cursor prompt: Locate First Element To Profile. Select the light blue line representing the top of the bridge deck and then right click to reset. Note: Make sure to select the line on either end, as shown below, so you don't accidentally select the orange line.



41. Notice the next cursor prompt: **Locate Reference Surface**. Select the terrain boundary and then right click to complete.



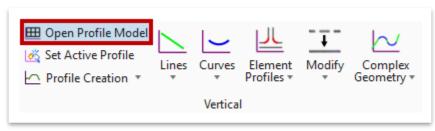




42. Go ahead and Lock To Start and Lock To End. The stations should automatically populate. Left click to accept all other default settings shown below. Note: Your End Distance will vary depending on your line length that you drew.

🔏 Profile Fro	- 🗆 X
Parameters	*
Point Selection	All
Profile Adjustment	None 🗸
Draping Option	Triangles 🗸
Horizontal Offsets	0.00
Vertical Offsets	0.00
Range	*
Lock To Start	
Start Distance	0+00.00
Lock To End	
End Distance	0+87.46
Feature	*
Feature Definition	Deck - Top 🗸 🗸
Name	EX Deck

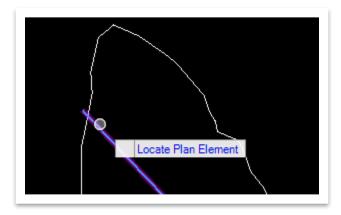
43. Next, we will view the profile of the bridge deck. Open the **Open Profile Model** tool (**OpenRoads Modeling >> Geometry >> Vertical**).



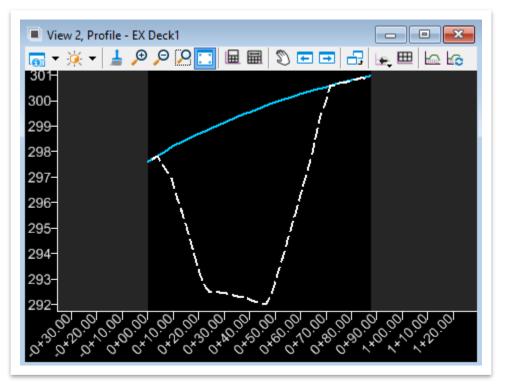




44. Notice the cursor prompt: **Locate Plan Element**. Select the **light blue** bridge deck line.



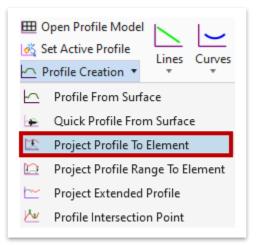
45. Open **View 2** and left click anywhere within that view. You should see the profile, as shown below.







46. Now we will project the bottom of the bridge profile onto the bridge deck profile. Open the **Project Profile To Element** tool (**OpenRoads Modeling >> Geometry** >> Vertical >> Profile Creation).



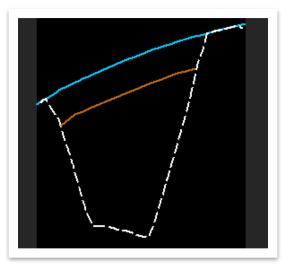
- 47. Within the **Place Projected Profile** dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Feature Definition: Girder Bottom (Linear >> Structures >> Bridge Sketch >> Existing)
 - b. Name: EX Girder Bottom

🔏 Place 🛛	_		×
Feature			*
Feature Definition	Girder	Bottom	\sim
Name	EX Gire	der Botton	ı





48. Notice the cursor prompt: **Select Element To Project**. Select the **orange** Girder -Bottom line and then select the **light blue** line (bridge deck). This will project the girder profile onto the bridge deck profile. **Note: View 2** should automatically update, as shown below.



- 49. We are now going to project the **four** bridge column extents onto the profile using a similar process. To make it easier to see the green column extents, turn off the **SUR DRG Bridge Deck** and **SUR DRG Bridges** levels in both the active file and reference files. Open the **Project Profile To Element** tool once again (**OpenRoads Modeling >> Geometry >> Vertical >> Profile Creation**) and zoom into the first column extent. Within the **Place Projected Profile** dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Feature Definition: Pier/Bent
 - b. Name: EX Bent

hace	_		×
Feature			*
Feature Definition	Pier/Be	ent	\sim
Name	EX Ber	it	





50. Notice the cursor prompt: **Select Element To Project**. Select the first column extent in plan view.



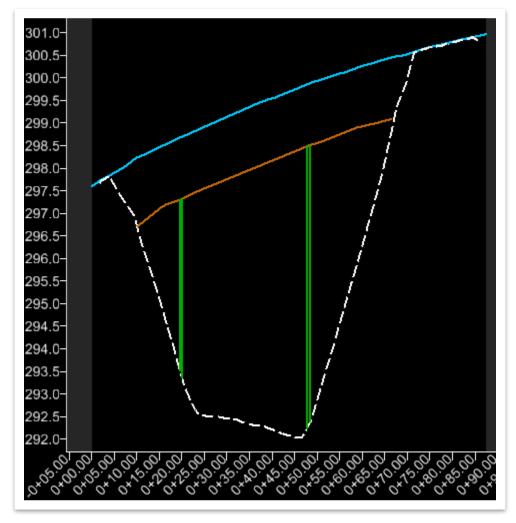
51. Then, turn on the **SUR - DRG - Bridge Deck** level within the active file and select the bridge deck line to project onto.







52. Turn off the **SUR - DRG - Bridge Deck** level within the active file once again and repeat Steps 50-51 to project the other 3 column extents. Review the profile once you have completed the projection.



53. As a reminder, in order to place annotation, we need to create a profile named boundary. Open the **Place Named Boundary** tool (**OpenRoads Modeling >> Drawing Production >> Named Boundaries >> Named Boundary**).

		1"=50'	*
Named Boundary •	🔀 ACS Plane Lock		
	Annotation Scale I	.ock	
Nam 🗹 🛛 PI	🧭 Place Named Boundary		
IIII Ad	🗰 Adjust Profile Named Boundary		

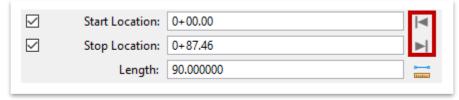




54. Make sure that the **Civil Profile** option is toggled on. Select **Profile 1H 1V Scale** for the Drawing Seed. Most of the fields should automatically populate based on the selected seed.

Place Named Boundary Civil Profile	×
A 🎙 📠 🕅 🖊 😭 🗐	
Drawing Seed: Profile 1H 1V Scale	
Detail Scale: Full Size 1 = 1	

- 55. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner of the drawing window: **Identify Profile View**. Left click anywhere within **View 2**.
- 56. Use the grey arrows to lock the Start and Stop Location to the profile extents so that the entire profile is accounted for. To create one overall profile named boundary, the Length field will need to be adjusted based on each project length. Go ahead and edit this value to 90'. Note: You cannot key-in stations until the profile view has been selected in Step 55. Also, your Stop Location will vary depending on the length of your centerline.



57. Key-in Bridge Sketch for both the Named Boundary name and the Group name.

Name:	Bridge Sketch
Description:	
Method:	Station Limits 🔹
Group:	(New) 👻
Name:	Bridge Sketch





58. Leave the other default values as-is and make sure that the **Create Drawing** option is toggled on at the bottom.

C Place Named Boundary	/ Civil Profile —	×
	A 🖓 🔳 🕅 🖊 🗹 🞵	
Drawing Seed:	Profile 1H 1V Scale 🔹	
Detail Scale:	Full Size 1 = 1	
Name:	Bridge Sketch	
Description:		
Method:	Station Limits 🔹	
Group:	(New) 👻	
Name:	Bridge Sketch	
Description:		
Start Location:	0+00.00	◀
Stop Location:	0+87.46	
Length:	90.000000	oo
Vertical Exaggeration:	1.000000	
Available Profile Height:	20.000000	oo
Top Clearance:	0.500000	
Bottom Clearance:	0.500000	
Elevation Datum Spacing:	2.000000	
Station Datum Spacing:	100.000000	
Profile Shifts:	Datum Stations 🔹	
	Use Terrains	
	Use Active Vertical	
	Whole Conduits Only	
	Create Drawing	
	Show Dialog	



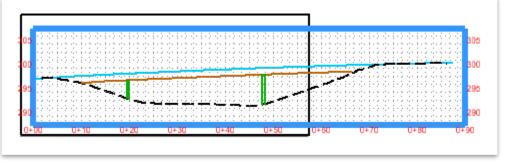
59. Left click anywhere within View 2 **three** times. Zoom out and you should see **one** profile named boundary drawn into the file, represented by a white border. The **Create Drawing** window will appear automatically after creating the named boundary, since we toggled it on in Step 58. Click **OK** to accept all default settings.

🜍 Create Drawing		×
Mod Nam	er Bridge Sketch	
One sheet Per Dg	n:	
Drawing Seed:	Profile 1H 1V Scale 🔹	
View Type:	Civil Profile	
Discipline:	Civil	
Purpose:	Elevation View	
	Drawing Model	
Seed Model:	TDOT Profile 1H 1V.dgnlib, Profile 1H 1V !	
Filename:	(Active File)	4
A	Full Size 1 = 1	
Annotation Group:	Profile Grid 1V	
	Sheet Model	
Seed Model:	TDOT Profile 1H 1V.dgnlib, Profile 1H 1V t	
Filename:	(Active File) 😑	4
Sheets:	(New) 👻	
A	Full Size 1 = 1	
Drawing Boundary:	Profile 1H 1V Scale 👻	
Detail Scale :	Full Size 1 = 1	
	🗌 Add To Sheet Index 🛛 🕼	
	Make Sheet Coincident	
	🗹 Open Model	
	<u>O</u> K Cancel	

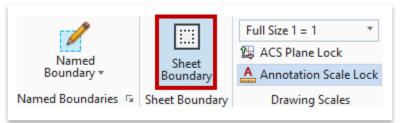




60. The software should open to the <u>one</u> **bridge sketch** sheet model in **View 1**.



- 61. Notice that the sheet **paper size** does not match the extent of the profile view. In general, the survey profiles (including bridge sketches) don't typically need to be printed by TDOT Survey. They will be contained as profile drawing models within the overall survey alignment file. We will skip to the annotation, but if printing is desired, please follow Steps 62-64.
- 62. The paper size can be adjusted by opening the **Sheet Boundary** tool (**Open Roads Modeling >> Drawing Production >> Sheet Boundary**).



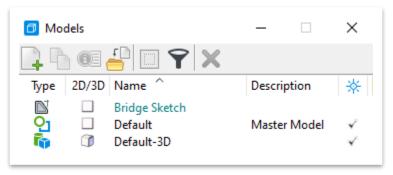
- 63. Within the **Sheet Boundary** dialog box, you would set a **Custom Size** to match the needs of the bridge sketch length. The **Height** and **Width** are reverse when considering the orientation of the sheet. In this exercise, the following values would be keyed-in and then you would click **OK**.
 - a. Height: 100.00
 - b. Width: 30.00

			Custom Sheet Size	>
	à		Height: 100.00	F .
Size: Custom.	•	*	Width: 30.00	vey Feet 🔻
Scale: Full Size	1=1 🔹	*	OK	Cancel
Border: (none)	-	*	<u><u>O</u>K</u>	Cancel

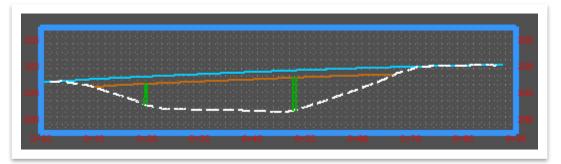




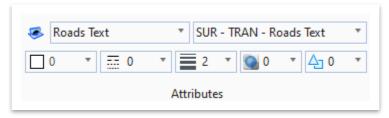
- 64. The sheet boundary would automatically update and then the sheet model could be printed manually (**File >> Print**) or by adding it to the sheet index and utilizing the **Print Organizer**.
- 65. For the purpose of this exercise, let's go ahead and delete the sheet model. Open the **Models** tool (**OpenRoads Modeling >> Home >> Primary**) and double click on the **Bridge Sketch** <u>drawing</u> model to activate it. Then, right click on the <u>sheet</u> model and select **Delete**. You should see the following three models once completed. Close the **Models** window once you are done.



66. You should see the bridge sketch along with the profile grid, stations and elevations. We will next add the applicable annotation, like in the previous exercises.



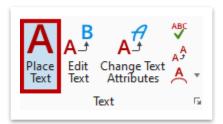
67.We will first label the existing ground. Go ahead and select the **Roads Text** element template (**Survey >> Annotation >> Roads**).



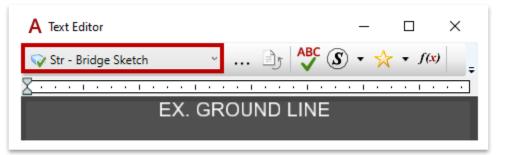




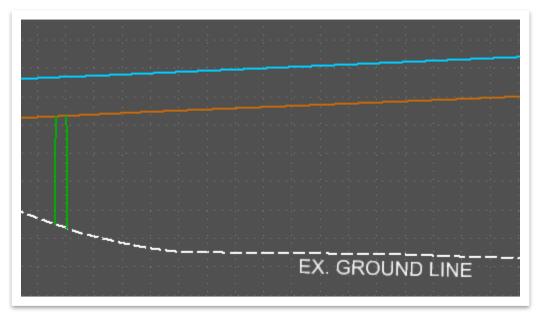
68. Next, open the **Place Text** tool (**OpenRoads Modeling >> Drawing Production >> Text**).



69. Within the **Text Editor**, select the **Str - Bridge Sketch** text style (highlighted below). Notice that the text size and orientation updated automatically. Key-in **EX. GROUND LINE**.



70. Left click anywhere along the existing ground profile to place the text, as shown below. **Note:** You can rotate the text after placement to better align with the profile.







71.Now let's label the bridge deck and girder. Select the **Bridge Text** element template (**Survey >> Annotation >> Bridges**).



72. Add **BRIDGE DECK** and **BRIDGE GIRDER** text in the same manner as the existing ground, and rotate as necessary. Continue to use the same **Str - Bridge Sketch** text style.

	PRIDOF DECK		
	BRIDGE DECK		
	BRIDGE GIRDER		
ender al <u>e de la colonia esta esta e</u>	BRIDGE OIRCE		
	EX. GROUND LINE	 	
	EX. GROUND LINE		

73. Next, let's place a note for one of the concrete columns. Open the Place Note tool (OpenRoads Modeling >> Drawing Production >> Notes). Within the Place Note dialog box, select the SUR - PRO - Bridge Sketch dimension style and leave the other settings as-is.

hace Note	- 🗆 ×
	A A
Dimension Style:	🗂 SUR - PRO - Br 🔻 🖻 🖄
Text <u>R</u> otation:	Horizontal 🔹
Location:	Automatic 🔹
<u>S</u> tart At:	Terminator 🔹
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto 🔻

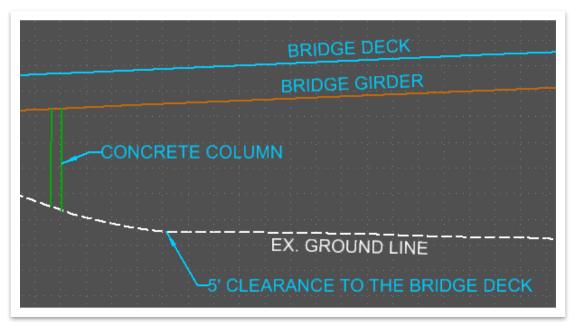




74. Within the **Text Editor**, the **Str - Bridge Sketch** text style should still be active (if not, go ahead and re-select it). Key-in **CONCRETE COLUMN** and then place the note, as shown below.



75. Snap to the column extent and then left click again to place the label, as shown below. You can also add various other notes using this option, such as **5' CLEARANCE TO THE BRIDGE DECK**.



76. If you need to add dimensions, switch to the **Drawing** workflow to access the tools (**Drawing >> Annotate >> Dimensioning**).





6.2.2 Exercise: Bridge Sketch – Survey Text Files

In this exercise, we will create a bridge sketch via text files and then create the overall profile drawing model. The data already includes the section view, and you will notice some similar procedures compared to the previous exercise.

1. Create a new file and name it **Survey Model – Bridge Sketch (TF)**. Select the **TDOTSeed3D.dgn** and click **Save**.

File name:	Survey Model - Bridge Sketch (TF)	Save
Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) $\qquad \qquad \lor$	Cancel
Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co	Browse

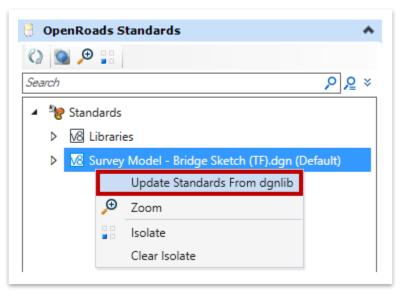
 Next, we need to import the bridge survey data. Open File Explorer and browse to the class files within the SURVEY_Training workset dgn subfolder. Select the SR174-BRIDGE.txt and SR174-BRIDGE2.txt ASCII text files and drag and drop them into the Field Books folder within the Explorer. Expand the Field Books folder and notice the text files have been added, as shown below.

🖯 Survey 🔺
🔇 🧕 🗩 📑
Search 👂 🔎
🔺 🗹 🧯 Survey Data
🔺 🗹 🖸 Default
Field Books
🔺 🗹 🔋 Field Book 1
🔺 🗹 😵 Data Files
SR174-BRIDGE.txt
SR174-BRIDGE2.txt
ALL Point Features
Image:
ALL Control Points
🗸 🥂 ALL Setups
ALL Observations
Filters
 Multimedia Files

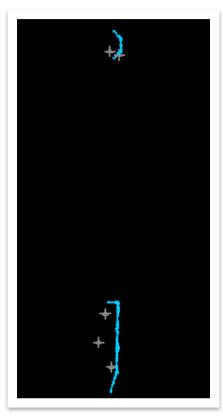




3. As a reminder, the first thing we need to do after import is update the dgnlib standards so that <u>all</u> survey locators are the correct scale. There is a quirk in the software, so it is good practice to perform this step after any survey text file import. Expand the OpenRoads Standards tab within Explorer. Right click on the active file (Survey Model – Bridge Sketch (TF).dgn) and select Update Standards From dgnlib. Give the software a minute to process.



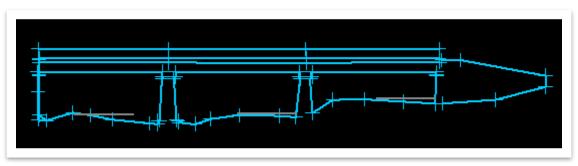
4. Click Fit View and review the file. You should see the image below.







5. Go ahead and switch back to the **Survey** workflow in the upper left corner. Since this is a **3D** file, the data will come in 3D. Click **Rotate View** and set the **Method** to **Left**. Zoom in to the bridge data on the right.



- 6. Turn off the following two levels in the active file:
 - SUR CTRL Temporary Points
 - SUR DRG Bridge Deck Points Locators
- We will now apply certain element attributes for key components of the bridge sketch and for some, will need to draw smartlines on top of the surveyed lines. Select the **Deck - Top** element template (**Survey >> Drainage >> Bridge >> Bridge Sketch**).

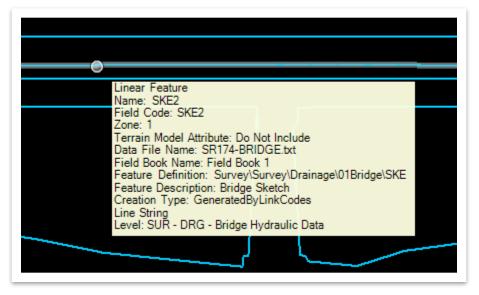




8. Now, open the **Change Element Attributes** tool (**Survey >> Drawing >> Modify**) and make sure the applicable boxes are checked, as shown below.

	<i>₿</i> Cł	nange Attributes	- 🗆 ×
			✓ Active Attributes
		<u>L</u> evel:	SUR - DRG - Bridge Dec 🔻
		<u>C</u> olor:	3 🗸
		<u>S</u> tyle:	0
- 🔟 L¥ ++ 🖓 💼 🔤		<u>W</u> eight:	<u> </u>
Modify Break Trim	\square	<u>T</u> ransparency:	 0 -
Modify		Priority:	△
		Class:	Primary 💌
		Template:	Survey\Drainage\Bridg 🔻
		Use Fence:	Inside 💌
			Make Copy
			Change Whole Element

9. Left click on the **Bridge Deck** (2nd line from the top).



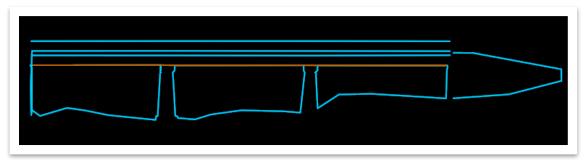




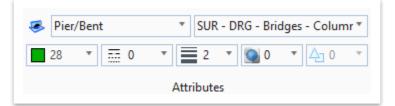
 Next, we need to trace the remaining applicable components. First, select the Girder - Bottom element template (Survey >> Drainage >> Bridge >> Bridge Sketch).



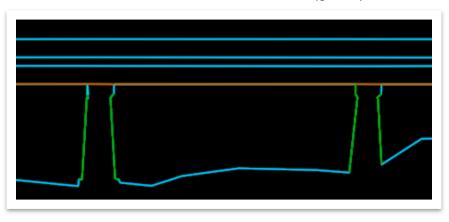
11. Open the **Place SmartLine** tool (**Survey >> Drawing >> Placement**). Trace the top of the openings to get one overall orange smartline, which will represent the bottom of the girder, as shown below. **Note:** Your linework may appear behind the light blue linework once drawn.



12. Now we will repeat the same process for the **columns**. Select the **Pier/Bent** element template (**Survey >> Drainage >> Bridge >> Bridge Sketch**).



13. Trace the **four** outer extents of the columns (green), as shown below.



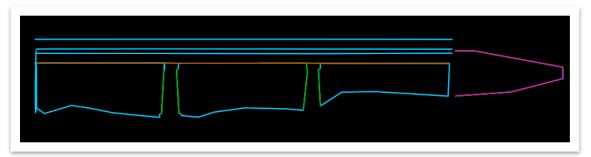




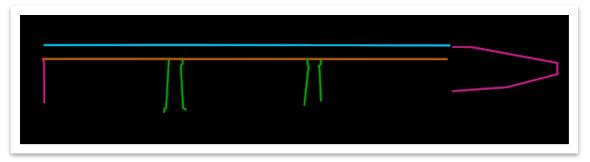
14. Lastly, select the **Abutment** element template (**Survey >> Drainage >> Bridge >> Bridge Sketch**).



15. Trace the outer extents of the abutments (pink) on each end, as shown below.



16. Turn off the SUR - DRG - Bridge Hydraulic Data in the active file.



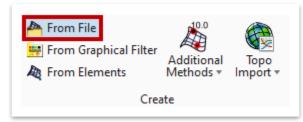
17. Now we need to convert the 3D elements into 2D elements. Let's create a new file and name it Alignment – Bridge Sketch (TF). Select the TDOTSeed2D.dgn and click Save. Note: Once again, the bridge sketch would likely be a profile model within the overall 2D survey alignment file but has been separated out for the purpose of training.

File name:	Alignment - Bridge Sketch (TF)	Save
Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) $\qquad \qquad \lor$	Cancel
Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co	Browse





18. Go ahead and switch to the OpenRoads Modeling workflow once again. First, we need to attach the surface. Open the From File tool (OpenRoads Modeling >> Terrain >> Create).



- 19. Select the **SR174-01DTM.tin** file within the **SURVEY_Training** workset dgn subfolder and click **Done**. Within the **Import Terrain Model(s)** dialog box, skip down to **File Options**.
- 20. Under File Options, select the following settings.
 - a. **Source File Units:** Leave as-is. This field will take care of itself and disappear once the geographic coordinate system is selected in the next step.
 - b. Feature Definition: Terrain\Survey Existing Ground
 - c. Import Options: Import Terrain Only

Options	
Filter	*
Source File Units	Unknown
Feature Definition	*
Feature Definition	Terrain\Survey Existing Ground 🗸
Triangulation Options	*
Import Options	Import Terrain Only

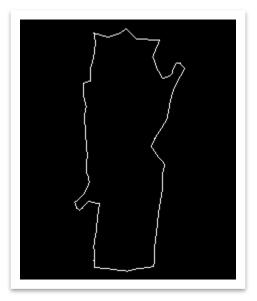




21. Under Geographical Coordinate Systems, click the ellipses next to the Source field. You should already have the correct coordinate system saved as a Favorite (TN83/2011F – NSRS11 (NAD83/ 2011) Tennessee State Plane Zone, US Foot) from earlier in the manual. If not, you can browse to it here: Library >> Projected (northing, easting, ...) >> North America >> United States of America >> Tennessee. Once selected, click OK.

Library	Search					
_	Favorites		Coordinate Sy	stem	*	^
	TN83/2011F - NSR Library	IS11(NAD83,	Name	TN83/201	1F	
		Description	NSRS11(N	AD83/20		
			Projection	Lambert C	onformal (
			EPSG Code	6576		
			Source	EPSG:657	6	
			Units	US Survey	Foot	
			First Standard Pa	36°25'00.0	0000"N	
<		>	Second Standard	35°15'00.0	0000"N	4

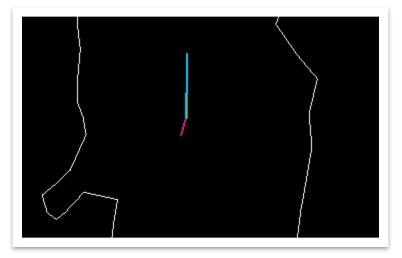
22. Next, click **Import** and then close the **Import Terrain Model(s)** dialog box once processed. Click **Fit View**, turn the **triangles** off and review the terrain. **Note:** The white terrain boundary in this 2D file is adequate for this exercise, but if you wanted to view the entire terrain in a 3D model, you would create a 3D file and import the TIN in the same manner.



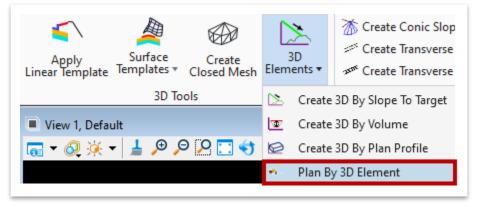




23. Go ahead and attach the previously created file (Survey Model – Bridge Sketch (TF).dgn) as a reference using the Coincident World attachment method and then zoom in to the referenced lines. You should see four different color lines: (1) the light blue bridge deck (2) the orange bottom girder (3) the green column extents and (4) the pink abutments. Note: The 2D plan view will look odd for some components, but once projected to the bridge deck, everything will look correct in the profile.



- 24. Once attached, zoom in and you should see **four different color lines** you drew earlier: (1) the light blue bridge deck (2) the orange bottom girder (3) the green column extents and (4) the pink abutments. Keep in mind that the 2D plan view will look odd for some components, but once projected to the bridge deck, everything will look correct in the profile.
- 25. Open the Plan By 3D Element tool (OpenRoads Modeling >> Model Detailing >> 3D Tools >> 3D Elements).







26. Within the Plan By 3D Element dialog box, select the Deck - Top feature definition (Linear >> Structures >> Bridge Sketch >> Existing). You can leave the default Name as-is for now.

🔏 Plan B	_		×
Feature			*
Feature Definition	Deck -	Тор	\sim
Name	EX Dec	k	

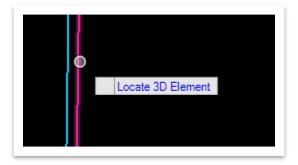
27. Notice the cursor prompt: **Locate 3D Element**. Left click on the **light blue** line representing the referenced bridge deck.



28. Next, we will apply the same process to the bottom of the bridge. Select the Girder
 Bottom feature definition (Linear >> Structures >> Bridge Sketch >> Existing).

_		\times
		*
Girder	- Bottom	\sim
EX Gire	der Bottom	ı
		Girder - Bottom

29. Once again, notice the cursor prompt: **Locate 3D Element**. Left click on the **orange** line representing the bottom of the bridge.



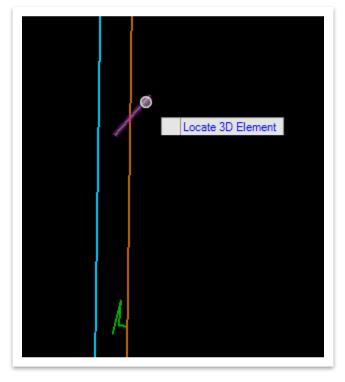




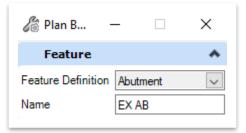
30.Next, we will apply the same process to the **four** column extents. Select the **Pier/Bent** feature definition (Linear >> Structures >> Bridge Sketch >> Existing).

_		×
		*
Pier/B	ent	\sim
EX Ber	nt	
		Pier/Bent EX Bent

31. Once again, notice the cursor prompt: **Locate 3D Element**. Left click on the first **green** line representing one column extent. Repeat this step for the remaining three column extents.



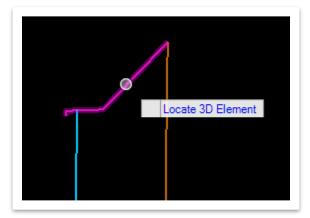
32. Lastly, we will apply the same process to the abutments. Select the **Abutment** feature definition (Linear >> Structures >> Bridge Sketch >> Existing).







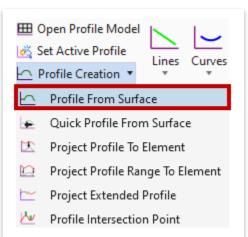
33. Once again, notice the cursor prompt: **Locate 3D Element**. Left click on the first **pink** line representing the first abutment. Repeat this step for the other abutment.



34. It will seem like nothing happened. However, within the Explorer, if you open the OpenRoads Model tab and go to Alignment – Bridge Sketch (TF).dgn >> Linear Geometry, you will notice that the Abutment, Deck - Top, Girder - Bottom and Pier/Bent were created. Note: You can expand each one to see additional details about the complex elements you created earlier with the smartline tool.



35. Now, open the **Profile From Surface** tool (**OpenRoads Modeling >> Geometry** >> **Vertical >> Profile Creation**).



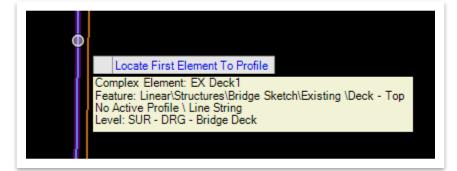




- 36. Within the **Profile From Surface** dialog box, let's first set the feature settings.
 - a. Feature Definition: Deck Top (Linear >> Structures >> Bridge Sketch >> Existing)
 - b. Name: EX Deck

	*
Deck - Top	\sim
EX Deck	
	-

37. Notice the cursor prompt: **Locate First Element To Profile**. Select the **light blue** line representing the top of the bridge deck and then right click to reset.



38. Notice the next cursor prompt: **Locate Reference Surface**. Select the terrain boundary and then right click to complete.



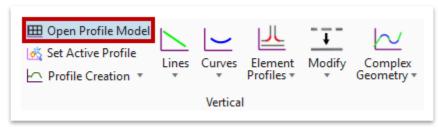




39. Go ahead and Lock To Start and Lock To End. The stations should automatically populate. Left click to accept all other default settings shown below. Note: Your End Distance will vary depending on your line length that you drew.

🔏 Profile Fro	- 🗆 ×
Parameters	*
Point Selection	All
Profile Adjustment	None 🗸
Draping Option	Triangles 🗸
Horizontal Offsets	0.00
Vertical Offsets	0.00
Range	*
Lock To Start	\square
Start Distance	0+00.00
Lock To End	\checkmark
End Distance	1+19.87
Feature	^
Feature Definition	Deck - Top 🗸 🗸
Name	EX Deck

40. Next, we will view the profile of the bridge deck. Open the **Open Profile Model** tool (**OpenRoads Modeling >> Geometry >> Vertical**).



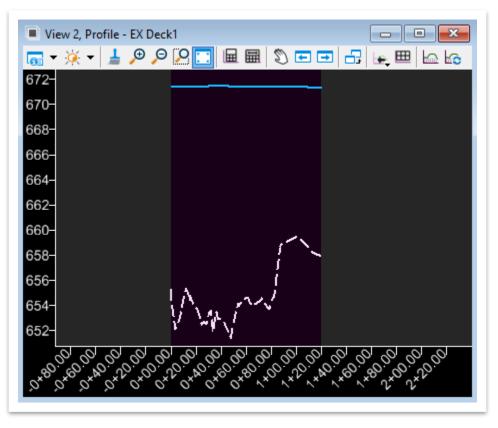




41. Notice the cursor prompt: **Locate Plan Element**. Select the **light blue** bridge deck line.



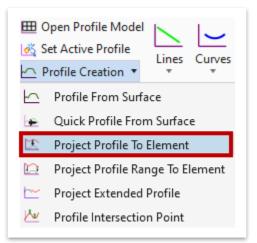
42. Open **View 2** and left click anywhere within that view. You should see the profile, as shown below.







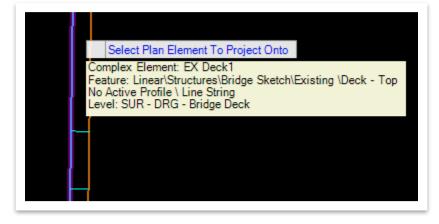
43. Now we need to project the profiles of the other components onto the bridge deck profile. Open the **Project Profile To Element** tool (**OpenRoads Modeling >> Geometry >> Vertical >> Profile Creation**).



- 44. Within the **Place Projected Profile** dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Feature Definition: Girder Bottom
 - b. Name: EX Girder Bottom

🔏 Place 🚽	_		×
Feature			*
Feature Definition	Girder	- Bottom	\sim
Name	EX Gir	der Botton	1

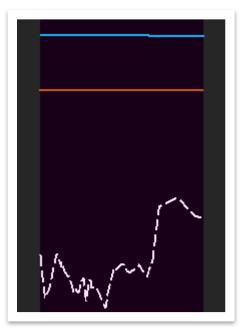
45. Notice the cursor prompt: **Select Element To Project**. Select the **orange** Girder -Bottom line and then select the **light blue** line (bridge deck). **Note:** Prior to selecting the bridge deck, hover over the line and notice the perpendicular light blue lines, which indicate the projection region, as shown below.



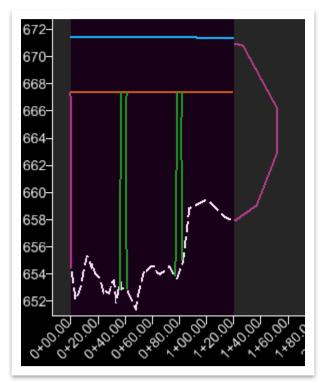




46. This will project the girder profile onto the bridge deck profile. **Note: View 2**, as shown below, should automatically update.



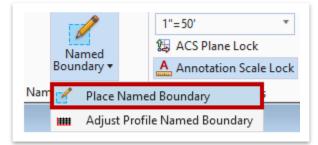
47. Next, project the **four** bridge column extents and the **two** abutments onto the profile using the same process. Make sure and select the applicable feature definition (**Pier/Bent** and then **Abutment**) before projection. Once completed, review your profile and make sure all elements are visible. **Note:** The profile is only as good as the survey data contained within the text file(s).







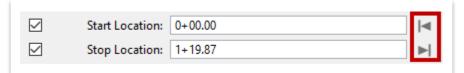
48.As a reminder, in order to place annotation, we need to create a profile named boundary. Open the Place Named Boundary tool (OpenRoads Modeling >> Drawing Production >> Named Boundaries >> Named Boundary).



49. Make sure that the **Civil Profile** option is toggled on. Select **Profile 1H 1V Scale** for the Drawing Seed. Most of the fields should automatically populate based on the selected seed.

Place Named Boundary Civil Profile	\times
A 🏳 🔜 🎾 🗾 🗐	
Drawing Seed: Profile 1H 1V Scale -	
Detail Scale: Full Size 1 = 1	

- 50. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner of the drawing window: **Identify Profile View**. Left click anywhere within **View 2**.
- 51. Use the grey arrows to lock the **Start** and **Stop Location** to the profile extents so that the entire profile is accounted for. **Note:** You cannot key-in stations until the profile view has been selected in Step 50.



52. Key-in **Bridge Sketch (SR-174)** for both the **Named Boundary** name and the **Group** name.

Name:	Bridge Sketch (SR-174)
Description:	
Method:	Station Limits 🔹
Group:	(New) 👻
Name:	Bridge Sketch (SR-174)





53. To create one overall profile named boundary, the **Length** field will need to be adjusted based on each project length. Go ahead and edit this value to **160'** for this exercise. Also, let's update the **Available Profile Height** to **50**'.

Length:	160.000000
Vertical Exaggeration:	1.000000
Available Profile Height:	50.000000

54. Leave the other default values as-is and make sure that the **Create Drawing** option is toggled on at the bottom.

🄏 Place Named Boundary	/ Civil Profile	_		×
	R 🖓 🔳 🕅 🖍	1	IJ	
Drawing Seed:	Profile 1H 1V Scale		•	
Detail Scale:	Full Size 1 = 1		•	
Name:	Bridge Sketch (SR-174)			
Description:				
Method:	Station Limits		•	
Group:	(New)		•	
Name:	Bridge Sketch (SR-174)			
Description:				
Start Location:	0+00.00			◀
Stop Location:	1+19.87			▶
Length:	160.000000			oo
Vertical Exaggeration:	1.000000			
Available Profile Height:	50.000000			oo
Top Clearance:	0.500000			
Bottom Clearance:	0.500000			
Elevation Datum Spacing:	2.000000			
Station Datum Spacing:	100.000000			
Profile Shifts:	Datum Stations		•	
	Use Terrains			
	Use Active Vertical			
	Whole Conduits Only			
	Create Drawing			
	Show Dialog			



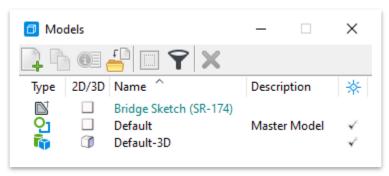
55. Left click anywhere within View 2 **three** times. Zoom out and you should see **one** profile named boundary drawn into the file, represented by a white border. The **Create Drawing** window will appear automatically after creating the named boundary, since we toggled it on in Step 54. Click **OK** to accept all default settings.

🞻 Create Drawing	×
Mod Nam	e: Bridge Sketch (SR-174)
Drawing Seed: View Type: Discipline: Purpose:	Profile 1H 1V Scale Civil Profile Civil Elevation View
Seed Model: Filename:	Drawing Model TDOT Profile 1H 1V.dgnlib, Profile 1H 1V ! (Active File) Full Size 1 = 1 Profile Grid 1V
Seed Model: Filename: Sheets: Drawing Boundary: Detail Scale :	Sheet Model TDOT Profile 1H 1V.dgnlib, Profile 1H 1V : (Active File) (New) Full Size 1 = 1 Profile 1H 1V Scale Full Size 1 = 1
	 Add To Sheet Index Make Sheet Coincident Open Model OK Cancel

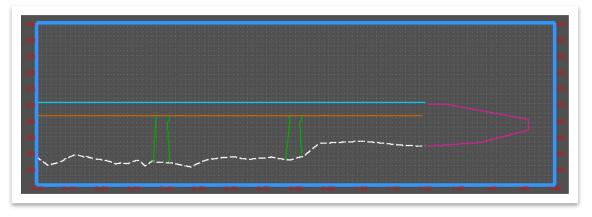




56. The software should open to the <u>one</u> **bridge sketch** sheet model in **View 1**. Let's go ahead and delete the sheet model. Open the **Models** tool (**OpenRoads Modeling >> Home >> Primary**) and double click on the **Bridge Sketch (SR-174)** <u>drawing</u> model to activate it. Then, right click on the <u>sheet</u> model and select **Delete**. You should see the following three models once completed. Close the **Models** window once you are done.



57. To apply **annotation**, refer to Steps 67-76 in the previous exercise.







6.3 Lecture: Stream Alignment Creation and Labeling

Once survey field data is imported into ORD, the stream baseline can be addressed. It is essentially treated like a horizontal alignment set with specific attributes. Automatic centerline annotation can then be added in addition to the required begin/end labels for the stream centerline and XS lines, as well as the intersection labels.

6.3.1 Exercise: Stream Alignment Creation and Labeling

In this exercise, we will create an alignment along the creekbed centerline and incorporate the upstream and downstream XS prior to adding the applicable TDOT annotation. **Note:** The stream alignment would normally be part of the overall 2D survey alignment file but has been separated out for the purpose of training.

1. Create a new file and name it **Alignment – Stream**. Select the **TDOTSeed2D.dgn** and click **Save**.

File name:	Alignment - Stream	Save
Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) $\qquad \qquad \lor$	Cancel
Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co	Browse

 Attach the Survey Model – Stream.dgn as a reference using the Coincident World attachment method and turn off the SUR - DTM - Spot Points - Locators level. Then, click Fit View and zoom in to the southernmost stream crossing and set the terrain to active.







3. Now, select <u>both</u> the **upstream** and **downstream** XS lines and **copy** them into the file (**OpenRoads Modeling >> Drawing >> Manipulate**).



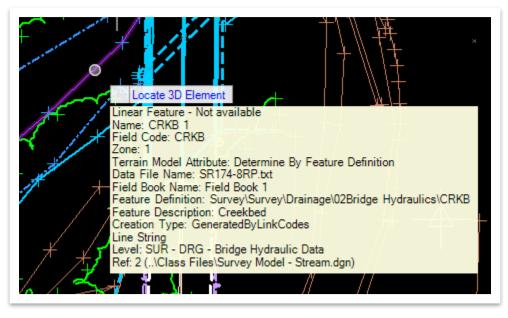
4. Next, we need to extract the creek bed centerline from the reference file into the active file. Open the Plan By 3D Element tool (OpenRoads Modeling >> Model Detailing >> 3D Tools >> 3D Elements). Select the Survey Existing Creekbed Centerline feature definition within the Alignment folder and leave the Name as-is.

🔏 Plan By 3D El	ement	_		×
Feature				*
Feature Definition	Survey Exis	ting Creekb	oed Cente	rline 🗸
Name	"Name of S	tream"		

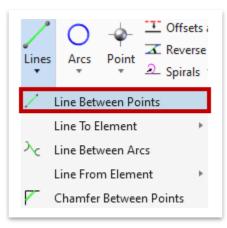




Notice the cursor prompt: Locate 3D Element. Select the upstream creek bed centerline (CRKB 1) and then the downstream creek bed centerline (CRKB). Note: There is a gap in the centerline under the bridge. We will address that in the upcoming steps.



 Go ahead and turn off the Survey Model – Stream.dgn reference file and open the Line Between Points tool (OpenRoads Modeling >> Geometry >> Horizontal >> Lines).



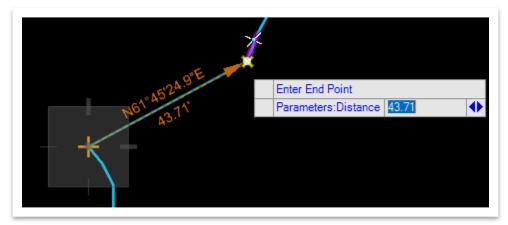




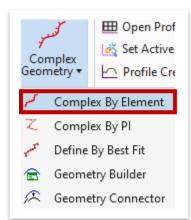
7. Select the **Survey Existing Creekbed Centerline** feature definition within the **Alignment** folder and leave the **Name** as-is. **Note:** You can ignore the **Parameters** values.

Chine 🔏	– 🗆 X
Parameters	*
Distance	0.00
Line Direction	N90°00'00.0"E
Feature	*
Feature Definition	Survey Existing Creekbed Centerline 🧹
Name	"Name of Stream"

8. Draw a line between the two creekbed centerline segments to fill in the gap, as shown below.



 Now we need to make the centerline one complex element. Open the Complex By Element tool (OpenRoads Modeling >> Geometry >> Horizontal >> Complex Geometry).



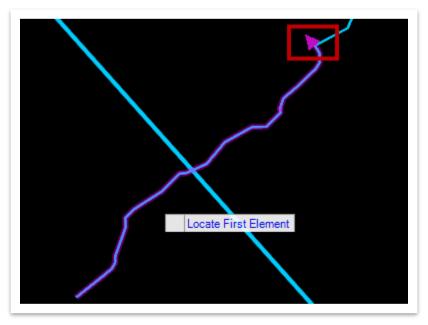




- 10. Within the Create Complex Geometry dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. **Method:** Automatic
 - b. Maximum Gap: 0.03
 - c. Feature Definition: Alignment >> Survey Existing Creekbed Centerline
 - d. Name: Leave as-is

& Create Complex Element − □ ×			
Parameter	's	*	
Method	Automatic	\sim	
Maximum Gap	0.03		
Feature		*	
Feature Definition	Definition Survey Existing Creekbed Centerline 🖂		
Name	"Name of Stream"		
L			

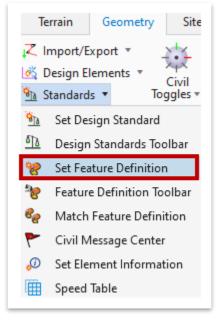
11. Select the **southernmost** segment first. Make sure when you select it that the pink arrow is pointing in the correct direction of the alignment, as shown below. Left click again to create the complex geometry. **Note:** The arrow points in the opposite direction of where your cursor is.



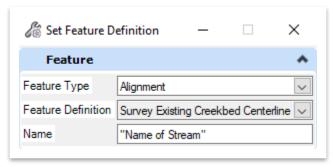




12. For annotation purposes later in the exercise, we need to name the XS lines accordingly. To do this, we first need to apply a feature definition. Open the Set Feature Definition tool (OpenRoads Modeling >> Geometry >> General Tools >> Standards).



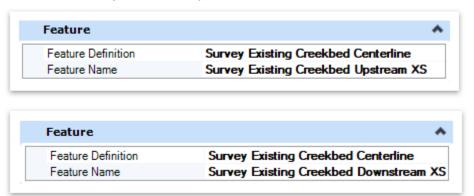
- 13. Within the Set Feature Definition dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Feature Type: Alignment
 - b. Feature Definition: Alignment >> Survey Existing Creekbed Centerline
 - c. Name: Leave as-is



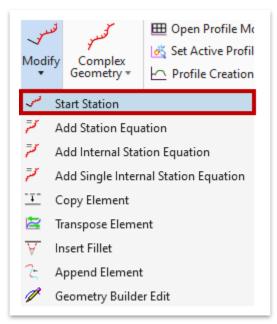




14. Left click <u>both</u> XS lines to select and then right click to accept. Open the **Properties** for each line and edit the **Feature Name** to **Survey Existing Creekbed Upstream XS** and **Survey Existing Creekbed Downstream XS** respectively. **Note:** You could have named them accordingly in the **Name** field when setting the feature definition in the previous step. Also, the southernmost XS line is the **upstream** line.



15. Next, let's apply unique stationing to the two XS lines. Open the **Start Station** tool (**OpenRoads Modeling >> Geometry >> Horizontal >> Modify**).



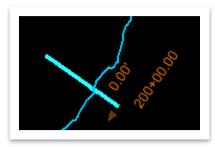




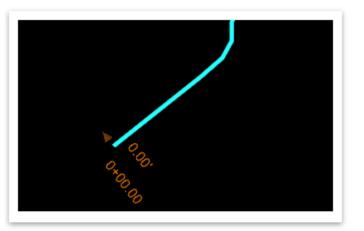
16. We will address the **upstream** XS first. Within the **Define Starting Station** dialog box, set the **Start Distance** to **0.00'** and the **Start Station** to **100+00.00**. Select the upstream XS and then left click through the prompts to accept. Using the selection tool, select the XS and notice that the dynamic stationing (orange text) now shows **100+00.00**.



17. Repeat the previous step for the **downstream** XS, except key-in a **Start Station** of **200+00.00**.



 Repeat Step 16 for the creekbed centerline, except key-in a Start Station of 0+00.00. Once completed, open its Properties and update the Feature Name to Survey Existing Creekbed Centerline.

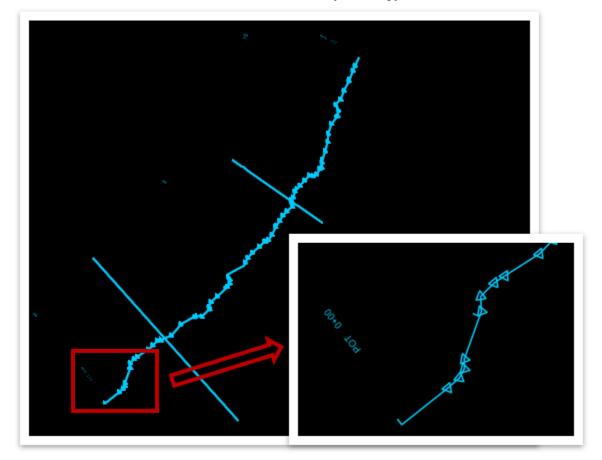


Feature	
Feature Definition	Survey Existing Creekbed Centerline
Feature Name	Survey Existing Creekbed Centerline





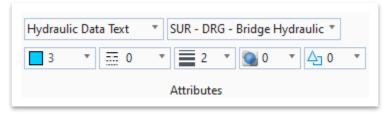
19. Now we will apply automatic annotation to the centerline. Open the Annotate Element tool (OpenRoads Modeling >> Drawing Production >> Annotations >> Element Annotation) and then select the existing creek bed centerline. Right click to reset and accept annotation placement. Notice that the centerline annotation has been added with the correct symbology.







20.Next, we will place the begin/end labels for the creekbed centerline and the upstream/downstream XS lines. Before doing so, select the **Hydraulic Data Text** element template (**Survey >> Annotation >> Bridges**). As a reminder, this is necessary so the labels will place with the correct symbology.



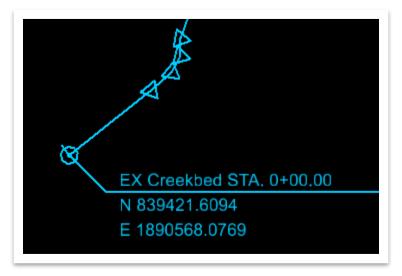
- 21. Open the **Place Label** tool (**OpenRoads Modeling >> Drawing Production >> Notes**). Within the **Place Label Settings** dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Select the leader icon at the top
 - b. Type: Cell
 - c. Cell Name: _SUR DRG Creek STA. N.E.
 - d. Dimension Style: SUR DRG Text

🔏 Place Label Setting	js —		×
Type:	Cell	Y	
Cell Name:	_SUR - DRG - Creek -	STA	
Dimension Style:	SUR - DRG - Text	*	D
Label Rotation:	Horizontal	¥	
Start At:	Terminator	v	
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto	~	

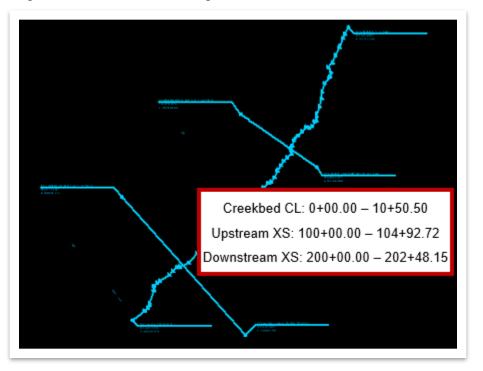




22. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner: **Identify Element or DataPoint**. Select the creekbed centerline so that the applicable station reference is known. Then, snap to the beginning of the centerline at Station **0+00.00** and place the label, as shown below. Notice that the name, station, northing and easting automatically populated once placed.



23. Go ahead and place the same label at the end of the creekbed centerline and then at the beginning and end of each XS line. Keep the same element template and **Place Label** settings for all labels. Make sure to select the applicable line before placing the label, otherwise the stationing will be incorrect. **Note:** The station ranges are shown in the image below for reference.



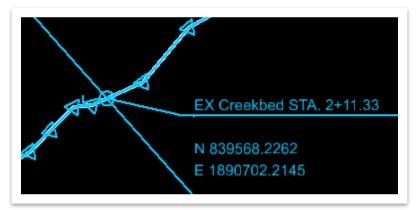




- 24. Lastly, we will place two intersection labels where the creekbed centerline crosses the XS lines. Currently, ORD cannot reference two alignments within a single label, but a future Bentley release should allow for that. Essentially, two labels will have to be placed to create a single intersection label. Open the **Place Label** tool once again if you had closed it. Within the **Place Label Settings** dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Select the leader icon at the top
 - b. Type: Cell
 - c. Cell Name: _SUR DRG Creek STA. N.E. XSECTION 1
 - d. Dimension Style: SUR DRG Text

🔏 Place Label Setting	js —		×
Type:	Cell	Ŷ	
Cell Name:	_SUR - DRG - Creek -	STA. •	
Dimension Style:	👽 SUR - DRG - Text	*	D
Label Rotation:	Horizontal	Ŷ	
Start At:	Terminator	Ŷ	
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto	~	

25. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner: **Identify Element or DataPoint**. Select the creekbed centerline, and then select the intersecting point and place the label, as shown below. The creekbed station should be **2+11.33**.







26. Now, we need to place a second label at the same location to add the XS station at the intersecting point. Within the **Place Label Settings** dialog box, select the **non-leader** option and the **_SUR - DRG - Creek - STA. - N.E. XSECTION 2** cell.

🔏 Place Label Setting	js —		×
Type:	Cell	~	
Cell Name:	_SUR - DRG - Creek -	STA	
Dimension Style:	👽 SUR - DRG - Text	*	D
Label Rotation:	Horizontal	~	
Start At:	Terminator	v	
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto	~	
	A		

27. Make sure to select the XS line this time instead of the creekbed centerline. Then, select the intersecting point once again and snap to the first label leader. That should place the second line of text in the correct location. The XS station should be **102+49.23**. Note: There is a defect logged with Bentley pertaining to the label. If a line of text is too long, it overlaps itself. If that occurs, double click on the erroneous text to open the **Text Editor** and then simply left click anywhere within the **drawing window** to close it. This "refresh" updates the label correctly.



28. Repeat Steps 24-27 to place the downstream intersecting label which will complete the annotation. The corresponding stations should be **6+67.42** and **200+85.55**.





6.4 Lecture: Box Culvert Crossings (Profile View)

When adding existing box culvert crossings to a roadway profile, it is assumed that the existing box culvert <u>plan</u> data has already been imported into the field book. The survey preliminary centerline must be created before this exercise can be done.

6.4.1 Exercise: Crossing – Box Culvert

In this exercise, we will add an existing box culvert crossing to a roadway profile, after creating the required **Utility** model. **Note:** The box culvert model would normally be part of the overall 2D survey utility model file but has been separated out for the purpose of training.

1. Create a new file and name it **Utility Model – Box Culvert**. Select the **TDOTSeed 2D.dgn** and click **Save**.

File name:	Utility Model - Box Culvert	Save
Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) 🗸 🗸	Cancel
Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co	Browse

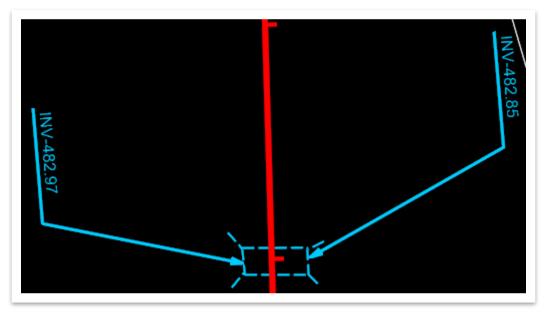
- 2. Attach the following reference files using the **Coincident World** attachment method and then click **Fit View**.
 - Alignment Box Culvert.dgn
 - Existing Terrain Box Culvert.dgn
 - Survey Model Box Culvert.dgn
- Within the Survey Model Box Culvert.dgn reference file, all levels should be turned off other than SURVEY - DRAINAGE - Pipes and Culverts and SURVEY - DRAINAGE - Pipes and Culverts Text.
- 4. Go ahead and switch to the **Drainage and Utilities** workflow in the upper left corner and then zoom in to the western part of the project where the box culvert crossing is displayed along with the other text (highlighted below).







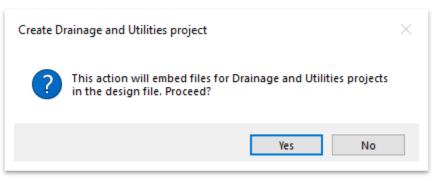
Rotate the view so that it is aligned with the box culvert. Identify both the upstream (482.97') and downstream (482.85') sides of the existing 12'x4' RCB using the invert elevations shown in the survey file (left to right).



 We will now build the existing box culvert utility model in plan view. First, we need to place nodes on both ends of the box culvert. Open the Place Node tool (Drainage and Utilities >> Layout >> Layout).



7. A warning will display asking if you want to embed files for **Drainage and Utilities** projects in the design file. Click **Yes**.







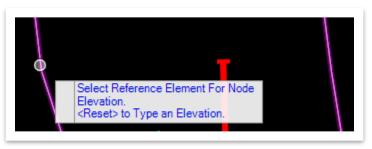
- 8. Go ahead and open the Place Node tool again (Drainage and Utilities >> Layout >> Layout). Within the Place Node dialog box, select the following settings and leave the others as default. Note: This headwall does not match the opening of the box culvert we are going to display in profile view. There are no available features for existing headwalls. The headwalls in this exercise will not be shown or called out on the plans and merely serve the purpose of connecting the pipe between two points.
 - a. Feature Definition: Headwall Straight 30 (Node >> StormWaterNode >> Headwalls >> Straight)
 - b. Name Prefix: HW1
 - c. Elevation is the Invert: Toggle Off
 - d. Elevation: Ignore the value but make sure the checkbox is toggled off
 - e. Vertical Offset: 0.00
 - f. Rotation Mode: Absolute

🔏 Place Node	_	×
Feature		*
Feature Definition	Headwall Straight 30	\sim
Name Prefix	HW1	
Elevation		*
Elevation is the Invert		
Elevation	815.14	
Vertical Offset	0.00	
Rotation		*
Rotation Mode	Absolute	\sim
Rotation	N90°00'00.0"E	
Cross Section from Sur	face	*
Only Include Contributing Slopes		
Maximum Offset	0.00	

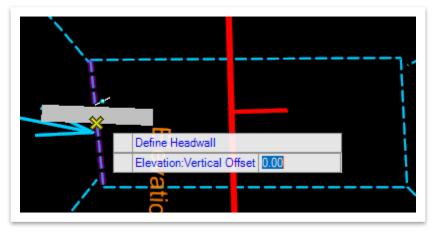




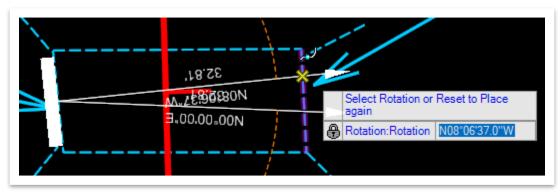
9. Notice the cursor prompt: **Select Reference Element For Node elevation**. Select the terrain boundary.



10.Next, locate the **midpoint** on upstream side of the box culvert and **left** click to accept the initial headwall (node) placement.



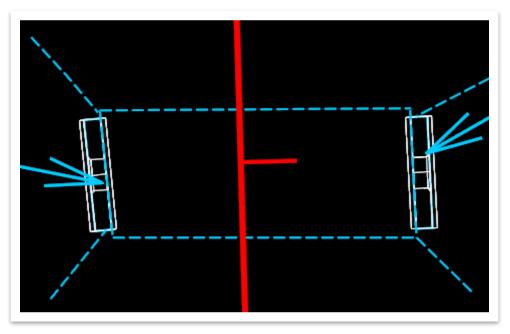
11. Left click to accept the **Absolute** rotation mode and then rotate the headwall to align with the box culvert centerline, as shown below. Once rotated, left click to accept final placement. **Note:** A rotation of **N08°06'37.0"W** was used below.







12. Repeat Steps 10-11 to place another headwall (node) at the **midpoint** on the other end of the box culvert and then open the Element Selection tool to clear the tool. **Note:** A rotation of **S05°06'44.8''E** was used below.



13. Now that the nodes are placed, we need to connect them with conduit. Open the **Place Conduit** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Layout >> Layout**).

Place Place Insert Node Nodes Node	UU	≪ Place Lateral ☞ Place Gutter ▲ Place Catchment	 Place Pond Place Low Impact Develo
		La	ayout

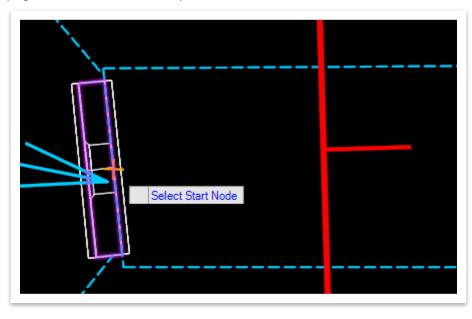




- 14. Within the **Place Link Between Nodes** dialog box, select the following settings and leave the others as default.
 - a. Feature Definition: RCBC Ex (Conduit >> StormWater >> Culvert Pipes >> Existing)
 - b. Name Prefix: RCBC Ex
 - c. **Description:** 12x4 (If no options appear in the drop-down, close ORD and re-open the file.)

🄏 Place Link Betw	– 🗆	×
Curve Variab	les	*
Pull	0.03	
Segment Length	2.44	
Parameters		*
Slope	0.00%	
Feature		*
Feature Definition	RCBC Ex	\sim
Name Prefix	RCBC Ex	
Туре	Conduit Catalog	
Description	12x4	\sim

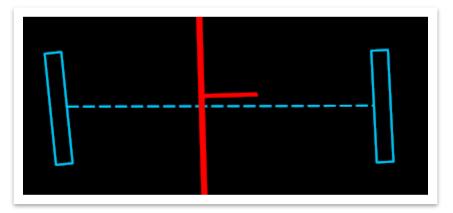
15. Notice the cursor prompt: **Select Start Node**. Select the **upstream** headwall (higher elevation 482.97').







16. Then, select the downstream headwall (lower elevation 482.85') to place the conduit and right click to clear the tool. When the conduit is placed, the width (wall) of the box culvert, represented by double lines, is shown within the 3D reference file. Go ahead and turn off both the Utility Model – Box Culvert.dgn, Default-3D and Survey Model – Box Culvert.dgn reference files. You should now only see the 2D headwalls and conduit, as shown below.



17. Within the **Explorer**, open the **Drainage and Utilities Model** tab and notice that the **nodes** and **conduit** have been added. **Note:** If the nodes are not showing, click the **Refresh** icon under the **Drainage and Utilities Model** header. If the nodes still do not show, close and re-open the **Explorer**.

🖯 Drainage and Utilities Model	*
🕐 🍥 🔎	
Search	₽₽≈
 	
🔺 🧼 Utility Model - Box Culvert.dgn , Default	
🔺 🧼 Nodes	
▷ 🧼 HW1	
▷ 🧼 HW2	
 Conduits 	
RCBC Ex	
🔶 Drainage Area	
🖽 Profile Runs	





- 18. Now, let's verify the box culvert invert elevations for each headwall and make sure they match the surveyed elevations. Open the **Properties** window (if not already opened) and then select **HW1** in plan view using the **Element Selection** tool. Under the **Utility** header, update your data as indicated below. **Note:** The key value is the **Invert Elevation**, as the other values will ultimately have no impact on the display of the box culvert in profile view.
 - a. Elevation is the Invert: False
 - b. Vertical Offset: Automatically populates
 - c. **Ground Elevation:** Automatically populates (**3.33**' higher than the invert) due to the **Elevation is the Invert** setting
 - d. **Invert Elevation:** Key-in **482.97**, which will match the upstream invert label in the survey file

Properties		🔺 🕆 🗙
▲ 🖧 Elements (1)		
Node: HW1		
General		*
Geometry		*
Utility		*
Elevation is the Invert	False	
Vertical Offset	0.13'	
Ground Elevation	486.30	
Invert Elevation	482.97	

19. Repeat the same process for **HW2**, except set the **Invert Elevation** to **482.85**, which will match the <u>downstream</u> invert label in the survey file.

Utility		^
Elevation is the Invert	False	
Vertical Offset	1.57	
Ground Elevation	486.18	
Invert Elevation	482.85	





20. Next, let's review the **Utility Properties** for each **HW** and confirm that the **Invert Elevations** are shown correctly. Right click on **HW1** and select **Utility Properties**.

🖯 Drainage and Utilities Me	odel 🔺
🔇 🥥 🔎 📑	
Search	<u> </u>
Drainage and Utilities N	lodel
🔺 🧼 Utility Model - Box (Culvert.dgn , Default
🔺 🧼 Nodes	
▶ 🔶 HW1	
▷ 🧼 HW2	🗙 Delete
Conduits	💼 Utility Properties
🔶 Drainage Area	Rename
E Profile Runs	💖 Hydraulic Run From Node
	👏 Report
	🛋 Fit To View

21. Notice that the correct Elevation (Invert) (ft) is shown under Drainage >> Physical. Go ahead and also confirm that HW2 shows an equilvalent value of 482.85. Note: If the top of your window differs, (header, HW1 field) you can ignore. That information does not always sync correctly with the selected structure. A defect has been logged with Bentley and should be addressed in a future software release. Also, the order of categories (e.g. Inflow (Wet), Physical, etc) may vary on your screen.

4	Properties - Headwall - HW	1 –		×
Utili	ities Drainage			
H	W1	~ ⊙	75%	~
1	🔍 🔹 🤍 🛨 🔲 Add to Selection			
<sł< th=""><th>now All></th><th></th><th></th><th>v 🕈</th></sł<>	now All>			v 🕈
Pro	perty Search		~	ہ م
~	Inflow (Wet)			^
	Inflow (Wet) Collection	<colle< td=""><td>ction: 0 item</td><td>is></td></colle<>	ction: 0 item	is>
\sim	Physical			
	Elevation (Ground) (ft)	486.3	0	
	Elevation (Invert) (ft)	482.9	7	
	Has Cross Section?	False		





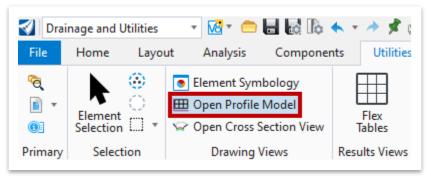
22. Now, open the **RCBC Ex** (conduit) **Utility Properties**. Under **Drainage** >> **Physical**, make sure that the **Set Invert to Start?** and **Set Invert to Stop?** fields are both **True**. This will make the box culvert inverts (upstream and downstream) match the headwalls. Close the **Utility Properties** window once you are done.

Number of Barrels	1
Manning's n	0.013
Use Local Conduit Description?	False
Conduit Description	Box - 0.00 x 0.00 ft
Set Invert to Start?	True
Invert (Start) (ft)	482.9 ⁷
Set Invert to Stop?	True
Invert (Stop) (ft)	482.85
Has User Defined Length?	False

23. If you had **two or more** box culverts, you would enter the applicable number in the **Number of Barrels** field within the **Utility Properties**.

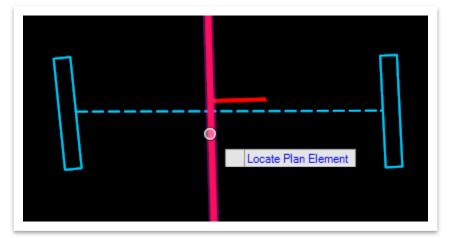


- 24. Next, we need to profile the box culvert. Go ahead and open the Alignment Box Culvert.dgn file and attach the Utility Model Box Culvert.dgn reference file. Note: The Box Culvert profile would normally be part of the existing profile within the overall 2D survey alignment file but has been separated out for the purpose of training.
- 25. Open the **Open Profile Model** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Utilities View >> Drawing Views**).

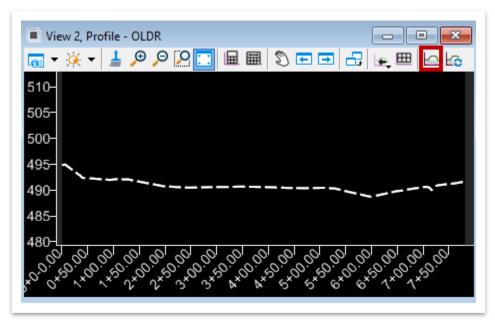




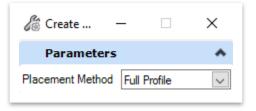
26. Notice the cursor prompt: Locate Plan element. Select the red centerline.



27. Then, open **View 2** and left click anywhere within that view. You should see the existing profile, as shown below. Within the **Profile** view, select the **Create 3d Cut** tool.



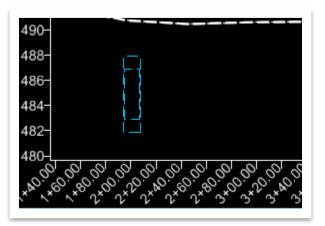
28. Within the **Create 3d Cut** dialog box, select the **Full Profile** placement method this time.







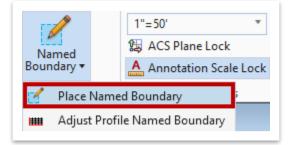
29. Left click within the profile window to accept. Zoom in and notice that the box culvert is now displayed at approximate Station **2+00.00**.



30. If additional edits are made to the inverts, use the **Refresh 3d Cut** tool within the profile view to update the box culvert.



31. As a reminder, in order to place annotation, we need to create a profile named boundary. Open the **Place Named Boundary** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Drawing Production >> Named Boundaries >> Named Boundary**).



32. Make sure that the **Civil Profile** option is toggled on. Select **Profile 50H 5V Scale** for the Drawing Seed.

🔏 Place Named Boundary	Civil Profile	_		×
	A 🖓 🔳 🕅 ,	^ 🛃 🗖		
Drawing Seed:	Profile 50H 5V Scale		-	
Detail Scale:	1"=50'		-	





- 33. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner of the drawing window: **Identify Profile View**. Left click anywhere within **View 2**.
- 34. Use the grey arrows to lock the **Start** and **Stop Location** to the profile extents so that the entire profile is accounted for. Key-in **Profile Box Culvert** for both the **Named Boundary** name and the **Group** name. Leave the other default values asis and make sure that the **Create Drawing** option is toggled on at the bottom.

🔏 Place Named Boundary	/ Civil Profile	-	×
	R ₽ <u>m</u> () / [/ 🗆)	1
Drawing Seed:	Profile 50H 5V Scale		-
Detail Scale:	1"=50'		-
Name:	Profile - Box Culvert		
Description:			
Method:	Station Limits		-
Group:	(New)		-
Name:	Profile - Box Culvert		
Description:			
Start Location:	0+00.00		◀
Stop Location:	7+81.90		▶
Length:	1200.000000		00 [101702
Vertical Exaggeration:	10.000000		
Available Profile Height:	100.000000		00 [1111]
Top Clearance:	0.500000		
Bottom Clearance:	0.500000		
Elevation Datum Spacing:	5.000000		
Station Datum Spacing:	100.000000		
Profile Shifts:	Datum Stations		•
	Use Terrains		
	Use Active Vertical		
	Whole Conduits Only		
	Create Drawing		
	Show Dialog		





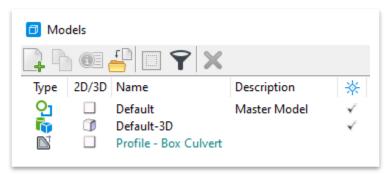
35. Left click anywhere within View 2 **three** times. Zoom out and you should see **one** profile named boundary drawn into the file, represented by a white border. The **Create Drawing** window will appear automatically after creating the named boundary, since we toggled it on in the previous step. Click **OK** to accept all default settings.

Create Drawing	×
Mod	e: Profile 🔻
Nam	e: Profile - Box Culvert
One Sheet Per Dg	n:
Drawing Seed:	Profile 50H 5V Scale 🔹
View Type:	Civil Profile
Discipline:	Civil
Purpose:	Elevation View
	Drawing Model
Seed Model:	TDOT Profile 50H 5V.dgnlib, Profile 50H 5
Filename:	(Active File)
A	1"=50' ~
Annotation Group:	Profile Grid 5V
	Sheet Model
Seed Model:	TDOT Profile 50H 5V.dgnlib, Profile 50H 5
Filename:	(Active File) 😑 📮
Sheets:	(New) 🔻
<u>A</u>	Full Size 1 = 1
Drawing Boundary:	Full Size 1 = 1 • Profile 50H 5V Scale •
Detail Scale :	1"=50' (By Named Boundary) 🔹
	🗌 Add To Sheet Index 🛛 🕼
	Make Sheet Coincident
	☑ Open Model
	<u>O</u> K Cancel

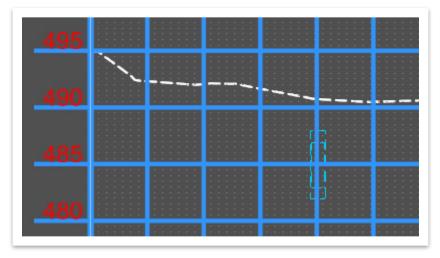




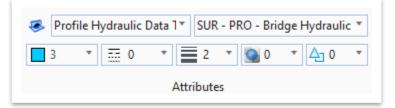
36. Once again, the software should open to the <u>one</u> sheet model in View 1, which is only needed when printing sheets. Let's go ahead and delete the sheet model. Open the Models tool (Drainage and Utilities >> Home >> Primary) and double click on the Profile – Box Culvert <u>drawing</u> model to activate it. Then, right click on the <u>sheet</u> model and select Delete. You should see the following three models once completed.



37. Zoom in to the box culvert and notice the profile grid, stations and elevations. We will next add the applicable annotation, like in the previous exercises.



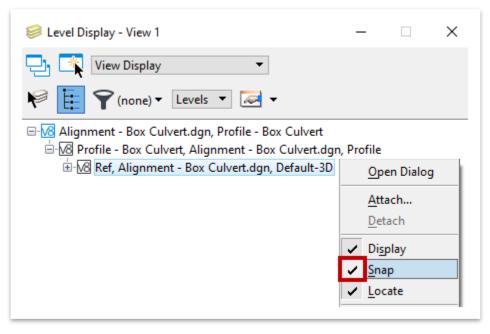
38. Before we add the annotation, select the **Profile Hydraulic Data Text** element template (**Survey >> Annotation >> Profiles >> Bridges**).







39. Now, open the Level Display and right click on Ref, Alignment - Box Culvert .dgn, Default-3D and toggle the Snap option on. This will allow us to snap to the box culvert when placing annotation. Close the Level Display once you are done.



- 40. Next, open the **Place Label** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Drawing Production** >> **Notes**). Within the **Place Label Settings** dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Select the leader icon at the top
 - b. Type: Text Favorite
 - c. Favorite Name: Survey Box Culvert Data
 - d. Dimension Style: SUR PRO Hydraulic Data

🔏 Place Label Setting	js —		×
Type:	Text Favorite	~	
Favorite Name:	Survey Box Culvert	Data	
Dimension Style:	SUR - PRO - Hydra	ulic D	رك
Label Rotation:	Horizontal	¥	
Start At:	Terminator	~	
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto	~	

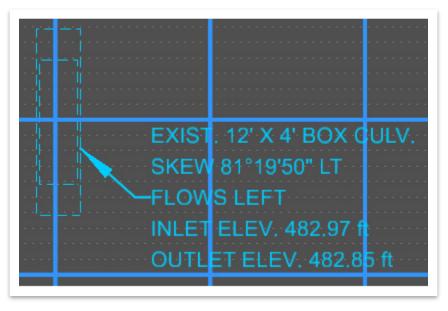




41. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner: **Select Point Location**. Zoom in and snap to the outer wall of the box culvert.



42. Double click within the label to open the **Text Editor** and update the data fields with the applicable survey information, as shown below. **Note:** The data fields have been turned off.



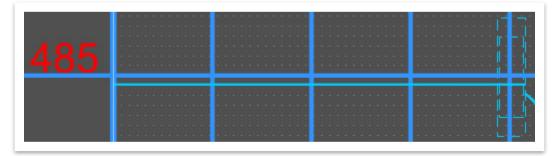




43. Now, let's add the High Water elevation label to the profile using a similar procedure. First, however, we must add the physical line that will be labeled. Select the Water Level Line element template (Survey >> Annotation >> Profiles >> Bridges).



44. Open the **Place SmartLine** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Drawing >> Placement**) and draw a **horizontal line** across the profile at the applicable elevation (**484.55**') to represent **High Water** (HW). For this exercise, draw the line from the Y-axis to the right outer wall. **Note:** This elevation can be obtained in plan view and is typically obtained from conversations with residents in the given area.



45. Repeat the previous step to place the **Normal Water** (NW) line at the applicable elevation (**483.39**').

485		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
		naaaaaaaaa coosaaaaa iy
		International Action of the In
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	





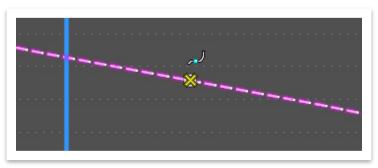
46. Next, let's label the two lines that were just placed. Select the **Water Level - High Text** element template (**Survey >> Annotation >> Profiles >> Bridges**).



- 47. Open the **Place Label** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Drawing Production >> Notes**). Within the **Place Label Settings** dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Select the **leader** icon at the top
 - b. Type: Cell
 - c. **Cell Name:** WLH (Loads automatically based on the element template selected in the previous step)
 - d. Dimension Style: SUR PRO Hydraulic Data

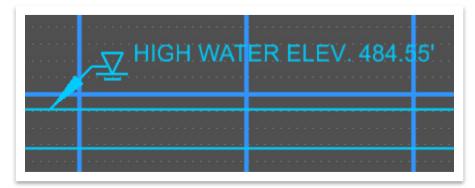
🔏 Place Label Setting	js —		×
Type:	Cell	~	
Cell Name:	WLH	-	
Dimension Style:	👽 SUR - PRO - Hydra	ulic D 🕻	<u>)</u> ,
Label Rotation:	Horizontal	~	
Start At:	Terminator	~	
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto	~	

48. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner: **Identify Element or DataPoint**. Select the road centerline profile.

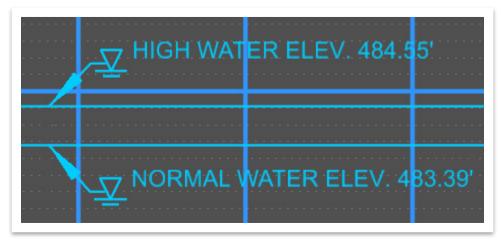




49. Notice the next prompt in the lower left corner: **Select Point Location**. Snap to the **High Water** (HW) line and place the label. Notice that the elevation fills in automatically. **Note:** You could also select the **non-leader** option and place the symbol/label right on the line itself. There is a defect logged with Bentley regarding the origin point of the cell. You'll notice it is offset from the bottom of the triangle.



50. Repeat Steps 45-48 to place the **Normal Water** line label. This time select the **Water Level - Normal Text** element template (**Survey >> Annotation >> Profiles >> Bridges**) and you'll notice that the applicable cell (**WLN**) automatically links.





In ORD, **box culverts** display a generic wall thickness of **12**" for most sizes. The thickness of the wall is displayed in the profile. If the existing structure is a 3-sided slab bridge, the model will still be built as a 4-sided box culvert with the appropriate dimensions and a profile will be displayed. A surveyor might pick up an invert elevation at the footer of the structure, which represents the bottom of the footer slab.

If the additional footer invert elevation is provided, the linework shall be drawn manually for the footer.

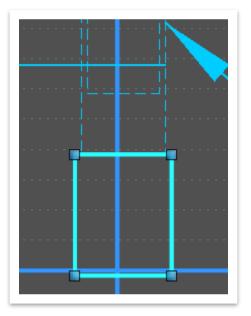




51. For this exercise, let's draw a **16'** wide by **2'** deep footer for representation purposes in the profile. First, select the **Footer Box Culvert** element template (**Survey >> Annotation >> Profiles >> Bridges**).



52. Open the **Place SmartLine** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Drawing >> Placement**) and draw the footer so that it is aligned with the center of the bottom slab.







53. Next, select the **Profile Hydraulic Data Text** element template once again (Survey >> Annotation >> Profiles >> Bridges) and then open the **Place Note** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Drawing Production >> Notes**) and we will create a manual label for the footer. Within the **Place Note** dialog box, select the **SUR** -**PRO - Hydraulic Data** dimension style and leave the other settings as-is.

🔏 Place Note	- 🗆 X
	A A
Dimension Style:	🕅 SUR - PRO - H 🔻 📎 👜
Text <u>R</u> otation:	Horizontal 🔻
Location:	Automatic 🔻
<u>S</u> tart At:	Terminator 🔹
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto 🔻

54. Within the **Text Editor**, select the **Extra Small - Left Top** text style (highlighted below). Notice that the text size and orientation updated automatically. Key-in **INVERT @ FOOTER 480.97'**, which is the correct elevation for this exercise.

A Text Editor		_		×
👽 Extra Small - Left Top 🛛 🗸 👻	🖻 🏅	5) • 7	- r	(x) =
INVERT @ FOOTER 4	80.97'	• • •		1 I I

55. Once the Note is placed, zoom out and review the box culvert profile.

	ER ELEV. 484.9	5'			
	VATER ELEV. 4	33.39'		KIST. 12' X 4' E KEV 81°19'50" LOWS LEFT	OX CULV. LT 2.97 (
INVE	RT @ FOOTER	480.97'	O	UTLET ELEV.	482.85 ft





6.5 Lecture: Flood Plain Sections

A flood plain section **perpendicular** to the flood flow should be taken upstream and downstream at a minimum, each looking downstream in the direction of flow. Each section should be a distance from the proposed structure equal to **four times the typical distance between top of banks** or a minimum of **50** feet. The flood plain section should extend across the flood plain to the extreme high water extents and tie in accurately with the survey centerline.

6.5.1 Exercise: Flood Plain Section Creation – Survey Text Files

In this exercise, we will create a **downstream** flood plain section (XS) for a proposed crossing utilizing the XS lines loaded through the **survey text files**. This process would also be used to create an upstream flood plain section or any other XS location. **Note:** The flood plain section plan data would normally be part of the overall 3D survey file but has been separated out for the purpose of training. Exercise 6.5.2 will discuss the procedure on how to create the sections if the XS lines are not imported via text files.

1. Create a new file and name it **Survey Model – FPS**. Select the **TDOTSeed3D.dgn** and click **Save**.

File name:	Survey Model - FPS 🗸 🗸	Save
Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) <	Cancel
Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co	Browse

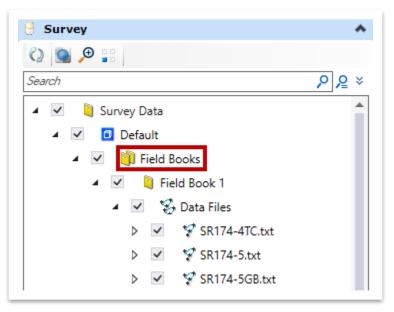
Go ahead and switch back to the Survey workflow in the upper left corner. Next, we need to import the stream survey data. Open File Explorer and browse to the class files within the SURVEY_Training workset dgn subfolder. Select the SR174-1.txt through SR174-22.txt ASCII text files and drag and drop them into the Field Books folder within the Explorer. Duplicate names of features should be found in the sample data. Select Next Name and then click Apply All.

🖳 Duplicate P	oint	Feature fo	und		_	×
Apply Apply		Cancel				
Option Differen	ces					
◯ Overwrite ◯ Skip		S1397				
Rename						
Next Name	Э	Prefix				
		Suffix				
	\checkmark	Counter	1			

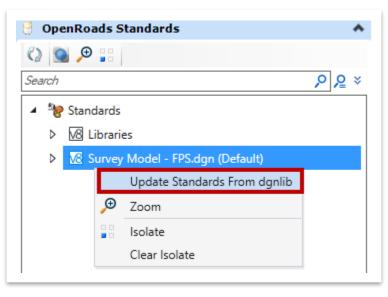




3. Expand the **Field Books** folder and notice the text files have been added. **Note:** Your text file order may vary from what is shown below.



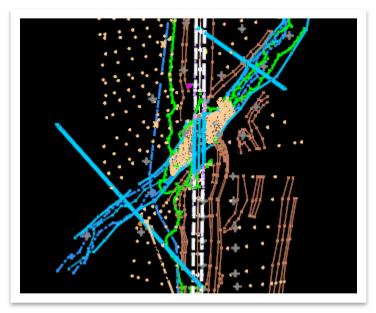
4. As a reminder, the first thing we need to do after import is update the dgnlib standards so that <u>all</u> survey locators are the correct scale. There is a quirk in the software, so it is good practice to perform this step after any survey text file import. Expand the OpenRoads Standards tab within Explorer. Right click on the active file (Survey Model – FPS.dgn) and select Update Standards From dgnlib. Give the software a minute to process.







5. Click **Fit View** and then zoom in to the area shown below. There are a couple of errors in the raw field data, which we will ignore for the purpose of this exercise.



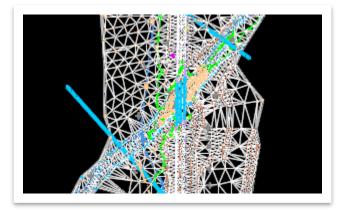
6. Now we need to create a **surface**. Within the **Explorer**, go back to the **Survey** tab and right click on **Field Book 1** and select **Create Terrain Model**.

🖯 Survey			^
🔇 🧕 🗩 📑			
Search			א ⊴∕ כ∕
🔺 🗹 🏮 Survey Data			
🔺 🗹 🧧 Default			
🔺 🗹 🎁 Field Books			
Þ 🔽 🛛 🍳 Field Bo	ok 1		
🗸 🛛 🍾 Filters		Create Adjustment	
🗸 💿 Multimedia		Create Terrain Model	
		Export To	- F
		Delete	
		Import	- F
	01	Properties	
	€	Zoom	
	00	Isolate	
		Clear Isolate	





7. Notice the white triangulated terrain that is created.



8. Select the border of the triangulated terrain and then open the **Properties** in the heads-up display. Change the **Feature Definition** to **Survey Existing Ground** and then turn the **Triangles** off so we can see the survey data easier.

Name	Terrain Model: Field Book
Number of Points	6,255
Number of Point Feat	
Number of Islands	0
Number of Voids	0
Number of Features	3,427
Number of Contours	0
Number of Breaklines	s 158
Number of Triangles	11,478
Edge Method	Max Edge Length
Length	100.00'
Major Contours	Off
Minor Contours	Off
Minor Contours Triangles	Off Off
Minor Contours Triangles Spots	Off Off Off
Minor Contours Triangles Spots Flow Arrows	Off Off Off Off
Minor Contours Triangles Spots Flow Arrows Low Points	Off Off Off Off Off
Minor Contours Triangles Spots Flow Arrows	Off Off Off Off
Minor Contours Triangles Spots Flow Arrows Low Points	Off Off Off Off Off
Minor Contours Triangles Spots Flow Arrows Low Points High Points	Off Off Off Off Off Off Off
Minor Contours Triangles Spots Flow Arrows Low Points High Points Breaklines	Off Off Off Off Off Off Off
Minor Contours Triangles Spots Flow Arrows Low Points High Points Breaklines Boundary	Off Off Off Off Off Off Off Off Off
Minor Contours Triangles Spots Flow Arrows Low Points High Points Breaklines Boundary Imported Contours Islands Holes	Off Off Off Off Off Off Off Off On Off
Minor Contours Triangles Spots Flow Arrows Low Points High Points Breaklines Boundary Imported Contours Islands	Off Off Off Off Off Off Off Off Off Off
Minor Contours Triangles Spots Flow Arrows Low Points High Points Breaklines Boundary Imported Contours Islands Holes	Off Off Off Off Off Off Off Off Off Off
Minor Contours Triangles Spots Flow Arrows Low Points High Points Breaklines Boundary Imported Contours Islands Holes Voids	Off Off Off Off Off Off Off Off Off Off

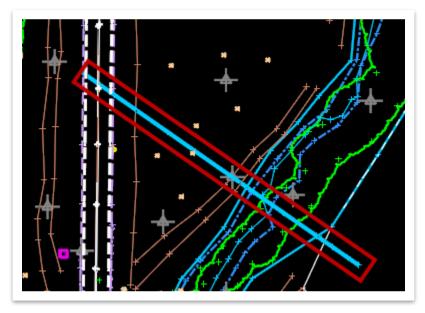




9. Now that the survey field data has been imported and the surface has been created, we need to create the flood plain sections, which must be done in a 2D file. Let's create a new file and name it Alignment – FPS. Select the TDOTSeed2D .dgn and click Save. Note: The flood plain section would normally be a profile model within the overall 2D survey alignment file but has been separated out for the purpose of training.

File name:	Aignment - FPS ~	Save
Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) $\qquad \qquad \checkmark$	Cancel
Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co	Browse

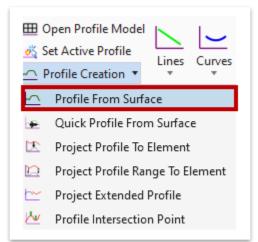
- 10. Attach the **Survey Model FPS.dgn** as a reference file using the **Coincident World** attachment method. Then, click **Fit View** and set the terrain to **active**.
- 11. Locate the southernmost stream crossing once again and zoom in to the flood plain XS line on the downstream side (highlighted below). Based on the existing terrain, the stream is flowing in a southwest to northeast direction. Open the Copy tool (Survey >> Drawing >> Manipulate) and make a copy of the XS line so that it is live in the active file.



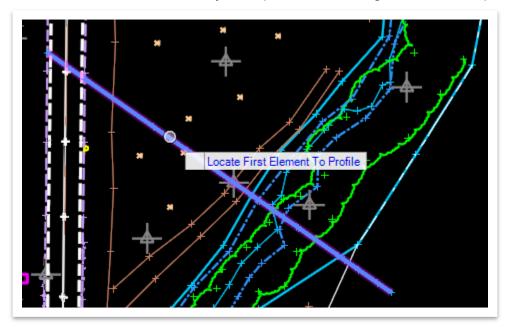




12. Next, open the **Profile From Surface** tool (**Survey >> Geometry >> Vertical >> Profile Creation**).



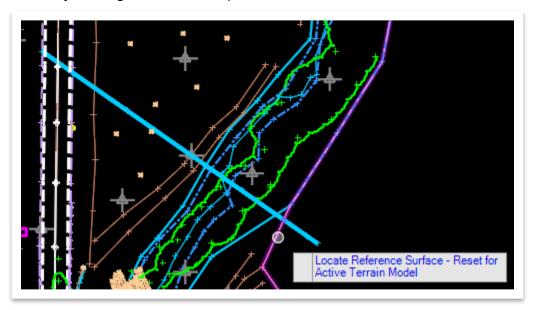
13. Notice the cursor prompt: **Locate First Element To Profile**. Select the downstream XS line that was just copied and then right click to complete.







14. Notice the next cursor prompt: **Locate Reference Surface**. Left click on the terrain boundary and right-click to complete.



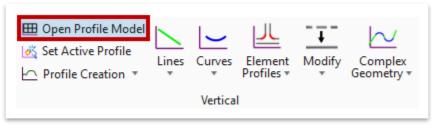
- 15. Within the **Profile From Surface** dialog box, select the following settings and then left click to accept the prompts. **Note:** The start station (0+00.00) for the surveyed XS line is on the <u>right</u> side, viewing in the direction of flow. The end station is 2+48.15 on the left side.
 - a. Point Selection: All
 - b. Profile Adjustment: None
 - c. Draping Option: Triangles
 - d. Horizontal Offsets: 0.00 (Checkmark to lock)
 - e. Vertical Offsets: 0.00 (Checkmark to lock)
 - f. Lock To Start: Checkmark
 - g. Start Distance: 0+00.00
 - h. Lock To End: Checkmark
 - i. End Distance: 2+48.15
 - j. Feature Definition: EX Bank Line - Top (Linear >> Profiles >> Natural Drainage >> Existing)
 - k. Name: EX Bank Line Top

🄏 Profile From	- 🗆 ×
Parameters	*
Point Selection	All
Profile Adjustment	None 🗸
Draping Option	Triangles 🗸
Horizontal Offsets	0.00
Vertical Offsets	0.00
Range	*
Lock To Start	\checkmark
Start Distance	0+00.00
Lock To End	\checkmark
End Distance	2+48.15
Feature	*
Feature Definition	EX Bank Line - Top 🗸
Name	EX Bank Line - Top

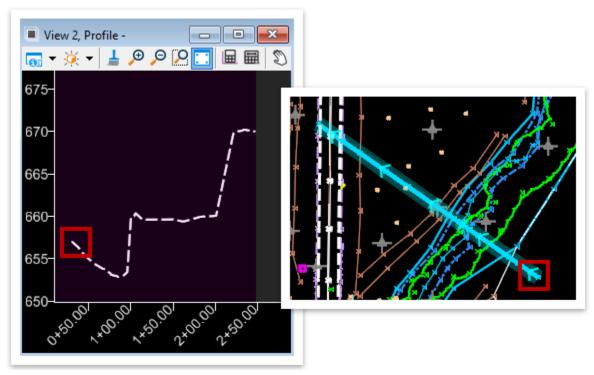




16. It will look like nothing happened, but a profile was created in the background. Go ahead and open the **Open Profile Model** tool (**Survey >> Geometry >> Vertical**). Select the copied XS line and then open **View 2** and left click anywhere within the drawing window.



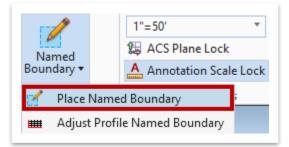
17. You should see a profile line along the downstream XS location. The other thing to notice is that when the profile view is active, the downstream XS line is highlighted in the plan view. The **arrows** indicate the **station direction** (right to left), which means the profile is looking upstream. **Note:** The flood plain sections should typically be cut from left to right, looking downstream in the direction of flow. The reason that the profile does not start at Station 0+00.00 is that the terrain does not extend out that far.







18. As a reminder, in order to place annotation, we need to create a profile named boundary. Open the Place Named Boundary tool (Survey >> Drawing Production >> Named Boundaries >> Named Boundary).



19. Make sure that the **Civil Profile** option is toggled on. Select **Profile 50H 5V Scale** for the Drawing Seed.

Place Named Boundary Civil Profile	\times
R 🖓 📠 🥸 🖍 🚅 🎞	
Drawing Seed: Profile 50H 5V Scale -	
Detail Scale: 1"=50' -	

20. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner of the drawing window: **Identify Profile View**. Left click anywhere within **View 2**.





- 21. Edit the parameters below and leave all other default values as-is. Make sure that the **Create Drawing** option is toggled on at the bottom.
 - a. Name: FPS Downstream
 - b. **Start Location:** 0+00.00 (Use the grey arrow to lock to Start but notice it is 0+30.28 since the profile doesn't start until then. Manually key-in 0+00.00).
 - c. Stop Location: 2+48.15 (Use the grey arrow to lock to Stop)
 - d. Length: 250.00
 - e. Available Profile Height: 25.00

🔏 Place Named Boundary	Civil Profile —	×
	A 🖓 🔳 🕲 🖌 🜈 🗖 💢	
Drawing Seed:	Profile 50H 5V Scale 👻	
Detail Scale:	1"=50' 🗸	
Name:	FPS - Downstream	
Description:		
Method:	Station Limits 🔹	
Group:	(New) 👻	
Name:	FPS - Downstream	
Description:		
Start Location:	0+00.00	◀
Stop Location:	2+48.15	▶
Length:	250.00000	
Vertical Exaggeration:	10.000000	
Available Profile Height:	25.00000	• •
Top Clearance:	0.500000	
Bottom Clearance:	0.500000	
Elevation Datum Spacing:	5.000000	
Station Datum Spacing:	100.000000	
Profile Shifts:	Datum Stations 👻	
	Use Terrains	
	Use Active Vertical	
	Whole Conduits Only	
	Create Drawing	
	Show Dialog	



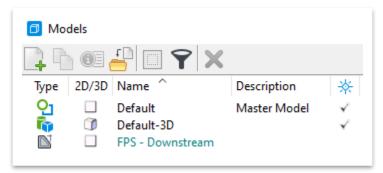
22. Left click anywhere within View 2 **three** times. Zoom out and you should see **one** profile named boundary drawn into the file, represented by a white border. The **Create Drawing** window will appear automatically after creating the named boundary, since we toggled it on in the previous step. Click **OK** to accept all default settings.

Create Drawing		×
Mod]
One Sheet Per Dg		
Drawing Seed:	Profile 50H 5V Scale 🔹	
View Type:	Civil Profile	
Discipline:	Civil	
Purpose:	Elevation View	
	Drawing Model	
Seed Model:	TDOT Profile 50H 5V.dgnlib, Profile 50H 5	
Filename:	(Active File)	4
A	1"=50' 💌	
Annotation Group:	Profile Grid 5V	
	Sheet Model	
Seed Model:	TDOT Profile 50H 5V.dgnlib, Profile 50H 5	
Filename:	(Active File) 😑	4
Sheets:	(New) 🔻	
A	Full Size 1 = 1	
Drawing Boundary:	Profile 50H 5V Scale 🔹	
Detail Scale :	1"=50' 💌	
	🗌 Add To Sheet Index 🛛 🕼	
	Make Sheet Coincident	
	🗹 Open Model	
	<u>O</u> K Cance	4

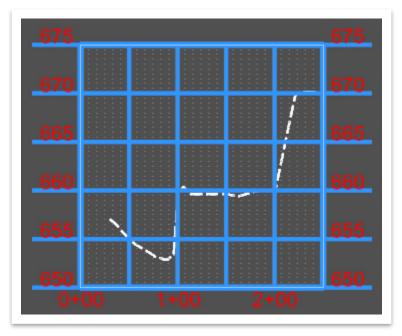




23. Once again, the software should open to the <u>one</u> sheet model in View 1. Let's go ahead and delete the sheet model. Open the Models tool (Survey >> Home >> Primary) and double click on the FPS - Downstream <u>drawing</u> model to activate it. Then, right click on the <u>sheet</u> model and select Delete. You should see the following three models once completed. Close the Models window once you are done.



24. You should see the downstream flood plain section along with the profile grid, stations and elevations. We will next add the applicable annotation, like in the previous exercises.



25. Go ahead and select the **Profile Hydraulic Data Text** element template (**Survey** >> **Annotation** >> **Profiles** >> **Bridges**).







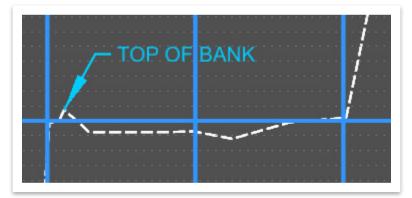
26.Next, open the **Place Note** tool (**Survey >> Drawing Production >> Notes**). Within the **Place Note** dialog box, select the **SUR - PRO - Hydraulic Data** dimension style and leave the other settings as-is.

hace Note	- 🗆 ×
	A A
Dimension Style:	🕅 SUR - PRO - H 🔻 🖻 💩
Text <u>R</u> otation:	Horizontal 🔻
Location:	Automatic 🔹
<u>S</u> tart At:	Terminator 🔹
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto 🔻

27. Within the **Text Editor**, select the **Extra Small - Left Top** text style (highlighted below). Key-in **TOP OF BANK**.



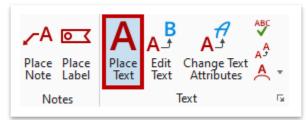
28. Snap to the **Top of Bank** and place the **Note**, as shown below.







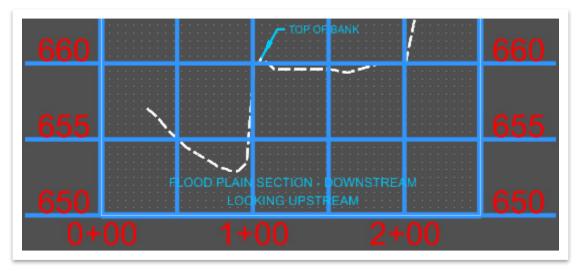
29. Next, open the **Place Text** tool (**Survey >> Drawing Production >> Text**) so we can label the title of this XS. The same element template should still be active.



30. Within the **Text Editor**, select the **Small - Center Center** text style (highlighted below). Key-in **FLOOD PLAIN SECTION – DOWNSTREAM** / **LOOKING UPSTREAM**.



31. Place the text at the bottom of the XS, as shown below, and then right click to clear the label. Close the **Text Editor** once you are done.



32. You can add additional annotation (labels and notes) as necessary, such as the High/Normal Water Elevation labels. Refer to Exercise 6.4.1 (Steps 42-49) for that procedure. Also, as a reminder, if you need to add dimensions, switch to the Drawing workflow to access the tools (Drawing >> Annotate >> Dimensioning). You would use the same dimension style as we have been using (SUR - PRO - Hydraulic Data).





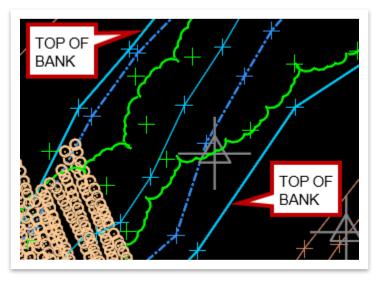
6.5.2 Exercise: Flood Plain Section Creation – Office

In this exercise, we will create a **downstream** flood plain section (XS) for a proposed crossing after creating a XS **chain** in the *office*. This method would be utilized if the flood plain XS lines are not included in the survey text files. The chain will be created from **left** to **right** looking in the direction of flow. We will continue to utilize the same **Alignment – FPS.dgn** file.

1. Switch back to the **Default** model in the lower left corner of the drawing window and close **View 2**, if opened.



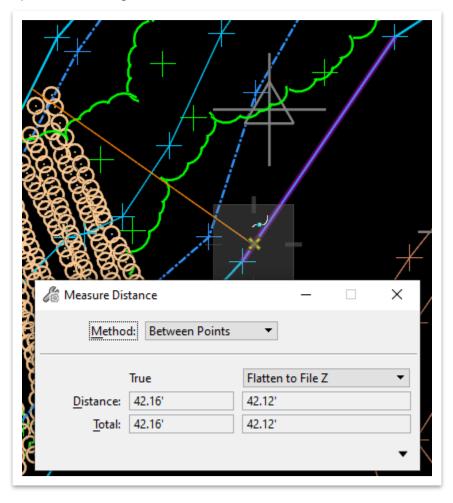
 Zoom in to the downstream side of the stream once again. The top of banks are represented visually by solid light blue lines (Level: SUR - DRG - Bridge Hydraulic Data) on either side if the stream.







 Open the Measure Distance tool (Survey >> Drawing >> Measure) and take a few horizontal width measurements in this general area between top of banks. You should get widths ranging between 40 – 50 feet. Note: The orange line represents a single measurement.







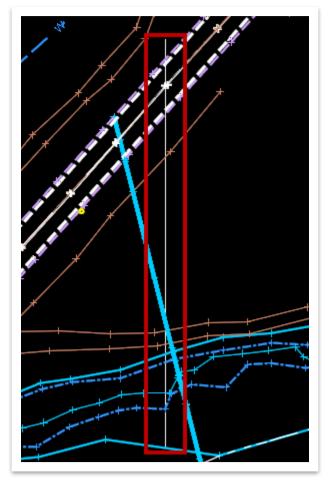
- 4. For this exercise, we will use a 42.5' typical width between top of banks. Based on this, the upstream and downstream XS lines should be located approximately 170' from the existing bridge along the stream centerline (four times the typical width). Go ahead and turn off the following levels in the Survey Model FPS.dgn reference file.
 - SUR CTRL Temporary Points
 - SUR DTM Spot Points Locators
 - SUR VEG Features
 - SUR VEG Features Points Locators
- 5. We will now place the **downstream** XS line. Rotate the view to be along the stream centerline and then measure an approximate straight-line distance of **170**'. The flood plain section will be drawn <u>perpendicular to the stream CL</u>.

C Measure Dis	tance	* //	×	
Metho	d: Between Points	•		1
	True	Flatten to File Z	•	
Distance:	170.00'	170.00'		
<u>T</u> otal:	170.00'	170.00'		
		+		×





6. Open the Place SmartLine tool (Survey >> Drawing >> Placement) and draw the flood plain section (initial perpendicular line) at approximately 170'. Make sure that the line crosses the roadway to the north and extends to the southern top of bank line, as shown below. Note: Ignore the line symbology for now.



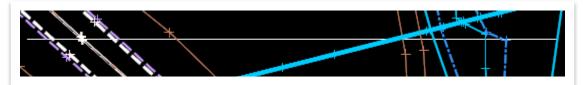
7. Next, select the Bridge Hydraulic Data Text element template (Survey >> Drainage >> Natural >> Existing).







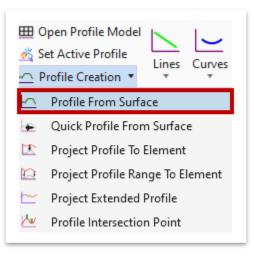
8. Rotate the view along the white line, from left to right, using the 2 Points method.



9. Now, draw a line from **left** to **right** on top of the white line and notice it is on the correct symbology. The section stationing is dependent on the direction in which you draw the line. Regardless of how you created the initial line, this will ensure the direction is correct. Go ahead and delete the white line underneath.



10. To create the flood plain section, we will follow the same procedure shown in the previous exercise. Open the Profile From Surface tool (Survey >> Geometry >> Vertical >> Profile Creation).



11. Notice the cursor prompt: **Locate First Element To Profile**. Select the downstream XS line that was just created and then right click to complete.







12. Notice the next cursor prompt: **Locate Reference Surface**. Left click on the terrain boundary and right-click to complete.



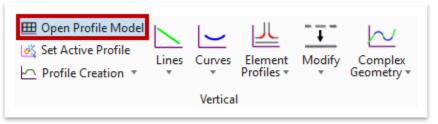
- 13. Within the **Profile From Surface** dialog box, select the following settings and then left click to accept the prompts. **Note:** The start station (0+00.00) for the surveyed XS line is on the <u>left</u> side, viewing in the direction of flow. The end station will vary depending on the length of your XS line.
 - a. Point Selection: All
 - b. Profile Adjustment: None
 - c. Draping Option: Triangles
 - d. Horizontal Offsets: 0.00 (Checkmark to lock)
 - e. Vertical Offsets: 0.00 (Checkmark to lock)
 - f. Lock To Start: Checkmark
 - g. Start Distance: 0+00.00
 - h. Lock To End: Checkmark
 - i. End Distance: 2+46.16
 - j. Feature Definition: EX Bank Line
 Top (Linear >> Profiles >> Natural Drainage >> Existing)
 - k. Name: EX Bank Line Top

🔏 Profile Fro	- 🗆 ×
Parameters	*
Point Selection	All
Profile Adjustment	None 🗸
Draping Option	Triangles 🗸
Horizontal Offsets	0.00
Vertical Offsets	0.00
Range	*
Lock To Start	
Start Distance	0+00.00
Lock To End	\checkmark
End Distance	2+46.16
Feature	*
Feature Definition	EX Bank Line - To
Name	EX Bank Line - Top

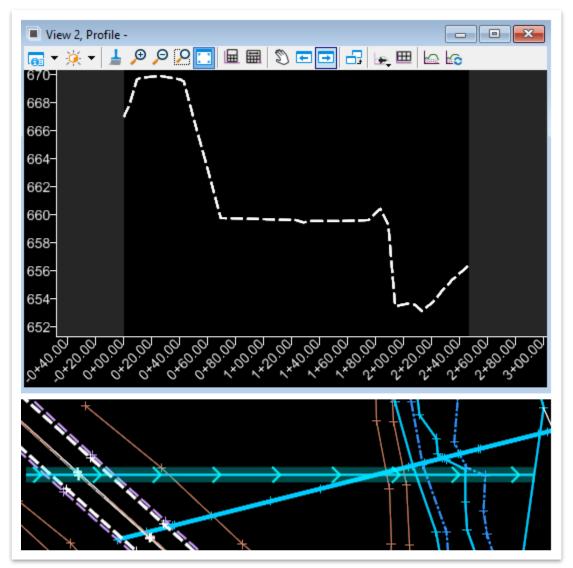




14. It will look like nothing happened, but a profile was created in the background. Go ahead and open the **Open Profile Model** tool (**Survey >> Geometry >> Vertical**). Select the XS line and then open **View 2** and left click anywhere within the drawing window.



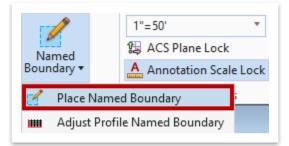
15. You should see a profile line along the downstream XS location. Once again, the **arrows** indicate the **station direction**, which this time is correct (left to right).







16.As a reminder, in order to place annotation, we need to create a profile named boundary. Open the Place Named Boundary tool (Survey >> Drawing Production >> Named Boundaries >> Named Boundary).



17. Make sure that the **Civil Profile** option is toggled on. Select **Profile 50H 5V Scale** for the Drawing Seed.

Place Named Boundary Civil Profile	\times
A 🖓 🏢 🥎 🖌 🛒 🎞	
Drawing Seed: Profile 50H 5V Scale -	
Detail Scale: 1"=50' -	

18. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner of the drawing window: **Identify Profile View**. Left click anywhere within **View 2**.





- 19. Edit the parameters below and leave all other default values as-is. Make sure that the **Create Drawing** option is toggled on at the bottom.
 - a. Name: FPS Downstream-1 (The software will not allow the same named boundary name to be used twice within a given dgn file. Since we are using the same file (and name) from the previous exercise, it will automatically add a -1 to the name after the sheet and drawing models are created. However, for this exercise, go ahead and key-in the -1.)
 - b. Start Location: 0+00.00 (Use the grey arrow to lock to Start)
 - c. **Stop Location:** 2+46.16 (Use the grey arrow to lock to Stop. Your station will vary depending on the length of your XS line).
 - d. Length: 250.00
 - e. Available Profile Height: 25.00

be Pla	ace Named Boundary	Civil Profile –	×
		A 🖓 🔳 🕅 🖍 🗹 🗊	_
	Drawing Seed:	Profile 50H 5V Scale 👻	
	Detail Scale:	1"=50' 🗸]
	Name:	FPS - Downstream-1	
	Description:]
	Method:	Station Limits 🔹]
	Group:	(New) 👻]
	Name:	FPS - Downstream-1	
	Description:		
	Start Location:	0+00.00	◀
	Stop Location:	2+46.16	▶
	Length:	250.000000	ee
Ve	ertical Exaggeration:	10.000000	
Avai	lable Profile Height:	25.000000	oo
	Top Clearance:	0.500000	
	Bottom Clearance:	0.500000	
Elevat	ion Datum Spacing:	5.000000	
Stat	ion Datum Spacing:	100.000000	
	Profile Shifts:	Datum Stations 🔹]
		Use Terrains	
		Use Active Vertical	
		Whole Conduits Only	
		Create Drawing	
		Show Dialog	



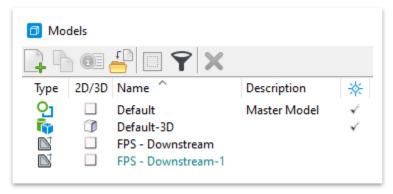
20. Left click anywhere within View 2 **three** times. Zoom out and you should see **one** profile named boundary drawn into the file, represented by a white border. The **Create Drawing** window will appear automatically after creating the named boundary, since we toggled it on in the previous step. Click **OK** to accept all default settings.

🜍 Create Drawing	×
Mod Nam One Sheet Per Dg	e: FPS - Downstream-1
Drawing Seed: View Type: Discipline: Purpose:	Profile 50H 5V Scale ▼ Civil Profile Civil Elevation View
Seed Model: Filename:	Drawing Model TDOT Profile 50H 5V.dgnlib, Profile 50H 5 (Active File) 1"=50' Profile Grid 5V
Seed Model: Filename: Sheets: Drawing Boundary: Detail Scale :	Sheet Model TDOT Profile 50H 5V.dgnlib, Profile 50H 5 (Active File) (New) Full Size 1 = 1 Profile 50H 5V Scale 1"=50' (By Named Boundary) Add To Sheet Index Make Sheet Coincident
	Open Model OK Cancel

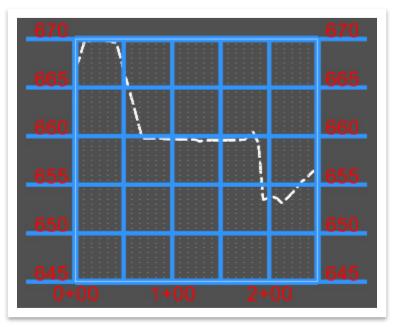




21. Once again, the software should open to the <u>one</u> sheet model in View 1. Let's go ahead and delete the sheet model. Open the Models tool (Survey >> Home >> Primary) and double click on the FPS – Downstream-1 <u>drawing</u> model to activate it. Then, right click on the <u>sheet</u> model and select Delete. You should see the following four models once completed. Close the Models window once you are done. Note: This is essentially how you would create multiple sections/profiles in a single file along different alignments.



22. You should see the downstream flood plain section along with the profile grid, stations and elevations. For this exercise, we will not add any annotation. Refer to the previous exercises if you want to place High/Normal Water elevations, notes or section titles, since the process is the same.







6.6 Lecture: Stream Profile

Stream profiles provide the **water elevation** along a stream. The requirements per Section 3.11.2 within the <u>TDOT Survey Manual</u> are as follows:

- The DTM shall be generated such that a stream bed, water surface and top of one bank profile can be developed for a distance equal to **six** times the typical distance between top of banks or a minimum of **50** feet, upstream and downstream of the proposed structure.
- DTM shots shall be taken at regular intervals (depending on the size and uniformity of the stream) and at any point the water velocity changes.
- The type of material in the stream bed shall be described and it shall be noted if banks are subject to scour.
- Depth-finders may be used on major streams and rivers.
- The top of bank data is required only for those streams with well-defined stream channels.

6.6.1 Exercise: Stream Profile

In this exercise, we will create a profile of the existing stream centerline along the creek bed and produce a single drawing model to annotate, like in the previous exercises. We will continue to utilize the same **Alignment – FPS.dgn** file.

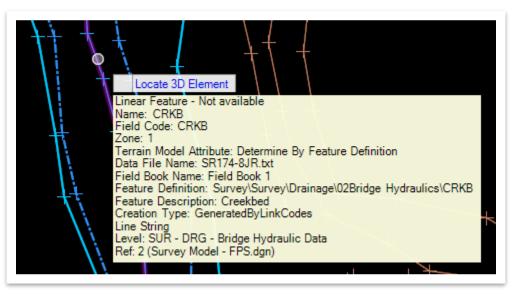
- Switch to the OpenRoads Modeling workflow in the upper left corner. Then, select the Default model in the lower left corner of the drawing window and close View 2, if opened.
- We need to first create 3D elements from the survey data that is referenced into the file. Open the Plan By 3D Element tool (OpenRoads Modeling >> Model Detailing >> 3D Tools >> 3D Elements). Select the Survey Existing Creekbed Centerline feature definition within the Alignment folder and leave the Name asis.

Feature Feature Definition Survey Existing Creekbed Centerline	
Feature Definition Survey Existing Creekbed Centerline	^
	\sim
Name "Name of Stream"	

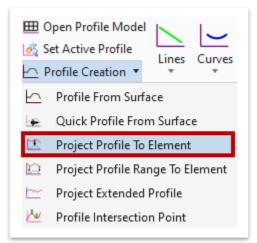




3. Notice the cursor prompt: **Locate 3D Element**. Select the creekbed centerline (**CRKB**), as shown below. It will seem like nothing happens once you select the line.



 Next, we need to project the top of bank onto the creekbed. Open the Project Profile To Element tool (OpenRoads Modeling >> Geometry >> Vertical >> Profile Creation).



5. Within the **Place Projected Profile** dialog box, select the **EX Bank Line - Top** feature definition (Linear >> **Profiles >> Natural Drainage >> Existing**).

	×
	*
(Bank Line -	Top 🗸
(Bank Line -	Тор
	(Bank Line - (Bank Line -

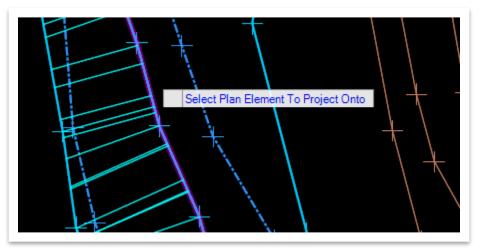




6. Notice the cursor prompt: **Select Element To Project**. Select the **top of the bank** line located on the **left** side of the stream, as shown below.



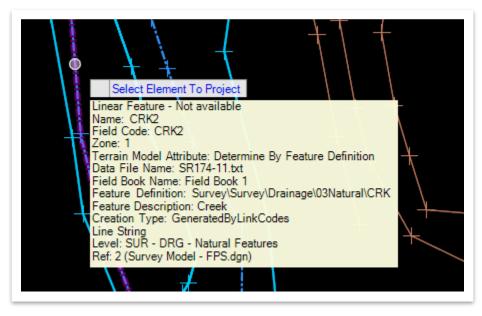
7. Notice the next cursor prompt: **Select Plan Element To Project Onto**. Select the creekbed centerline, as shown below. Once again, prior to selecting the centerline, notice the perpendicular light blue lines indicating the projection region.



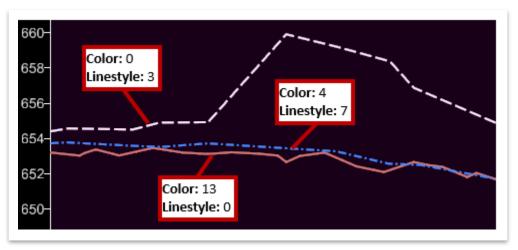




 Repeat Steps 5-7 to project the top of water onto the creekbed. This time select the EX Water Line - Top feature definition (Linear >> Profiles >> Natural Drainage >> Existing).



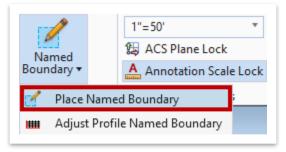
- Next, we will visualize the projection in profile view. Open the Open Profile Model tool (OpenRoads Modeling >> Geometry >> Vertical). Select the creekbed centerline and then open View 2 and click anywhere within the drawing window.
- 10. Notice that the **Top of Bank**, **Top of Water** and **Creek Bed** (**CL**) profiles are shown. It is likely that some of your attributes will not match what is shown below by default, due to a defect in the current software version. The profile elevations and feature definitions are correct, but you will need to manually update the linestyle and color within the **Properties**. Select each line and update, as necessary, per the screenshot below. Bentley has indicated this issue should be fixed in the next release. **Note:** Only a portion of the profile is shown in the image below.







- 11. If you wanted a creekbed baseline (**BL**) report, you would open the **Horizontal Geometry Report** tool (**OpenRoads Modeling** >> **Geometry** >> **General Tools** >> **Reports**) and select the creekbed centerline. If you also wanted elevation data, you would need to select the applicable profile. For this exercise, we will move on to create the profile named boundary so we can place the annotation. **Note:** As a reminder, once the report is run, you can view all other reports, including vertical, within the **Bentley Civil Report Browser**.
- 12. Open the Place Named Boundary tool (OpenRoads Modeling >> Drawing Production >> Named Boundaries >> Named Boundary).



13. Make sure that the **Civil Profile** option is toggled on. Select **Profile 50H 5V Scale** for the Drawing Seed.

🄏 Place Named Boundary	Civil Profile	-		\times
	A 🖓 🔳 🎕 🗸	 🗋	IJ	
Drawing Seed:	Profile 50H 5V Scale		-	
Detail Scale:	1"=50'		-	

14. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner of the drawing window: **Identify Profile View**. Left click anywhere within **View 2**.





- 15. Edit the parameters below and leave all other default values as-is. Make sure that the **Create Drawing** option is toggled on at the bottom.
 - a. Name: Existing Creek CL
 - b. Start Location: 0+00.00 (Use the grey arrow to lock to Start)
 - c. **Stop Location:** 5+71.22 (Use the grey arrow to lock to Stop)
 - d. Length: 700.00
 - e. Available Profile Height: 30.00

🔏 PI	ace Named Boundary	Civil Profile -		\times
		A 🖓 📠 🎕 🖊 🛒		
	Drawing Seed:	Profile 50H 5V Scale	•	
	Detail Scale:	1"=50'	•	
	Name:	Existing Creek CL		
	Description:			
	Method:	Station Limits	•	
	Group:	(New)	•	
	Name:	Existing Creek CL		
	Description:			
\checkmark	Start Location:	0+00.00		◀
	Stop Location:	5+71.22		▶
	Length:	700.000000		00 [111]
V	ertical Exaggeration:	10.000000		
Ava	ilable Profile Height:	30.000000		
	Top Clearance:	0.500000		
	Bottom Clearance:	0.500000		
Elevat	tion Datum Spacing:	5.000000		
Stat	tion Datum Spacing:	100.000000		
	Profile Shifts:	Datum Stations	•	
		Use Terrains		
		Use Active Vertical		
		Whole Conduits Only		
		Create Drawing Show Dialog		



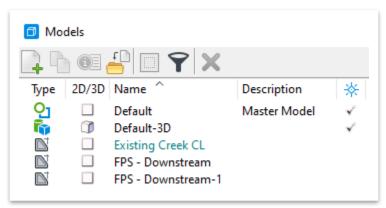
16. Left click anywhere within View 2 three times. Zoom out and you should see one profile named boundary drawn into the file, represented by a white border. The Create Drawing window will appear automatically after creating the named boundary, since we toggled it on in the previous step. Click OK to accept all default settings.

🜍 Create Drawing	×
Mode: Profile Name: Existing Creater One Sheet Per Dgn:	ek CL
Drawing Seed: Profile 50H 5V S View Type: Civil Profile Discipline: Civil Purpose: Elevation View	Scale 🔻
Seed Model: Drawing Model Seed Model: TDOT Profile 50 Filename: (Active File) Annotation Group: Profile Grid 5V	H 5V.dgnlib, Profile 50H 5
Sheet Model Seed Model: TDOT Profile 50 Filename: (Active File) Sheets: (New) Sheets: (New) Full Size 1 = 1 Drawing Boundary: Profile 50H 5V S Detail Scale : 1"=50' (By Nam Add To Sheet	ned Boundary) ▼ t Index 🕼
Open Model	

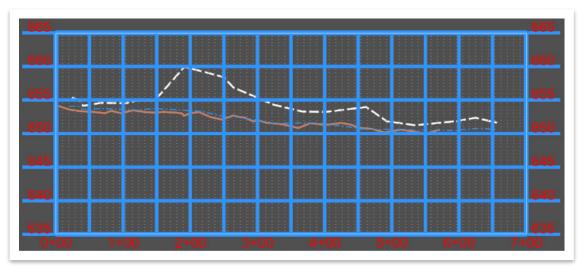




17. Once again, the software should open to the <u>one</u> sheet model in View 1. Let's go ahead and delete the sheet model. Open the Models tool (Survey >> Home >> Primary) and double click on the Existing Creek CL <u>drawing</u> model to activate it. Then, right click on the <u>sheet</u> model and select Delete. You should see the following four models once completed. Close the Models window once you are done.



18. You should see the downstream flood plain section along with the profile grid, stations and elevations. We will next add the applicable annotation, like in the previous exercises.



19. Now, before we add annotation, select the **Profile Hydraulic Data Text** element template (**Survey >> Annotation >> Profiles >> Bridges**).

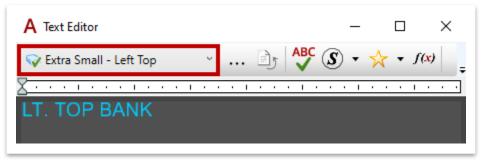




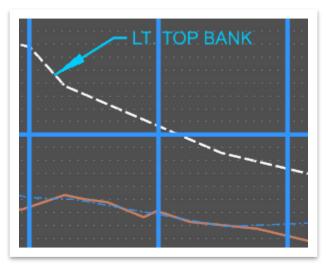
20. Next, open the **Place Note** tool (**OpenRoads Modeling >> Drawing Production** >> **Notes**). Within the **Place Note** dialog box, select the **SUR - PRO - Hydraulic Data** dimension style and leave the other settings as-is.

🔏 Place Note	- 🗆 X
	A A
Dimension Style:	🗂 SUR - PRO - H 🔻 📎 🎒
Text <u>R</u> otation:	Horizontal 🔻
Location:	Automatic 🔹
Start At:	Terminator 🔹
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto 🔻

21. Within the **Text Editor**, select the **Extra Small - Left Top** text style (highlighted below). Key-in **LT. TOP BANK**.



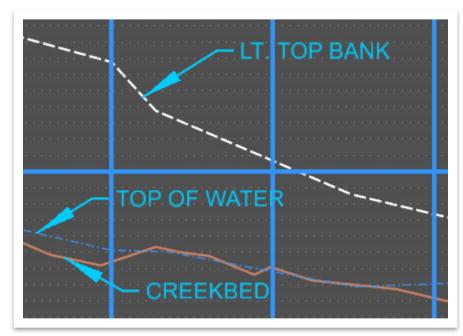
22. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner: **Define start point**. Snap to the **Top Of Bank** and place the **Note** as shown below.



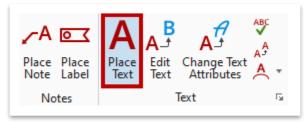




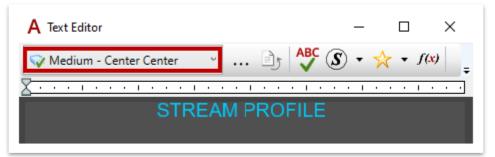
23. With the **Text Editor** still open, repeat the previous two steps and place the **Top Of Water** and **Creek Bed** notes. Close the **Text Editor** once completed.



24. Next, open the **Place Text** tool (**OpenRoads Modeling >> Drawing Production >> Text**) so we can label the title of this XS. The same element template should still be active.



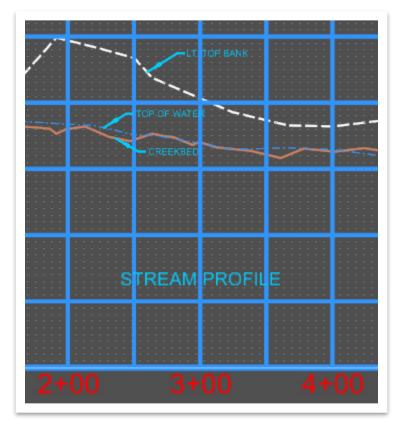
25. Within the **Text Editor**, select the **Medium - Center Center** text style (highlighted below). Key-in **STREAM PROFILE**.







26. Place the text at the bottom of the profile, as shown below. Click **ESC** to clear the tool.



27. To label the 50' stream (flow) elevations, an annotation group has been setup to automatically place the labels. Open the Annotate Model tool (OpenRoads Modeling >> Drawing Production >> Annotations >> Model Annotation). Within the Annotate Model dialog box, leave All Drawing Models unchecked. Click the ellipses next to Annotation Group and select Profile Grid 5V Stream Elevations (Profile >> Drawing).

🔏 Annotate Mod	lel	_		\times
Parameters				*
All Drawing Models				
Annotation Group	Profile Grid	d 5V Stre	am Eleva	tions

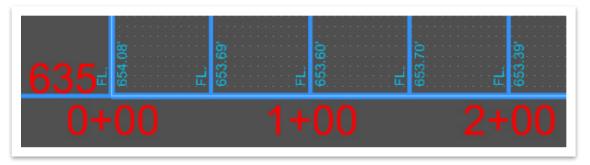




28. Left click twice to accept the settings. A **Resolve Aliases for Definition: Frame Annotation** window should appear automatically for the **STREAM PROFILE**. Left click within the **Target** column and select the **EX Water Line -Top** option and then click **OK**.

Type Profile	Target EX Water Line - Top *
Profile	EX Water Line - Top 🔹
	1
	OK

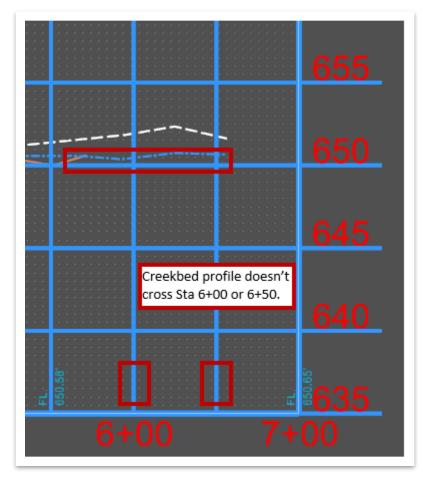
29. Notice that the flow labels are automatically added at the bottom of the grid with the correct flow elevation, per the target (**EX Water Line -Top**) selected in the previous step. No labels were added at Station 6+00 or 6+50, which will be discussed in the next step. **Note:** The first and last label (Station 0+00 and 7+00) display the correct respective elevations at the beginning and ending points of the profile target line, even if it doesn't extend to grid extents.







30. As previously mentioned, the labels at Station **6+00** and **6+50** did not place. The labels will only be placed with the extent of the profile that the named boundary was created from. In this case, we created the named boundary along the brown **Survey Existing Creekbed Centerline**, so the flow elevation labels will only be physically placed within the extent of that profile, regardless of what the target is set to. Since the **EX Water Line - Top** profile extends further, we will manually add the other two flow elevation labels.



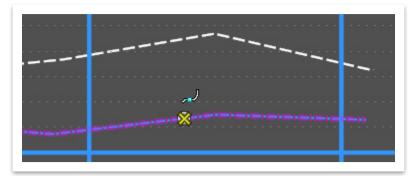




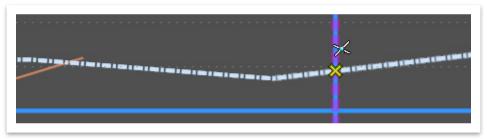
- 31. Open the **Place Label** tool (**OpenRoads Modeling >> Drawing Production >> Notes**). Within the **Place Label Settings** dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Select the non-leader icon at the top
 - b. Type: Cell
 - c. Cell Name: _SUR PRO Flow Elevation
 - d. Dimension Style: SUR PRO Hydraulic Data
 - e. Label Rotation: Vertical

🔏 Place Label Setting	js —		×
Type:	Cell	~	
Cell Name:	_SUR - PRO - Flow Ele	vatio	
Dimension Style:	👽 SUR - PRO - Hydra	ulic D	. D
Label Rotation:	Vertical	~	
Start At:	Terminator	~	
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto	~	
	A 1		

32. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner: **Identify Element or DataPoint**. Select the **EX Water Line - Top** profile.



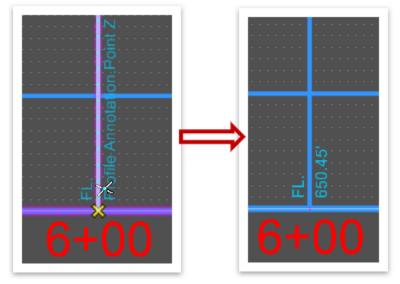
33. Notice the next prompt in the lower left corner: **Select Point Location**. Snap to the intersection point of the **EX Water Line - Top** and the Sta **6+00** grid line.



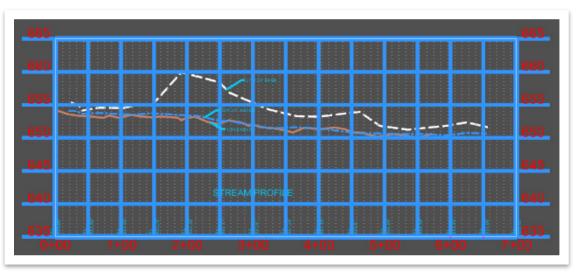




34. Then, snap to the bottom of the y-axis to accept label placement (**FL. 650.45'**), which should align with the other labels. **Note:** Remember that the elevation will not populate until you accept placement. Also, there is a defect with the software that places a small erroneous circle at the origin point of the cell.



35. Repeat Steps 33-34 to place the flow elevation at Sta **6+50**, which should be **650.66'**.



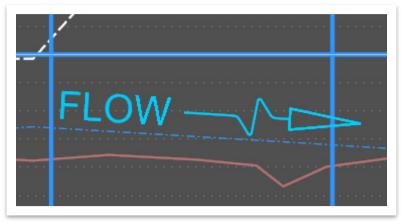




36. Lastly, to add the flow arrow, first select the **Flow Arrow** element template (**Survey** >> **Annotation** >> **Profiles** >> **Bridges**).



37. Then, open the Place Active Cell tool (OpenRoads Modeling >> Drawing >> Placement > Cells) to place the arrow. With the same element template selected, open the Place Text tool and add FLOW, as shown below. Select the Extra Small - Center Center text style within the Text Editor. Note: The label can be rotated, if necessary.







6.7 Lecture: Drainage Area Delineation

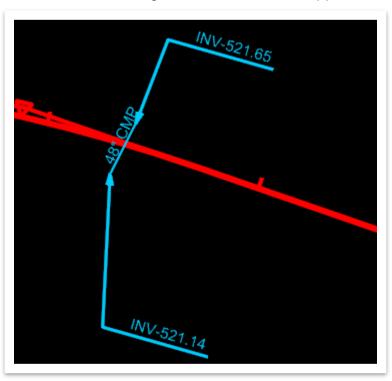
A **Drainage Area** (also known as a **Watershed**) is defined as the area which will contribute runoff to a given point and is required to estimate the runoff generated to an outfall point.

A **Drainage Map** created by TDOT Survey provides the delineated drainage areas for every pipe crossing that spans the survey preliminary centerline. Large areas are typically delineated using **USGS quad maps** or aerial mapping whereas smaller areas are surveyed in the field. Drainage areas are also verified using **USGS StreamStats**. Mapping is digitized and entered in the planimetrics file (Survey Model) where possible.

6.7.1 Exercise: Drainage Area Delineation

In this exercise, we will delineate a drainage area for a culvert that spans a survey preliminary centerline and then verify it using USGS StreamStats. Once again, the survey preliminary centerline must be created before this exercise can be done. We will utilize a project dataset located in Mt. Juliet, TN. **Note:** This exercise assumes the user has a basic understanding of reading contour maps, such as top of hills, flow lines, ridge lines and saddles. A quick review of the contour map and definitions is shown in **Appendix B**.

1. Open the **Survey Model – DA.dgn** file within the **SURVEY_Training** workset dgn subfolder. Switch back to the **Survey** workflow in the upper left corner.

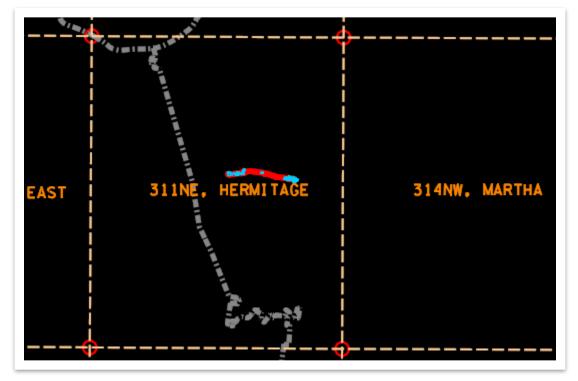


2. Zoom in to the existing 48" CMP located at approximate Station 152+37.00.

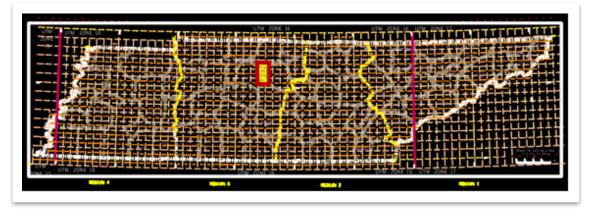




- 3. Review the provided invert elevations and notice that the flow is entering on the northern side (**upstream**) and discharging to the south (**downstream**). This means that the contributing drainage area should be on the northern side of the structure.
- 4. Go ahead and attach the 83StatePlaneNameIndexV8.dgn reference file. Notice that the project location is correctly located within the Hermitage Quad Map in Wilson county. Note: This is TDOT's NAD83 State Plane Index showing the USGS QUAD Names. For an actual project, TDOT Survey staff can find this file under the PROJECTS folder located here: This PC\PROJECTS (\\AG03SDCWF00010.net.ads.state.tn.us) (V:)\QuadSheets\Nad83 Named\



5. Click **Fit View** and notice the statewide overview of the Quad Index is shown. **Note:** The project location is highlighted below in red.



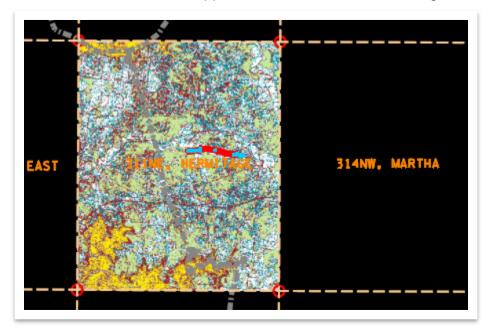




- 6. The **Index** name corresponds to a **.tif** file with that same name, which we will be referencing. For this exercise, the **HERMITAGE.tif** file is already provided in the class files. For an actual project, you would need to find all applicable .tif files for your project as referenced on the Index map.
- Open the Raster Manager (Survey >> Home >> Primary >> Attach Tools). Go to File >> Attach >> Raster and attach the HERMITAGE.tif file. Accept all default attachment options and click Attach. Close the Raster Manager once completed.

📑 R	aster N	lanager	: 1 of 1 lis	ted			_		\times
<u>F</u> ile	<u>E</u> dit	<u>V</u> iew	<u>D</u> isplay	<u>S</u> ettings	Tools	<u>U</u> tiliti	es		
ŧ.	↓Ξ		·	🔹 🐴		i 🔀	i 🐯 c	,	
		4 ᡚ							
Ð	🝓 Fil	e Name		Description	6	Mo	del		
0. 0. 0.	🍓 н	ERMITAC	GE.tif		~	<u>v</u> 8	Survey M	odel - DA	.dgn
1 2	3 4	5 6 7	8		🗄 Ti	nt:	Transpa	rency:	1

8. Notice that the raster now appears within the **HERMITAGE** grid.



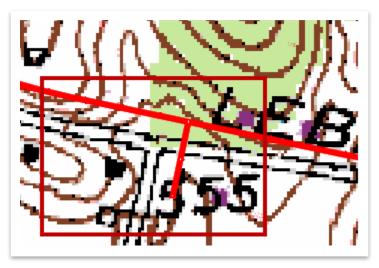




9. Once again, zoom in to the existing **48**" **CMP** located at approximate Station **152+37.00**. Notice that the referenced centerline in the geometry file (red line) does not align with the centerline in the Quad map (yellow shading).

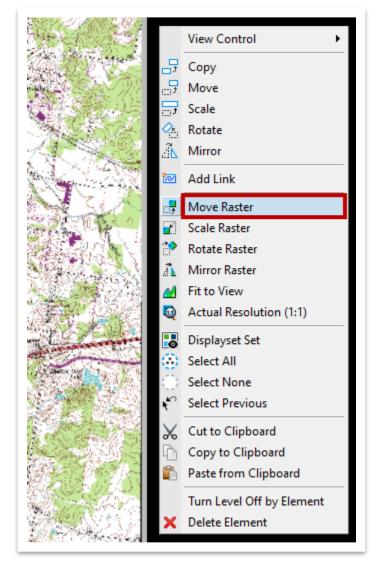


10. This could be due to the scale factor in the geometry reference file. Since the scale factor for the **.tif** is unknown, we will move the raster to align with the Alignment reference file. Pan to the **east** of the **48**" **CMP** and locate the intersection shown below.





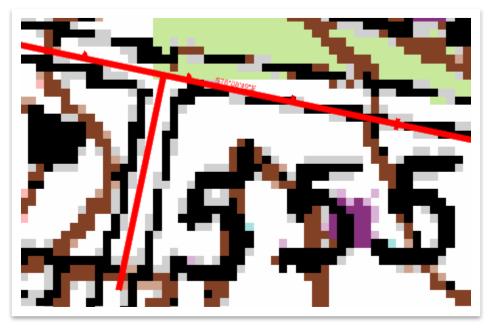
11. Turn off the **83StatePlaneNameIndexV8.dgn** reference file. Right click and <u>hold</u> on the Quad map border and select **Move Raster**.



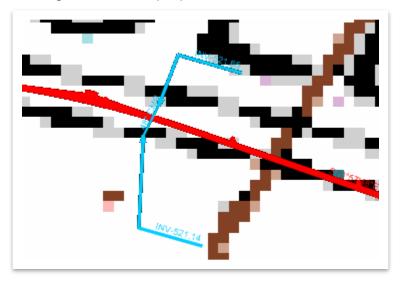




12. Left click to snap at the approximate intersection point within the Quad map (it appears like nothing happened). Then, left click again at the red line intersection point within the referenced alignment file. Notice that the Quad map intersection has now moved. **Note:** Your intersection alignment will vary depending on the initial snap point location.



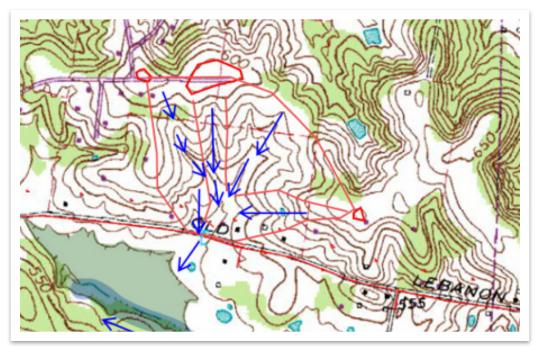
13. Once again, zoom in to the existing 48" CMP located at approximate Station 152+37.00. While reviewing the map, key items to look for are major water features such as streams and creeks. Also, identify the hills and ridges, which represent drainage area boundaries. The Boundary lines are typically drawn at the centerline of a ridge and drawn perpendicular to each contour line.







- 14. Before we draw the drainage area for the existing 48" CMP, let's examine the different components that have either been drawn in or highlighted in the image for your reference.
 - a. **Stoners Creek** has been highlighted in blue on the southern side of the crossing.
 - b. Blue **flow direction arrows** have been drawn between the ridges based on the contours. They identify the "V" shape of the contours in the direction of the inflow point.
 - c. Small red polygons and lines have been drawn in to represent the top of **hills** and **ridges** respectively.
 - d. The **marsh** has been highlighted in dark green on the southern side of the crossing. Notice the tick marks pointing inwards from the contour line. Also, notice that the flow at the 48" CMP is discharging to this marsh.
 - e. The large red outer polygon represents the approximate drainage area. It is created by connecting all the **high points** and the **outermost ridges** (shown on the northern side draining to the CMP).



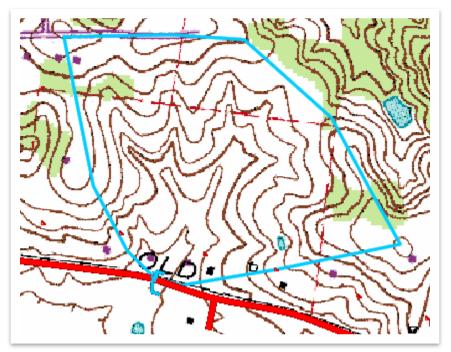




15. Now that the project area has been examined, select the **Area Shape** element template (**Survey >> Drainage >> Natural**).



16. Next, open the Place SmartLine tool (Survey >> Drawing >> Placement) to start delineating the drainage area. Reference the outer polygon in Step 14e, if necessary. Complete the blue polygon to create the drainage basin boundary, as shown below.



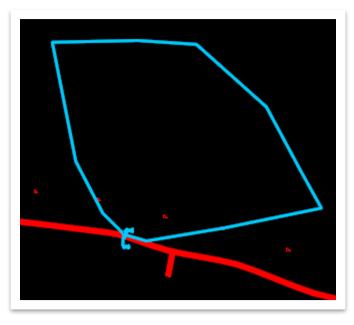
17. Go ahead and turn off the raster level. You can hover over the raster boundary to see what level it is on. By default, the level should be **Default**. **Note:** If your raster is on a different level, turn off the applicable level.







18. Notice that the delineated area is now clearly shown within the dgn file. You would then measure the area, which is **53.33** acres, and place the drainage area text. Note: You will have a different acreage depending on your overall shape of the drainage area. We will place the drainage area text in the next exercise.



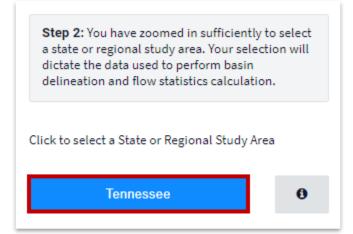
19. Next, we will verify the delineated area using **USGS StreamStats**. Open the USGS StreamStats site: <u>https://streamstats.usgs.gov/ss/</u>. If an **Active News** popup window appears, go ahead and close it. Type **Hermitage**, **TN** in the search bar on the left side of the screen. Select the option that has **Davidson County**, **TN** in the name.

Q	Hermitage, TN						
7 Re	7 Results ×						
	Cities & Populated Places						
	r <mark>mitage Springs</mark> r County, TN						
	Hermitage Davidson County, TN						
	mitage Hills idson County, TN						





20. Once the map zooms into Hermitage, TN, click **Tennessee** on the left side of the screen and notice the blue tributaries appear.



21. Within the map area, pan east past the county line and zoom in to the highlighted portion within the project area (**Old Lebanon Dirt Rd** @ **Kelsey Glen Dr** intersection).



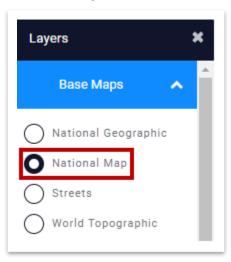




22. Notice a blue **tributary** crossing old **Lebanon Dirt Road**, which is highlighted below. This represents the upstream and downstream flows through the **48**" **CMP**.

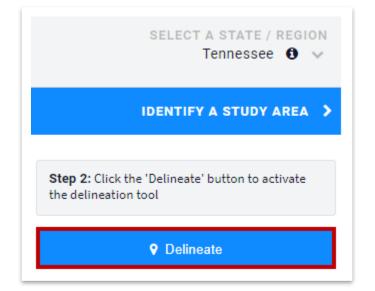


23.Next, expand the **Base Maps** layers on the right side of the screen and select **National Map**. Notice that the contours now appear in the background.





24. Now, click **Delineate** on the left side of the screen.



25. Left click on the **downstream** side of the stream, just south of Old Lebanon Dirt Road. Give the software a minute to process and notice that a yellow shaded area now appears, which represents the **delineated area**.



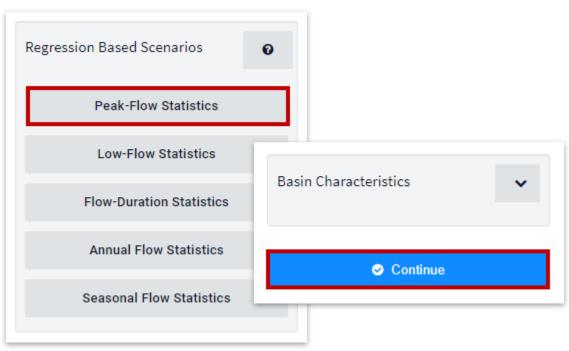




26. Compare this USGS StreamStats delineation boundary to the one you drew in ORD in Step 16. Click **Continue** on the left side of the screen. The program will now calculate the **runoff** using **regression equations**.

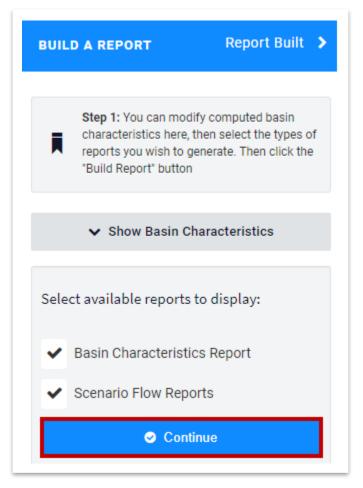
💼 Clear Basin
Edit Basin
🚣 Download Basin 🗸
or
Continue

27.Next, click **Peak-Flow Statistics** on the left side of the screen and then click **Continue**.





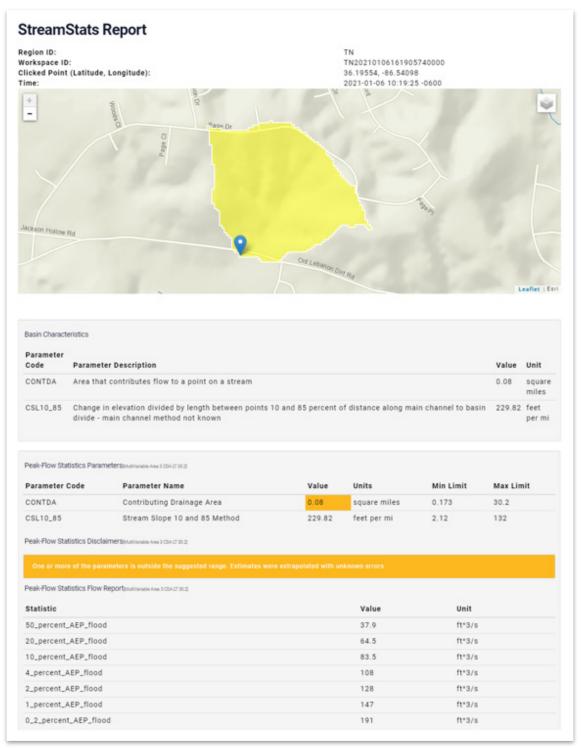
28. Click **Continue** again to build the report.







29. The delineated area draining to the selected point is summarized below, along with peak flows. **Note:** The data below will vary slightly depending on the point that you selected within the map.







30. The last step is to convert the **Contributing Drainage Area** in the report (highlighted in orange) from **0.08** square miles to **acres**, which yields **51.20** acres. This value should be relatively close to the drainage area drawn earlier in ORD (**53.33** acres). With this verification, the drainage map delineation is complete. **Note:** If there is a large discrepancy between the two drainage areas, re-assess the contour map.

Parameter Name	Value	Units
Contributing Drainage Area	0.08	square miles
Stream Slope 10 and 85 Method	229.82	feet per mi

6.7.2 Exercise: Drainage Area Labeling

In this exercise, we will place a drainage data label for the 48" CMP that was assessed in the previous exercise. We will continue to utilize the same **Survey Model – DA.dgn** file.

 Before we place the drainage data cell, select the Area Shape Text element template (Survey >> Annotation >> Drainage), so the label will place on the correct level.



- 2. Open the **Place Label** tool (**Survey >> Drawing Production >> Notes**). Within the **Place Label Settings** dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Select the **non**leader icon at the top
 - b. Type: Cell
 - c. Cell Name: _SUR -DRG - Data - Pipe
 - d. Dimension Style: SUR - DRG - Text

hace Label Setting	js —		×	<
Type:	Cell	~		
Cell Name:	_SUR - DRG - Data - Pi	pe		
Dimension Style:	👽 SUR - DRG - Text	*	🌒	5
Label Rotation:	Horizontal	×		
Start At:	Terminator	Ŷ		
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto	~		

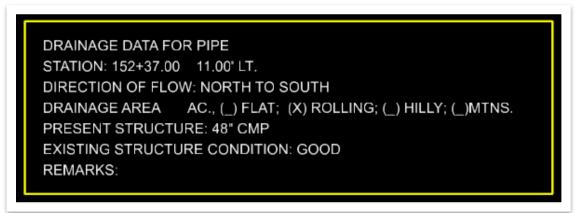




3. Left click anywhere within the Drainage Area to place the label. **Note:** If you had multiple drainage areas overlapping, you could toggle on the **leader** option within the **Place Label Settings** dialog box and point to the limits of the area.

DRAINAGE DATA FOR PIPE STATION: ___+_, ___, 'LT./RT. DIRECTION OF FLOW: _____ DRAINAGE AREA ____ AC., (_) FLAT; (_) ROLLING; (_) HILLY; (_)MTNS. PRESENT STRUCTURE: _____ EXISTING STRUCTURE CONDITION: _____ REMARKS: _____

4. Double click on the label to open the **Text Editor**. Manually key-in the data for the structure, as shown below. Left click within the drawing window to accept the updates. **Note:** The data fields have been turned off.





Chapter 7. Additional Survey Elements

In addition to the linear profiled survey elements shown earlier in the manual, there are also **point** survey elements from plan view that need to be included on an existing profile. This includes, but not limited to, Low Wire Crossings, Control Points and Benchmarks. In order for automatic placement on the profile to occur, we need to utilize the tools within the Drainage and Utilities workflow once again throughout this chapter. Sample text files have been edited and pre-imported into the exercise files for this chapter for the purpose of training. There are a few limitations with the current software release, but future enhancements and/or possible VBA's should make the procedures more efficient.

7.1 Objectives

At the conclusion of this chapter, participants will be able to:

- 1. Add model annotation for Low Wire Crossing Points, Control Points and Benchmarks in plan view.
- 2. Create a utility model for each element.
- 3. Create one overall profile drawing model to build upon and add label annotation for each element.

7.2 Lecture: Low Wire Crossings

When **low wire crossings** are surveyed, they are represented in plan view by a point indicating the intersection point above the roadway centerline. The point label contains the station and elevation of the low wire and will also be displayed on the profile. A temperature reading shall be recorded and shown on the profile, as well, for all high-tension lines. The actual low wire utility linework is not displayed on a present layout or profile sheet.

7.2.1 Exercise: Low Wire Crossing – Plan

In this exercise, we will place Low Wire Crossing annotation on imported survey data in plan view. Once again, the survey preliminary centerline must be created before this exercise can be done. **Note:** The Low Wire Crossing plan data would normally be part of the overall 3D survey model file but has been separated out for the purpose of training.

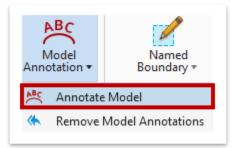
 Open the Survey Model – LWC.dgn file within the SURVEY_Training workset dgn subfolder. Two low wire crossing points (XLW) have already been imported via ASCII text file. Zoom in to Station 120+00.00 and notice the two Low Wire crossing nodes, indicated with a crosshair.







2. Let's annotate the model by opening the Annotate Model tool (Drainage and Utilities >> Drawing Production >> Annotations >> Model Annotation).



3. Notice the cursor prompt: Accept Design Model. Left click to accept and notice the annotations are added. Note: As a reminder, normally you would have the option to select a specific annotation group to apply but there is a defect with the Model Annotation tool. Also, there is a defect with the Element Annotation tool and cannot be used for imported survey data. Bentley has indicated that both issues should be fixed in the next software version.



- 4. This annotation is useful for surveyors but the actual annotation that is displayed on plan sheets is slightly different. Go ahead and turn off the following levels:
 - SUR UTL Low Wire Crossings Points Elevations
 - SUR UTL Low Wire Crossings Points Numbers
- We will now annotate the LWC point features using a Text Favorite. Select the Low Wire Crossings Text element template (Survey >> Annotation >> Overhead Utilities).

🥪 Low Wire Crossings Tex * SUR - UTL - Low Wire Crossin _! *					
□ 2 ▼	Ŧ				
Attributes					

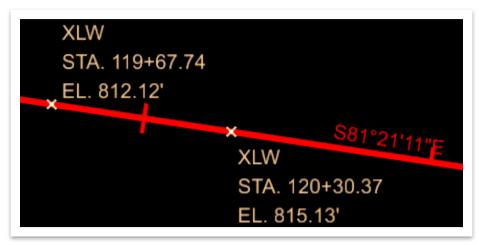




- Open the Place Label tool (Drainage and Utilities >> Drawing Production >> Notes). Within the Place Label Settings dialog box, select the following settings.
 - a. Select the non-leader icon at the top
 - b. Type: Text Favorite
 - c. Favorite Name: Survey Low Wire Crossing
 - d. Dimension Style: SUR UTL Low Wire Crossing

🔏 Place Label Setting	ıs — □ ×
Type:	Text Favorite v
Favorite Name:	Survey Low Wire Crossir
Dimension Style:	🛇 SUR - UTL - Low Wire Cr 🎒
Label Rotation:	Horizontal v
Start At:	Terminator ~
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto v

7. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner: Identify Element or DataPoint. Select the roadway centerline and then turn off the SUR – CL – Preliminary level in the reference file (this will make it easier to snap). Then, snap to the center of the first XLW point and then left click anywhere offset to place the label. Repeat the process to place the other label, as shown below, and then turn the CL level back on. Note: Remember, intelligent labels don't populate until they have physically been placed. Also, there is an erroneous white circle placed at each snap point, which is a known defect and has been logged with Bentley.







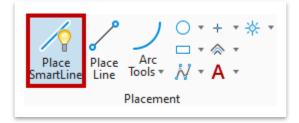
7.2.2 Exercise: Low Wire Crossing – Profile

In this exercise, we will add Low Wire Crossing points to a roadway profile after creating a **Utility** model. **Note:** The Low Wire Crossing utility model would normally be part of the overall 2D utility model file prior to projection in the alignment file but has been separated out for the purpose of training.

1. Create a new file and name it **Utility Model – LWC**. Select the **TDOTSeed2D.dgn** and click **Save**.

File name:	Utility Model - LWC 🗸 🗸	Save
Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) ~	Cancel
Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co	Browse

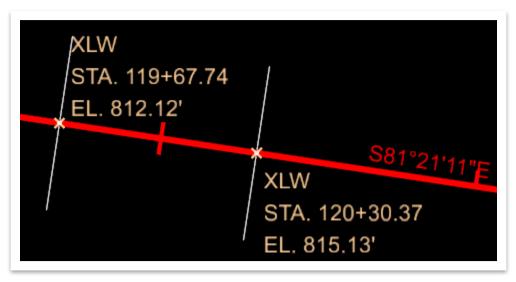
- 2. Attach the following reference files using the **Coincident World** attachment method and then click **Fit View**.
 - Alignment Additional Elements.dgn
 - Survey Model LWC.dgn
- 3. Toggle on Civil Accudraw and then open the Place SmartLine tool (Drainage and Utilities >> Drawing >> Placement).







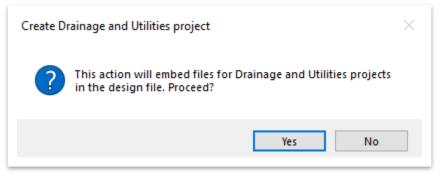
4. Next, draw an arbitrary line that passes through each of the XLW points. Note: If the point was at an offset from the centerline, it would be important for the lines to cross the centerline and be **perpendicular** so that the profile stationing will be correct.



5. We now need to draw nodes and conduits at the same elevation of each surveyed crossing point. Open the **Place Node** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Layout >> Layout**).

Place Node	Place Nodes	Insert Node	Place Conduit	≪ Place Lateral ▶ Place Gutter ▲ Place Catchmer	 Place Pond Place Low Impact Develo
					Layout

6. A warning will display asking if you want to embed files for **Drainage and Utilities** projects in the design file. Click **Yes**.







- Go ahead and open the Place Node tool again (Drainage and Utilities >> Layout >> Layout). We will address the westernmost XLW crossing first. Within the Place Node dialog box, select the following settings and leave the others as default.
 - a. Feature Definition: Ex Low Wire Crossing (Node >> ElectricalNode >> Existing)
 - b. Name Prefix: XLW
 - c. **Elevation: 812.12'** (matches the elevation shown in the label). Make sure that the Elevation checkbox is toggled on.
 - d. Rotation Mode: Absolute

🔏 Place Node	- 🗆 ×
Feature	*
Feature Definition	Ex Low Wire Crossing 🔍
Name Prefix	XLW
Elevation	*
Elevation is the Invert	
Elevation	812.12
Vertical Offset	0.00
Rotation	*
Rotation Mode	Absolute 🗸
Rotation	N90°00'00.0"E
Cross Section from Sur	face 🔺
Only Include Contributing Slopes	
Maximum Offset	0.00

8. Notice the cursor prompt: **Select Reference Element For Node elevation**. Since the **XLW** points already have a specific elevation, right click to **Reset**.

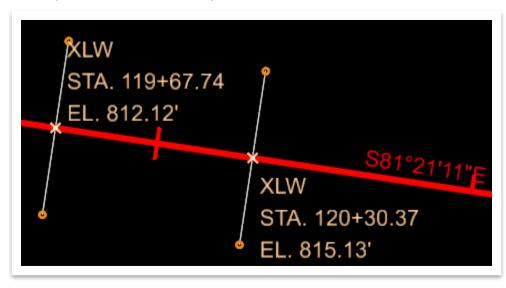




9. Notice the next cursor prompt: Define Electrical Node. Left click on either end of the westernmost arbitrary line to define the node location. Left click twice more to accept the Rotation Mode and Rotation Angle and notice that an orange node has been placed. Note: Since the node is circular, the rotation angle is irrelevant.



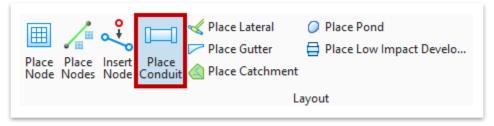
10. With the **Place Node** tool still active, place another node on the other end of the westernmost arbitrary line. Repeat the process to place the remaining 2 nodes. Make sure to key-in the applicable elevation within the **Place Node** dialog box before placement. Once completed, hit **ESC** to clear the tool.



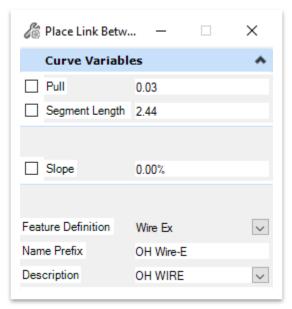




11. Now that the nodes are placed, we need to connect them with conduit. Open the **Place Conduit** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Layout >> Layout**).



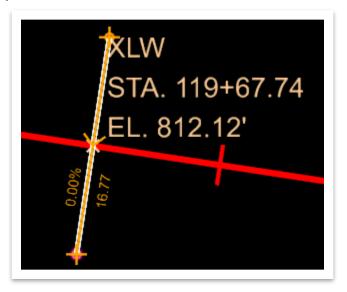
- 12. Within the **Place Link Between Nodes** dialog box, select the following settings and leave the others as default.
 - a. Feature Definition: Wire Ex (Conduit >> ElectricalSegment >> Existing >> Overhead)
 - b. Name Prefix: OH Wire-E
 - c. Description: OH WIRE



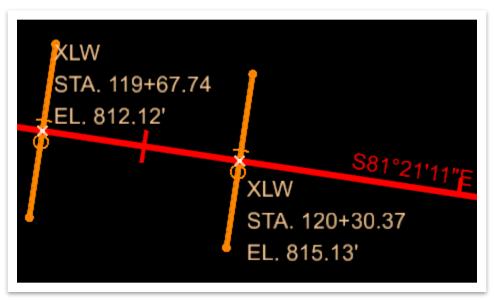




13. Notice the cursor prompt: **Select Start Node**. Select either node on the westernmost arbitrary line and the conduit will appear on the cursor. Select the second node (**next node**) **to make a connection** and place the conduit. **Note:** Since both nodes have the same elevation along the respective line, the order of node selection and thus the conduit direction is irrelevant for this exercise. Also, your slope should be **0.00%** but the length will vary depending on the arbitrary lines you drew earlier.



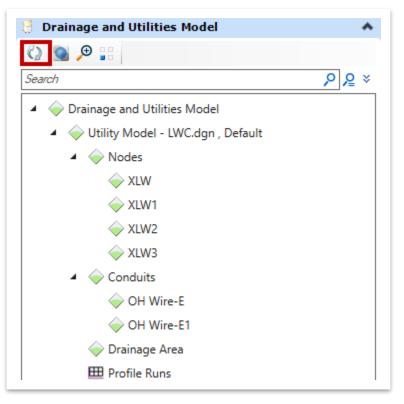
14. Once placed, you will see the **OH** linestyle added between the nodes. Repeat the previous step to add the conduit for the other **XLW** crossing and then right click to clear the tool.



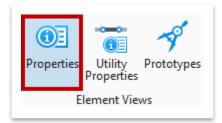




15. Within the **Explorer**, open the **Drainage and Utilities Model** tab and notice that all **nodes** and **conduits** have been added. **Note:** If the nodes are not showing, click the **Refresh** icon under the **Drainage and Utilities Model** header. If the nodes still do not show, close and re-open the **Explorer**.



16. Next, let's review the element properties of the conduit. First, turn off the Utility Model – LWC.dgn (Default-3D) reference file. Then, select the first conduit and open the Properties (Drainage and Utilities >> Utilities View >> Element Views).







17. Under the **Utility** header, key-in the correct **Start** and **Stop Invert** elevations (812.12) to match the surveyed elevation of the first **XLW** crossing. **Note:** You'll notice a **Node structure warning** (yellow triangle) at each node once the elevation has been updated. For the intent of the exercise, you can ignore the warning.

operties	▼ ₽
名 Elements (1)	
🔺 🧼 Link: OH Wire-E	
/ Line	
/ Line	
General	~
Element Description	Link: OH Wire-E
Level	SUR - UTL - Electric (Overhead)
Color	5
Line Style	OH WIRE XING
Weight	2
Class	Primary
Number of elements	1
Template	(None)
Transparency	0
Priority	0
Geometry	~
Utility	~
Start Node	XLW
Stop Node	XLW1
Start Invert	812.12
Stop Invert	812.12
Diameter	1.00'
Single Gradient	True
Utility ID	27
Utility Properties	Open Utility Properties



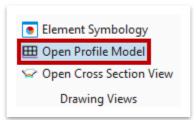
Node structure warning.

The structure height is less than the minimum height defined by the top and bottom cell components. Level: Default

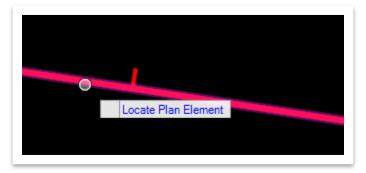




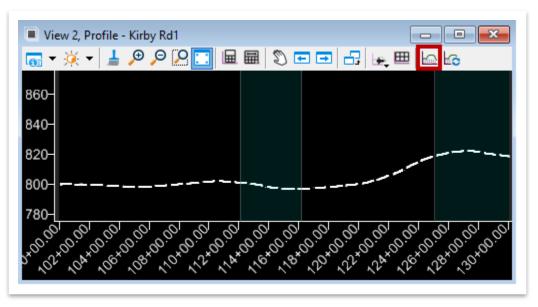
- 18. Repeat the previous step for the other conduit and edit the **Start** and **Stop Invert** elevations in the **Properties**.
- 19. Now we need to project the Low Wire Crossings onto the survey preliminary centerline. Go ahead and open the Alignment Additional Elements.dgn file and attach the Utility Model LWC.dgn reference file.
- 20. Open the **Open Profile Model** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Utilities View >> Drawing Views**).



21. Notice the cursor prompt: Locate Plan element. Select the red centerline.



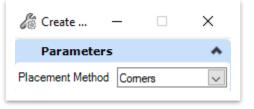
22. Then, open **View 2** and click anywhere within the drawing window. Notice that the **existing** profile has now been created along the roadway centerline. Within the **Profile** view, select the **Create 3d Cut** tool.



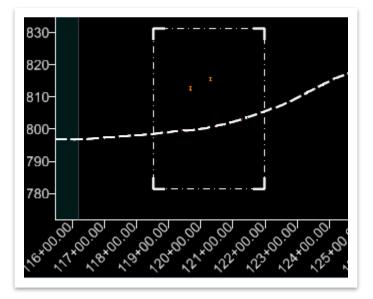




23. Within the Create 3d Cut dialog box, select the Corners placement method.



24. Left click within the profile window to start drawing a rectangle. At minimum, make sure to include the station range of **119+00** to **121+00**, which contains the location of the two **XLW** crossings. Left click again to complete the rectangle and notice the **two** XLW conduits have been projected onto the profile at the correct elevations. **Note:** Your 3d Cut boundary will vary depending on your extents. We will show how to adjust the boundary in the next exercise.



25.Open the Place Named Boundary tool (Drainage and Utilities >> Drawing Production >> Named Boundaries >> Named Boundary). Make sure that the Civil Profile option is toggled on. Select Profile 50H 5V Scale for the Drawing Seed.

	×
A 🎙 📠 🕅 🖊 😭 🎵	
Drawing Seed: Profile 50H 5V Scale 🗸	
Detail Scale: 1"=50' 🗸	

26. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner of the drawing window: **Identify Profile View**. Left click anywhere within **View 2**.





- 27. Edit the parameters below and leave all other default values as-is. Make sure that the **Create Drawing** option is toggled on at the bottom.
 - a. Name: Kirby Rd Existing Profiles Additional Elements
 - b. Start Location: 115+00.00 (key-in)
 - c. Stop Location: 125+00.00 (key-in)

🔏 Place Named Boundary	y Civil Profile —	×
	R 🖓 🔳 🕅 🏒 💅 🎞 💢	
Drawing Seed:	Profile 50H 5V Scale 🔹	
Detail Scale:	1"=50' 🗸	
Name:	Kirby Rd Existing Profiles - Additional Elem	
Description:		
Method:	Station Limits 🔹	
Group:	(New) 🔻	
Name:	Kirby Rd Existing Profiles - Additional Elemi	
Description:		
Start Location:	115+00.00	⊲
Stop Location:	125+00.00	▶
Length:	1200.000000	
Vertical Exaggeration:	10.000000	
Available Profile Height:	100.000000	• •
Top Clearance:	0.500000	
Bottom Clearance:	0.500000	
Elevation Datum Spacing:	5.000000	
Station Datum Spacing:	100.000000	
Profile Shifts:	Datum Stations 👻	
	Use Terrains	
	Use Active Vertical	
	Whole Conduits Only	
	Create Drawing	
	Show Dialog	



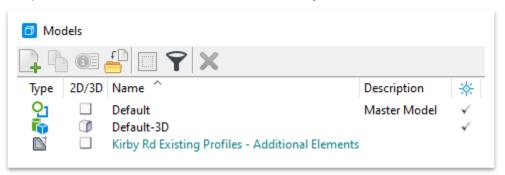
28. Left click anywhere within View 2 **three** times. Zoom out and you should see **one** profile named boundary drawn into the file, represented by a white border. The **Create Drawing** window will appear automatically after creating the named boundary, since we toggled it on in the previous step. Click **OK** to accept all default settings.

Create Drawing	×
Mod	le: Profile 🔻
Nam	e: Kirby Rd Existing Profiles - Additional Eleme
One Sheet Per Dg	jn:
Drawing Seed:	Profile 50H 5V Scale 🔹
View Type:	Civil Profile
Discipline:	Civil
Purpose:	Elevation View
	Drawing Model
Seed Model:	TDOT Profile 50H 5V.dgnlib, Profile 50H 5
Filename:	(Active File) 💼 📮
A	1"=50' 🗸
Annotation Group:	Profile Grid 5V
	Sheet Model
Seed Model:	TDOT Profile 50H 5V.dgnlib, Profile 50H 5
Filename:	(Active File) 😑 📮
Sheets:	(New) 🔻
A	Full Size 1 = 1
Drawing Boundary:	
Detail Scale :	1"=50' (By Named Boundary) 🔹
	🗌 Add To Sheet Index 🛛 🕼
	Make Sheet Coincident
	✓ Open Model
	<u>O</u> K Cancel

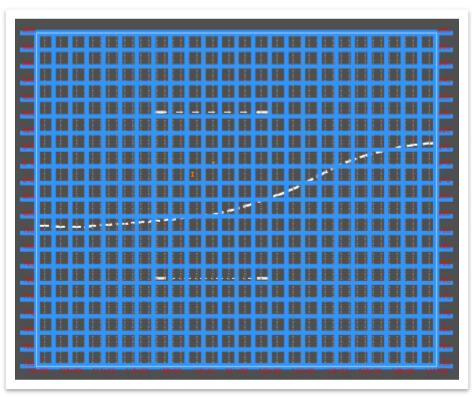




29. Once again, the software should open to the <u>one</u> sheet model in View 1. Let's go ahead and delete the sheet model. Open the Models tool (Drainage and Utilities >> Home >> Primary) and double click on the Kirby Rd Existing Profiles – Additional Elements <u>drawing</u> model to activate it. Then, right click on the <u>sheet</u> model and select Delete. You should see the following three models once completed. Close the Models window once you are done.



30. You should see the centerline profile and XLW conduits along with the profile grid, stations and elevations. We will next add the applicable annotation, like in the previous exercises. Note: The white 3d Cut boundary is on the Default level within the Alignment – Additional Elements.dgn reference file and can be turned off if necessary.



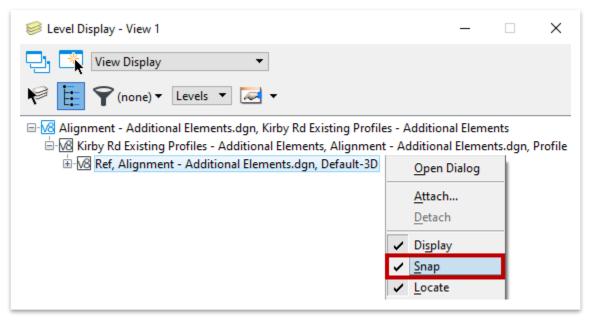




31.Go ahead and select the **EX OH Wire** element template (**Survey >> Utilities >> Overhead >> Profile**).



32. Now, open the Level Display and right click on Ref, Alignment – Additional Elements.dgn, Default-3D and toggle the Snap option on, as shown below. This will allow us to snap to the XLW conduits when placing annotation. Close the Level Display once you are done.



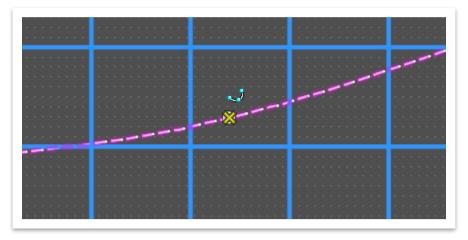




- 33. Next, open the Place Label tool (Drainage and Utilities >> Drawing Production >> Notes). Within the Place Label Settings dialog box, select the following settings and leave the others as default. Note: There is an enhancement logged with Bentley to allow a symbol to be placed without a leader.
 - a. Select the **leader** icon at the top (<u>this allows the correct point symbol to</u> <u>display</u>)
 - b. Type: Text Favorite
 - c. Favorite Name: SUR UTL Low Wire Crossing (Profile)
 - d. Dimension Style: SUR UTL Low Wire Crossing (Profile)

🔏 Place Label Setting	IS	_		×
Type:	Text Favorite		~	
Favorite Name:	SUR - UTL	- Low \	Wire Cr	
Dimension Style:	👽 SUR - UTL	- Low \	Wire Cr	. 👌
Label Rotation:	Horizontal		~	
Start At:	Terminator		~	
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto		~	
		F(B)		

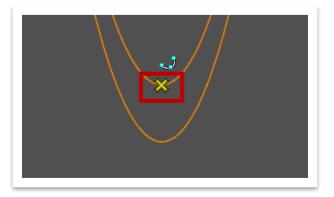
34. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner: **Identify Element or DataPoint**. Select the centerline profile.



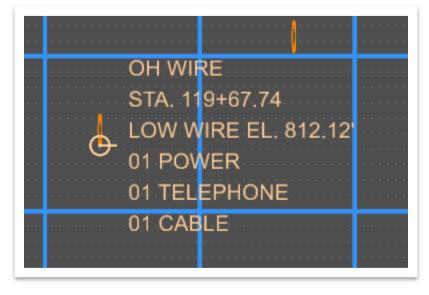




35. Notice the next prompt in the lower left corner: **Select Point Location**. Zoom in to the first **XLW** conduit and snap to the low point on the inner diameter.



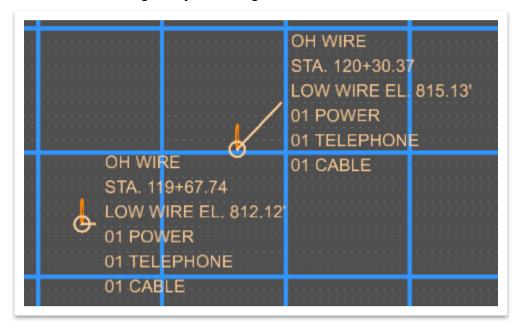
36. Left click again just off to the right to place the label. The offset is necessary so that the symbol stays on when we turn the conduits off later in the exercise. Notice that the label automatically reads the **station** and **elevation**. You would need to manually add the number of **power**, **telephone** and **cable** crossings within the label. For this exercise, we will leave those at **01**. **Note:** The data fields have been turned off.







37. Repeat Steps 35-36 to add the label to the other **XLW** conduit. **Note:** The centerline profile does not need to be re-selected before the placement of each label unless the tool was cleared. If ever the station/elevation look erroneous, clear the tool and start again by selecting the centerline.



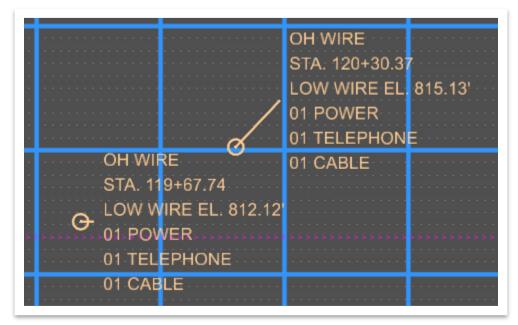
38. Next, open the Level Display, if not still opened, and right click on Ref, Alignment

 Additional Elements.dgn, Default-3D and toggle the Display option off, as shown below. This will turn the conduits off.

🥪 Level Display - View 1	_	×
🔁 🔀 View Display 🔹		
🌾 📴 🌱 (none) 🔻 Levels 🔻 📈 🗸		
□-M Alignment - Additional Elements.dgn, Kirby Rd Existing Profil □-M Kirby Rd Existing Profiles - Additional Elements, Alignmen ↓-M Ref, Alignment - Additional Elements.dgn, Default-3D	t - Additional Eleme	Profile
	Display ✓ Snap ✓ Locate	



39. The final profile view for the **low wire crossing** points is shown below. Remember, the leader option allows the symbol to be placed automatically in profile view.



40. Lastly, switch back to the Multi-Model Views (plan/profile) view. To turn off the XLW nodes and conduits, activate View 1 and simply turn off the Utility Model – LWC.dgn reference file. If you had other utility models in the file, you could turn off the applicable level(s) instead. On an actual project, you likely would also have the 3D Survey Model planimetric file referenced.





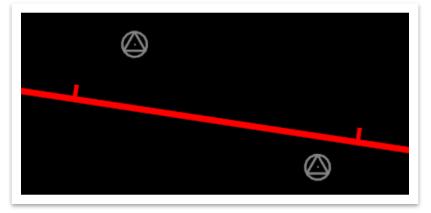
7.3 Lecture: Control Point

Survey **control points** serve as reference points for each project and are typically identified by point number, northing, easting, elevation, station and offset. The station and offset are relative to the preliminary survey centerline. The control point table creation was shown previously in the manual in Exercise 5.2.7.

7.3.1 Exercise: Control Point – Plan

In this exercise, we will place Control Point annotation on imported survey data in plan view. **Note:** The Control Point plan data would normally be part of the overall 3D survey file but has been separated out for the purpose of training.

- Open the Survey Model CP.dgn file within the SURVEY_Training workset dgn subfolder. Two control points (XCP) have already been imported via ASCII text file.
- 2. Zoom in to Station **117+50.00** once again and notice the **two** Control Points.



 Once again, let's annotate the model by opening the Annotate Model tool (Drainage and Utilities >> Drawing Production >> Annotations >> Model Annotation). Notice the cursor prompt: Accept Design Model. Left click to accept and notice the annotations are added.







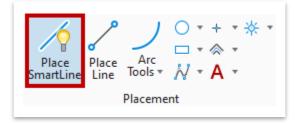
7.3.2 Exercise: Control Point – Profile

In this exercise, we will add Control Points to the <u>same</u> roadway profile from the previous exercise after creating a **Utility** model. **Note:** The Control Point utility model would normally be part of the overall 2D utility model file prior to projection in the alignment file but has been separated out for the purpose of training.

1. Create a new file and name it **Utility Model – CP**. Select the **TDOTSeed2D.dgn** and click **Save**.

File name:	Utility Model - CP 🗸 🗸	Save
Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) $\qquad \qquad \lor$	Cancel
Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co	Browse

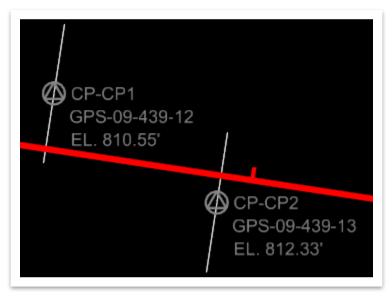
- 2. Attach the following reference files using the **Coincident World** attachment method and then click **Fit View**.
 - Alignment Additional Elements.dgn
 - Survey Model CP.dgn
- 3. Toggle on **Civil Accudraw**, if necessary, and then open the **Place SmartLine** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Drawing >> Placement**).







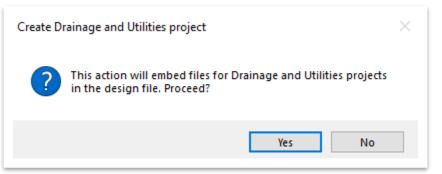
4. Next, draw an arbitrary line that passes through each of the **XCP** points. Make sure the lines are **perpendicular** to the centerline so that the profile stationing will be correct. Also, make sure that the lines cross the alignment, as shown below.



5. We now need to draw nodes and conduits at the same elevation of each surveyed crossing point. Open the **Place Node** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Layout >> Layout**).

Place Place Inse Node Nodes No	o	≪ Place Lateral Place Gutter ▲ Place Catchment	 Place Pond Place Low Impact Develo
		L	ayout

6. A warning will display asking if you want to embed files for **Drainage and Utilities** projects in the design file. Click **Yes**.







- Go ahead and open the Place Node tool again (Drainage and Utilities >> Layout >> Layout). We will address the westernmost XCP crossing first. Within the Place Node dialog box, select the following settings and leave the others as default.
 - a. Feature Definition: Misc. (Node >> GenericNodeAsset)
 - b. Name Prefix: Unnamed
 - c. **Elevation: 810.55'** (matches the elevation shown in the label). Make sure that the Elevation checkbox is toggled on.
 - d. Rotation Mode: Absolute

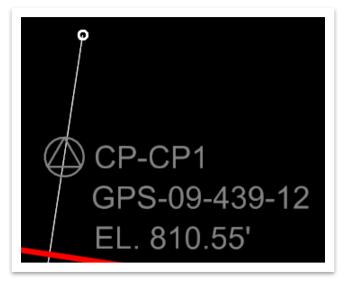
🔏 Place Node	- 🗆 ×
Feature	*
Feature Definition	Misc. 🗸
Name Prefix	Unnamed
Elevation	*
Elevation is the Invert	
Elevation	810.55
Vertical Offset	0.00
Rotation	*
Rotation Mode	Absolute 🗸
Rotation	N90°00'00.0"E
Cross Section from Sur	face 🔺
Only Include Contributing Slopes	
Maximum Offset	0.00

8. Notice the cursor prompt: **Select Reference Element For Node elevation**. Since the **XCP** points already have a specific elevation, right click to **Reset**.

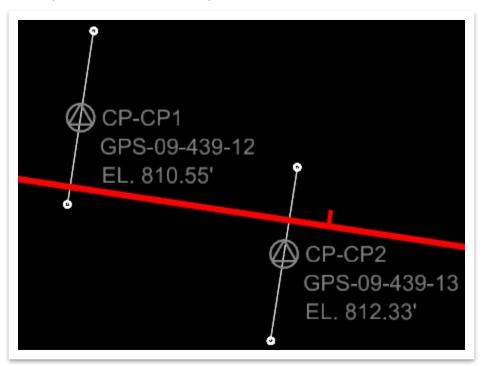




9. Notice the next cursor prompt: Define Generic Note. Left click on either end of the westernmost arbitrary line to define the node location. Left click twice more to accept the Rotation Mode and Rotation Angle and notice that a node has been placed. Note: Since the node is circular, the rotation angle is irrelevant.



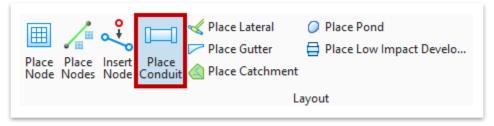
10. With the **Place Node** tool still active, place another node on the other end of the westernmost arbitrary line. Repeat the process to place the remaining 2 nodes. Make sure to key-in the applicable elevation within the **Place Node** dialog box before placement. Once completed, hit **ESC** to clear the tool.







11. Now that the nodes are placed, we need to connect them with conduit. Open the **Place Conduit** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Layout >> Layout**).



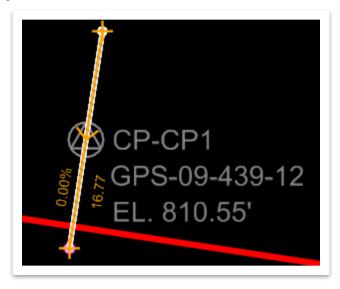
- 12. Within the **Place Link Between Nodes** dialog box, select the following settings and leave the others as default.
 - a. Feature Definition: Misc. (Conduit >> GenericSegmentAsset)
 - b. Name Prefix: Unnamed
 - c. Description: No Descriptions Selected

hetw.	– 🗆 🗙
Curve Variable	es 🔺
Pull	0.03
Segment Length	2.44
Parameters	*
Slope	0.00%
Feature	*
Feature Definition	Misc. 🗸
Name Prefix	Unnamed
Description	No Descriptions Selected \checkmark

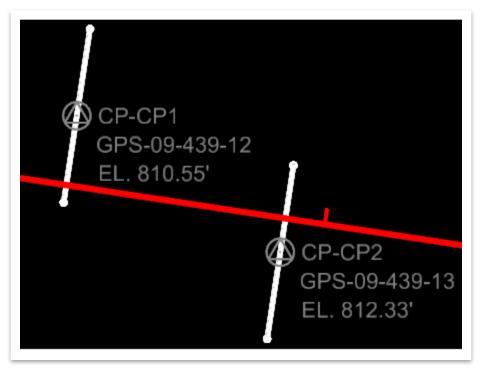




13. Notice the cursor prompt: **Select Start Node**. Select either node on the westernmost arbitrary line and the conduit will appear on the cursor. Select the second node (**next node**) **to make a connection** and place the conduit. **Note:** Since both nodes have the same elevation along the respective line, the order of node selection and thus the conduit direction is irrelevant for this exercise. Also, your slope should be **0.00%** but the length will vary depending on the arbitrary lines you drew earlier.



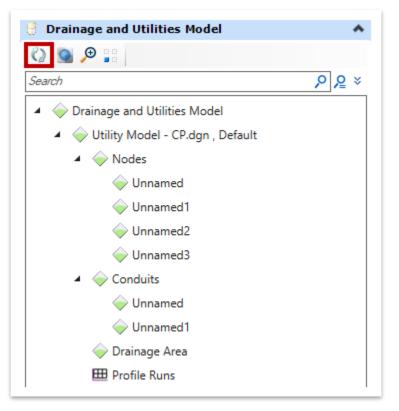
14. Once placed, you will see the linework added between the nodes. Repeat the previous step to add the conduit for the other **XCP** crossing and then right click to clear the tool.



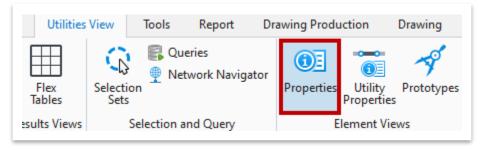




15. Within the **Explorer**, open the **Drainage and Utilities Model** tab and notice that all **nodes** and **conduits** have been added. **Note:** If the nodes are not showing, click the **Refresh** icon under the **Drainage and Utilities Model** header. If the nodes still do not show, close and re-open the **Explorer**.



16.Next, let's review the element properties of the conduit. First, turn off the Utility Model – CP.dgn (Default-3D) reference file. Then, select the first conduit and open the Properties (Drainage and Utilities >> Utilities View >> Element Views).







17. Under the **Utility** header, key-in the correct **Start** and **Stop Invert** elevations (810.55) to match the surveyed elevation of the first **XCP**. **Note:** Once again, you'll notice a **Node structure warning** (yellow triangle) at each node once the elevation has been updated. For the intent of the exercise, you can ignore the warning.

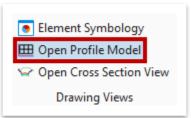
Properties	▼ ₽ ×
Elements (1)	
🔺 🧼 Link: Unnamed	l
/ Line	
General	*
Element Description	Link: Unnamed
Level	SUR - CTRL - Temporary Points
Color	0
Line Style	0
Weight	2
Class	Primary
Number of elements	1
Template	(None)
Transparency	0
Priority	0
Geometry	*
Utility	*
Start Node	Unnamed
Stop Node	Unnamed 1
Start Invert	810.55
Stop Invert	810.55
Diameter	1.00'
Single Gradient	True
Utility ID	27
Utility Properties	Open Utility Properties

- 18. Repeat the previous step for the other conduit and edit the **Start** and **Stop Invert** elevations in the **Properties**.
- 19. Now we need to project the Control Points onto the survey preliminary centerline. Go ahead and open back up the Alignment – Additional Elements.dgn file and attach the Utility Model – CP.dgn reference file. Make sure the Utility Model – LWC.dgn reference file is turned off, if not already.

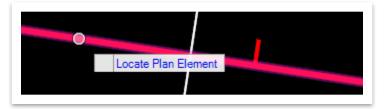




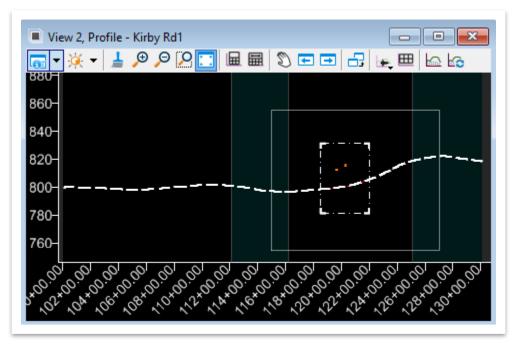
20. Open the **Open Profile Model** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Utilities View >> Drawing Views**).



21. Notice the cursor prompt: Locate Plan element. Select the red centerline.



22. Then, open **View 2** and click anywhere within the drawing window. Notice that the **existing** profile is visualized along the roadway centerline. You should also see the **XLW** conduits that we added in the previous exercise, as well as the 3d Cut boundary and the profile named boundary.



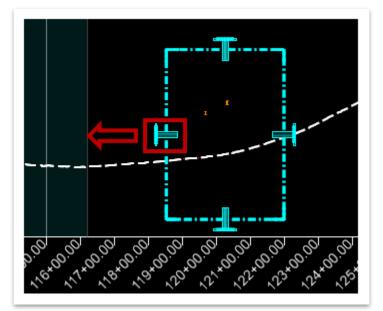


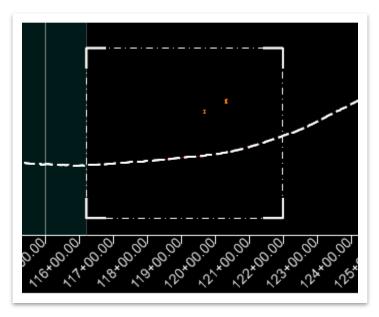
You may get an alert saying that **Outdated information might be displayed**. This pertains to **Cached Visible Edges** and simply means the **3d Cut** needs refreshing because there are new design elements that are not yet showing in the profile.





23. Since we previously created the 3d Cut, we in fact do need to **refresh** it because we referenced an additional utility model (**XCP**). If your 3d Cut boundary already encompasses Station 117+50, skip to Step 25. Before we can refresh, we need to adjust the 3d Cut boundary extents since the control points fall outside of the extent shown below (Station 117+50). We intentionally used the **Corners** placement method in the previous exercise so that we could show how to manipulate the boundary. Within the profile view, activate the **Element Selection** tool and select the 3d Cut boundary. Once highlighted, click on the left pick-point to activate the movement and then click again at approx. Station **116+00** to update the boundary. Left click within **View 2** to deselect.



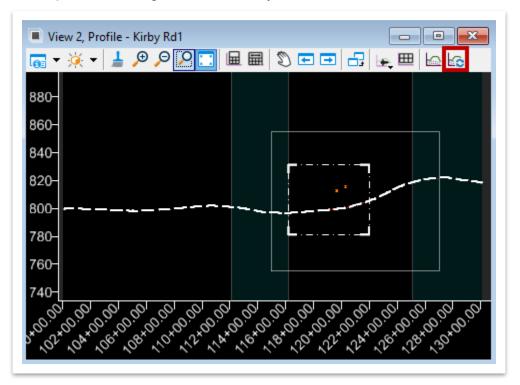




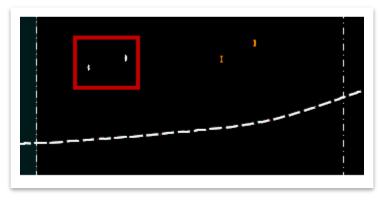


24. Unfortunately, if you were to now select the **Refresh 3d Cut** tool within **View 2**, nothing will happen. You must open a different ORD file and then re-open the **Alignment – Additional Elements.dgn** file, so go ahead and do that.

25. Now, open View 2 again, if necessary, and select the Refresh 3d Cut tool.



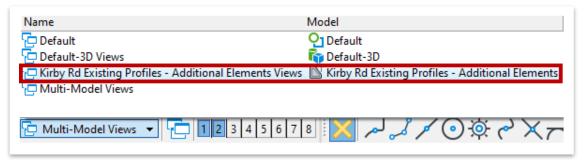
26. Notice that the **two** XCP conduits have now been projected onto the profile at the correct elevations.



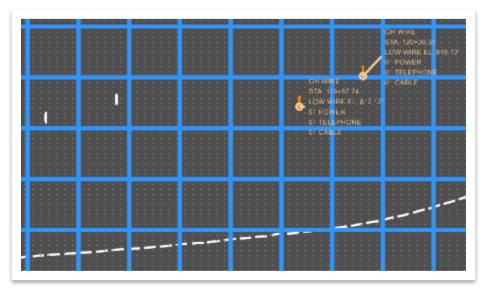




27. Next, we will add the applicable annotation, like in the previous exercises. The important thing to note is that we already created the profile **drawing** model in the previous exercise (**Kirby Rd Existing Profile – Additional Elements**). We do not need to create the profile named boundary again. In the lower left corner, go ahead and switch back to the profile drawing model.



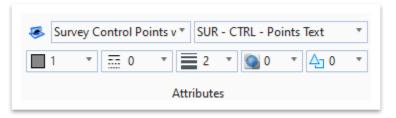
28. You should see the centerline profile, **XLW** conduits (and annotation) and the **XCP** conduits along with the profile grid, stations and elevations. **Note:** The conduits are showing again because the **Display** toggle in the reference file is back on.



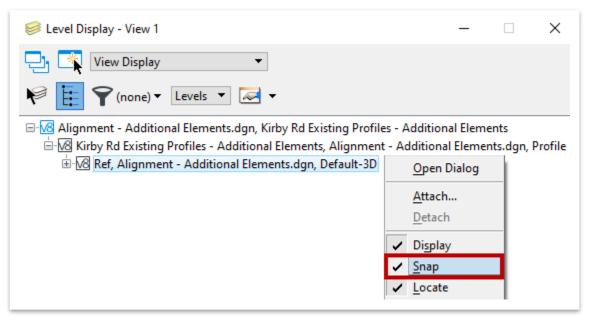




29. Go ahead and select the **Survey Control Points with Text** element template (**Survey >> Annotation >> Control Points**).



30. Now, open the Level Display and right click on Ref, Alignment – Additional Elements.dgn, Default-3D and toggle the Snap option on, as shown below. This will allow us to snap to the XCP conduits when placing annotation. Close the Level Display once you are done.



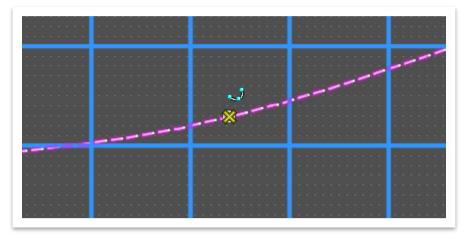




- 31. Next, open the Place Label tool (Drainage and Utilities >> Drawing Production >> Notes). Within the Place Label Settings dialog box, select the following settings and leave the others as default. Note: As a reminder, there is an enhancement logged with Bentley to allow a symbol to be placed without a leader.
 - a. Select the **leader** icon at the top (this allows the correct point symbol to display)
 - b. Type: Text Favorite
 - c. Favorite Name: SUR CTRL Control Point (Profile)
 - d. Dimension Style: SUR CTRL Control Point (Profile)

🔏 Place Label Setting	IS	_		\times
Type:	Text Favorite		~	
Favorite Name:	SUR - CTRL	- Contr	ol Po	
Dimension Style:	SUR - CTRL	- Contr	ol Po	b
Label Rotation:	Horizontal		~	
Start At:	Terminator		~	
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto		~	

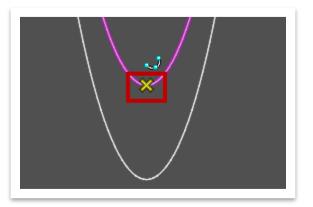
32. Notice the prompt in the lower left corner: **Identify Element or DataPoint**. Select the centerline profile.



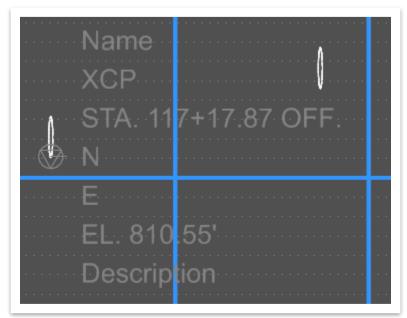




33. Notice the next prompt in the lower left corner: **Select Point Location**. Zoom in to the first **XCP** conduit and snap to the low point on the inner diameter.



34. Left click again just off to the right to place the label. The offset is necessary so that the symbol stays on when we turn the conduits off later in the exercise. Notice that the label automatically reads the **station** and **elevation**. We will fill in the other data in the next step. **Note:** The control point symbol will freely rotate depending on the direction of the leader even though the cell itself is due North in the library. This is a known defect and has been logged with Bentley.





35. Double click on the label to open the **Text Editor**. Fill in the remaining data (**Name**, **Offset**, **N/E**, **Description**), as shown below. For the **Description** field, you would typically key-in **MAG IN GRASS** or **ALUM. DISK**. **Note:** The northing and easting cannot be automatically populated in <u>profile</u> view. An enhancement has been logged with Bentley to allow that automation in a future software release.



36. Repeat Steps 33-35 to add the label for the other **XCP** conduit. **Note:** As a reminder, the centerline profile does not need to be re-selected before the placement of each label unless the tool was cleared. If ever the station/elevation look erroneous, clear the tool and start again by selecting the centerline.

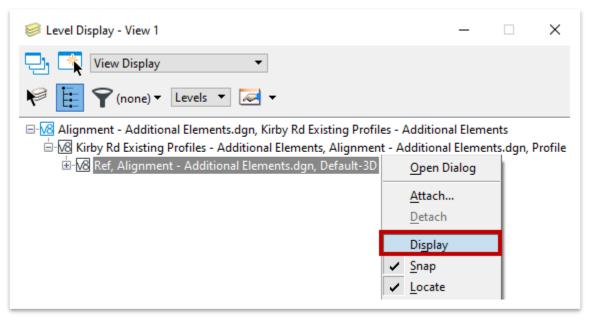
	CP2	
	ХСР	
· · · · · · · ·	STA. 1 <mark>17+87.49 OFF.</mark>	10.70' RT
O	N 824803.2404	
FF. 2	^{I.98' LT} E 1816568.8080	
	EL. 81 <mark>2.33'</mark>	
	MAG I <mark>N GRASS</mark>	





37. Next, open the Level Display, if not still opened, and right click on Ref, Alignment

 Additional Elements.dgn, Default-3D and toggle the Display option off, as shown below. This will turn the conduits off.



38. The final profile view for the control points is shown below. Remember, the leader option allows the symbol to be placed automatically in profile view. Note: Only the control points are shown in the screenshot below. The low wire crossing points are to the right.

		СР2 [.]		
CP1		XCP STA, 1	17+87.49 OFF;	0,70' RT
XCP STA. 11	7+17.87 OFF. 2	N 824	03.2404 568.8080	
- G N 8248	04.8901	EL 81 MAG 1	2.33' N GRASS	
···· ALUM.	DISK			

39. Lastly, switch back to the **Multi-Model Views** (plan/profile) view. To turn off the **XCP** nodes and conduits, use the same method as in the previous exercise and simply turn off the **Utility Model – CP.dgn** reference file.





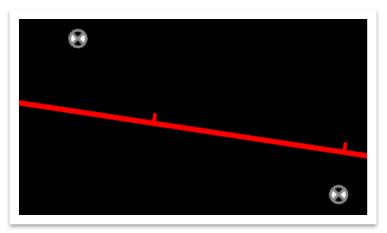
7.4 Lecture: Benchmarks

A **benchmark** is represented by a post or some other permanent mark and indicates a known elevation that is used as the basis for measuring the elevation of other topographical points.

7.4.1 Exercise: Benchmark – Plan

In this exercise, we will place Benchmark annotation on imported survey data in plan view. **Note:** The Benchmark plan data would normally be part of the overall 3D survey file but has been separated out for the purpose of training.

1. Open the **Survey Model – BM.dgn** file within the **SURVEY_Training** workset dgn subfolder. **Two** benchmarks (**XBM**) have already been imported via ASCII text file.



2. Zoom in to Station 117+50.00 and notice the three Benchmarks.

 Once again, let's annotate the model by opening the Annotate Model tool (Drainage and Utilities >> Drawing Production >> Annotations >> Model Annotation). Notice the cursor prompt: Accept Design Model. Left click to accept and notice the annotations are added.







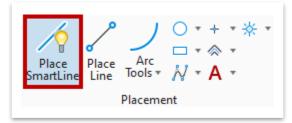
7.4.2 Exercise: Benchmark – Profile

In this exercise, we will add Benchmarks to the <u>same</u> roadway profile from the previous exercise after creating a **Utility** model. The process is essentially the same as in Exercise 7.3.2, so we will reference that exercise primarily. **Note:** The Benchmark utility model would normally be part of the overall 2D utility model file prior to projection in the alignment file but has been separated out for the purpose of training.

1. Create a new file and name it **Utility Model – BM**. Select the **TDOTSeed2D.dgn** and click **Save**.

File name:	Utility Model - BM	Save
Save as type:	MicroStation DGN Files (*.dgn) $\qquad \qquad \lor$	Cancel
Seed:	C:\ProgramData\Bentley\OpenRoads Designer CE\Co	Browse

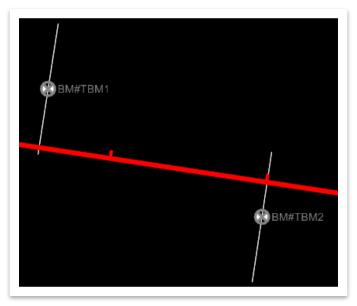
- 2. Attach the following reference files using the **Coincident World** attachment method and then click **Fit View**.
 - Alignment Additional Elements.dgn
 - Survey Model BM.dgn
- 3. Toggle on **Civil Accudraw**, if necessary, and then open the **Place SmartLine** tool (**Drainage and Utilities >> Drawing >> Placement**).



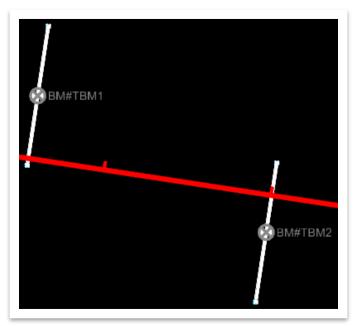




4. Next, draw an arbitrary line that passes through each of the **XBM** points. Make sure the lines are **perpendicular** to the centerline so that the profile stationing will be correct. Also, make sure that the lines cross the alignment, as shown below.



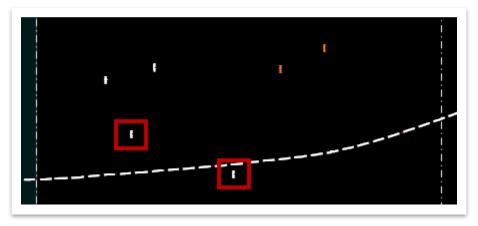
 Draw the nodes and conduit at the same elevation of each surveyed crossing point (TBM1: 802.82 and TBM2: 797.12) using the Misc. feature definition once again. Make sure to key-in the correct Start and Stop Invert elevations within the Properties for each conduit. Note: The screenshot is prior to updating the invert elevations.



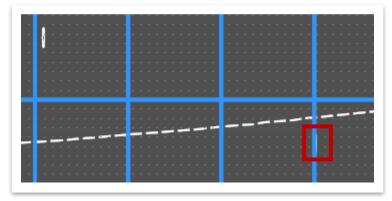




- Now we need to project the Benchmarks onto the survey preliminary centerline. Go ahead and open back up the Alignment – Additional Elements.dgn file and attach the Utility Model – BM.dgn reference file. Make sure both the Utility Model – LWC.dgn and Utility Model – CP.dgn reference files are turned off, if not already.
- 7. Open the profile model (View 2) and then select the Refresh 3d Cut tool. The XBM points are within the boundary extent this time, so no need to adjust the boundary. You shouldn't have to close out and re-open the file but if nothing happens after the refresh, take that route. Notice that the two XBM conduits have now been projected onto the profile at the correct elevations.



8. Next, switch back to the profile drawing model that was previously created and notice that the **XBM** conduit has been added. **Note:** You will have to zoom in to see TBM2 (highlighted), as it is closely aligned with the blue grid lines.







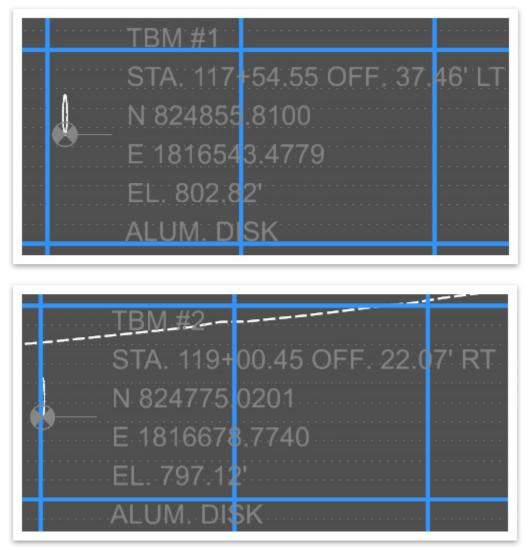
- Prior to placing the annotation, select the same Survey Control Points with Text element template (Survey >> Annotation >> Control Points). Then, open the Level Display and right click on Ref, Alignment – Additional Elements.dgn, Default-3D and toggle the Snap option on to allow us to snap to the XBM conduits. Close the Level Display once you are done.
- 10. Next, open the Place Label tool (Drainage and Utilities >> Drawing Production >> Notes). Within the Place Label Settings dialog box, select the following settings and leave the others as default. Note: As a reminder, there is an enhancement logged with Bentley to allow a symbol to be placed without a leader.
 - a. Select the **leader** icon at the top (this allows the correct point symbol to display)
 - b. **Type:** Text Favorite
 - c. Favorite Name: SUR CTRL Bench Mark (Profile)
 - d. Dimension Style: SUR CTRL Benchmark (Profile)

🔏 Place Label Setting	ıs —		×
Type:	Text Favorite	~	
Favorite Name:	SUR - CTRL - Bench	Mar	
Dimension Style:	SUR - CTRL - Bench	mark	b
Label Rotation:	Horizontal	~	
Start At:	Terminator	~	
Horizontal Attachment:	Auto	~	





11. Place both labels and then fill in the remaining data, as shown below. Once all labels have been placed, open the Level Display, if not still opened, and right click on Ref, Alignment – Additional Elements.dgn, Default-3D and toggle the Display option off.



12. Lastly, switch back to the **Default** (plan) view and close **View 2**. To turn off the **XBM** nodes and conduits, use the same method as in the previous exercises and simply turn off the **Utility Model – BM.dgn** reference file.



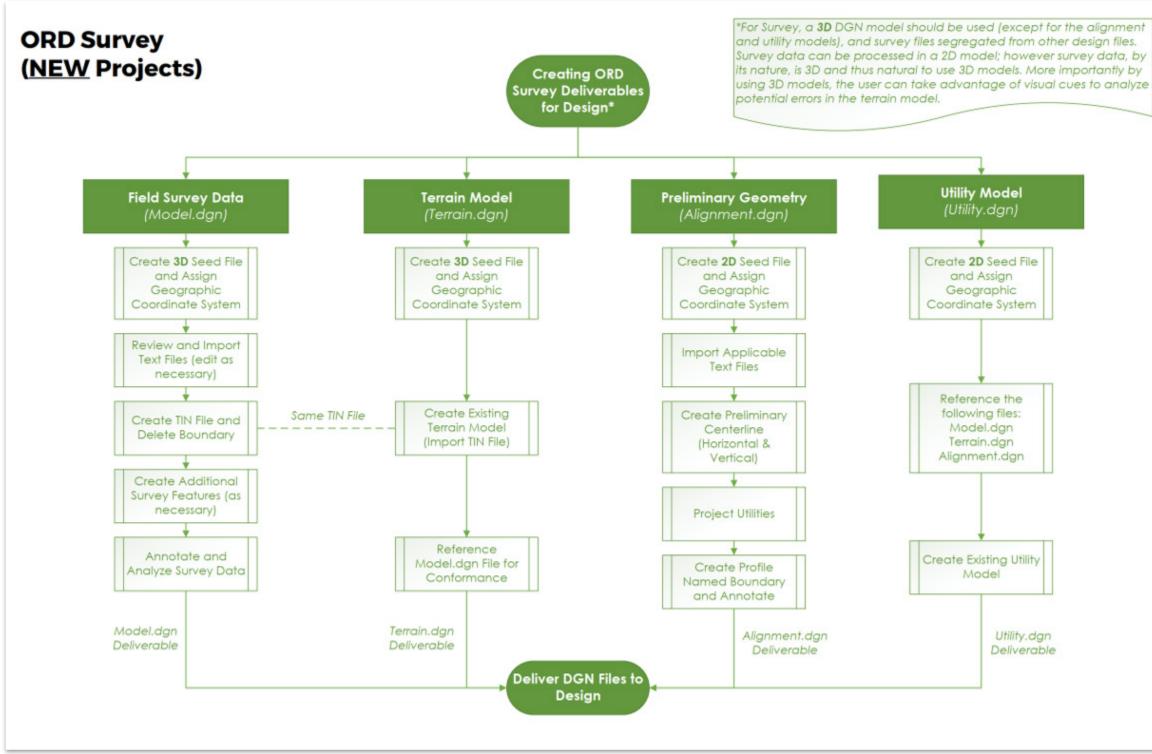


Revision History

DATE (MONTH/YEAR)	AUTHOR/EDITOR	IB #	SECTIONS MODIFIED



Appendix A. Survey Deliverables Process





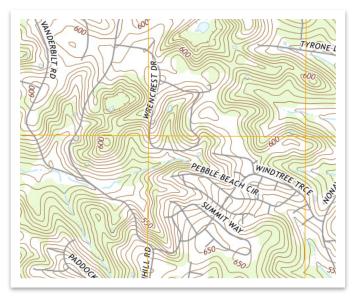




Appendix B. Example Contour Map and Definitions

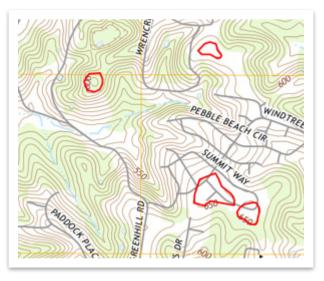
Contour Lines:

- Indicated by linear elements that connect points of equal elevation.
- Always close back on themselves and do not cross.
- Major contours are typically every 5' or 10'.
- Minor contours are typically every 1' or 2'.



Top of Hills:

• Indicated by irregularly shaped ovals or circles.







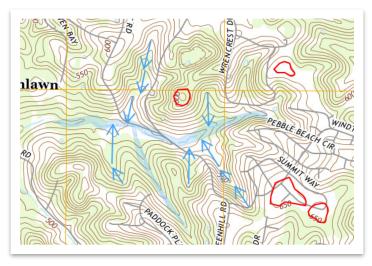
Rivers, Streams and Water Bodies:

• Identified by blue lines/ponds.



Drainage Paths:

• Identified by "V" shaped contour lines (arrows shown below identify these paths).

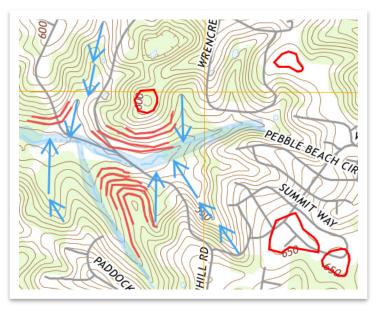






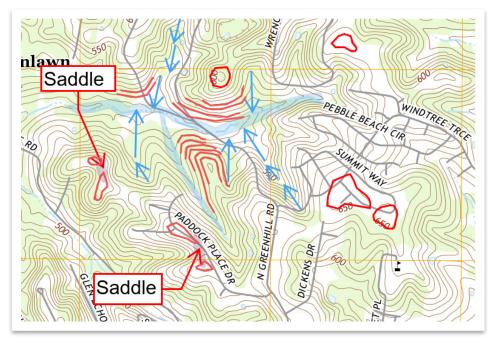
<u>Ridges</u>:

• Indicated by larger rounded "U" shaped contour lines.



Saddles:

• Indicated by a lower area between two adjacent hills.







Closed Depressions (Marshes):

• Indicated by contour lines with hash marks pointing inward.

